

CIVICS

What is Democracy? Why Democracy?

1

What is Democracy?

Definition of Democracy

Democracy is a form of government in which the rulers are elected by the people. One chief factor common to all democracies is that the government is chosen by the people. It also helps students to demarcate between democratic and non-democratic governments. From the non-democratic government, take the example of Myanmar, where rulers were not elected by the people. Those who were in charge of the army of the country took over as rulers and people had no say in this decision. Dictators like Pinochet (Chile) are not elected by the people. This also applies to monarchies.

It is not possible to give only one definition of democracy. Democracy has many features. Some features of a democracy are

Democracy is a form of Government in which the rulers are elected by the people.

- Chile under Pinochet was not a democratic country because Pinochet was not elected by the people. Saudi Arabia is also not a democracy as it is a monarchy.

Features of Democracy

The simple definition of democracy gives rise to various questions, which are given below:

- Who are the rulers in this definition?
- What kind of election constitutes a democratic election?
- Who are the people who can elect the rulers or get elected as rulers?
- Finally, what form of government is a democracy?

In a democracy, all major decisions are made by the elected leaders.

- General Pervez Musharraf led a military coup in Pakistan in October 1999. He later changed his designation to President. He also amended the Constitution of Pakistan according to which the President could dismiss the national or provincial assemblies. Moreover, although the people elect representatives to the provincial and national assemblies, the elected representatives were not authorised to make final decisions.
- The final decisions could only be taken by Musharraf and other senior military officers who were not actually elected representatives of the people.
- Pakistan, under such circumstances cannot be called a democracy as the elected representatives of the people have the power to make major decisions in a democracy.

In a democracy, free and fair elections should be held regularly.

- In China, elections are held regularly after every five years. People elect the members of the Parliament called National People's Congress. The Parliament has the power to elect the President of the country.
- In China, only the members of the Chinese Communist party or its eight allied parties can contest elections, and thus, only the Communist party can form the Government.



- In Mexico, elections are held after every six years, but until 2000, every election was won by the Institutional Revolutionary Party (IRP). The IRP used every legal and illegal method to win the elections. Teachers in schools were forced to influence parents to vote for the IRP, media ignored all activities of the ruling party but only focused itself on criticising the opposing parties and large sums were spent on campaigning for IRP candidates.
- Thus, democracy must be based on free and fair elections where those currently in power have a fair chance of losing the elections.

Democracy should be based on the principle of one person, one vote and one value.

- In Saudi Arabia, women do not have the right to vote.
- In Fiji, the vote of a local Fiji has more value than that of an Indian Fijian.
- In Estonia, the citizenship rules are such that the people belonging to the Russian minority find it difficult to vote.
- Therefore, we find that each adult citizen must have one vote and each vote must have one value.

Rules of Law and Respect for Rights

- In Zimbabwe, President Robert Mugabe has been ruling since independence. Although Mugabe is popular, he uses unfair practices during elections.
- He has amended the Constitution multiple times in order to increase the powers of the President and to make him less accountable.
- The members of opposition parties are jailed if they raise their voice against the Government and protests against the Government and its policies are declared illegal.
- It is important for a democratic government to grant basic rights and freedoms to its citizens and the government should be accountable to its citizens.
- Therefore, a democratic government rules within the limits set by constitutional law and citizens' rights. The government must function within basic rules of the Constitution and citizens' rights.

One person, one vote, one value one value

Democracy is based on a fundamental principle of political equality. However, there are many instances of denial of the equal right to vote. Until 2015, in Saudi Arabia, women did not have the right to vote. Estonia has made its citizenship rules in such a way that people belonging to the Russian minority found it difficult to get the right to vote. In Fiji, the electoral system is such that the vote of an indigenous Fiji has more value than that of an Indian Fijian. Definitely not a democratic government. The feature of democracy this highlight is that in a democracy, each adult citizen must have one vote and in turn, each vote must have one value.

Why Democracy?

Some arguments against a democratic government are

- Democracy leads to instability as leaders keep on changing in a democratic setup.
- The decision-making process is delayed in a democracy because several people have to be consulted in a democratic setup.
- Sometimes even elected people do not know about the best interests of the people. Thus, at times, it leads to bad decisions.
- There are several cases of corruption as democracy is based on electoral competition.
- Most people do not know what democracy is. Thus, they should not decide anything.

According to these arguments, democracy does not seem to be an ideal form of government. But it is not so. The following arguments prove that democracy is the best form of government.

Cons of Democracy

- Leaders keep changing in a democracy leading to instability
- Democracy is all about political competition and power play, leaving no scope for morality
- Many people have to be consulted in a democracy that leads to delays
- Elected leaders do not know the best interest of the people, resulting in bad decisions
- Democracy leads to corruption since it is based on electoral competition
- Ordinary people don't know what is good for them; they should not decide anything

From these arguments, we can see that democracy of the kind we see, may not be the ideal form of government. However, we will see if democracy is better than other forms of government that are there for us to choose from.

A democratic government is a better government because it is a more accountable form of government.

- China suffered from one of the worst famines in 1958–1961. Nearly three crore people died in the famine. No major famine occurred in India at this time. According to economists, it was perhaps because India is a democratic country.
- Democracy in India made the Government respond to food scarcity in a way in which the Chinese Government did not. It was because India has a multi-party system and free press. The Government may be criticised and even lose the next elections.
- This is not the case with the Chinese. Because China is ruled by the Communist party and no one can criticise the Government, the Chinese Government took the famine very casually.

Arguments in Favour of Democracy

A democratic government is a better government because it is a more accountable form of government:

Take the example of India and China famines in 1958-1961. While China was hit badly, India did not fare as badly, despite its economic condition. Reason for this could be that India responded to the food scarcity in a way that the Chinese government did not. Here, we see that democracy is better than any other form of government in responding to the needs of the people.

Democracy improves the quality of decision-making: Democracy is based on consultation and discussion. A democratic decision always involves many people, discussions and meetings and they are able to point out possible mistakes in any decision. This may take time. However, the advantage of taking time over important decisions is that it reduces the chances of rash or irresponsible decisions.

Democracy provides a method to deal with differences and conflicts: In any society, people are bound to have differences of opinions and interests. These differences are particularly more in a country like ours with amazing social diversity. People belong to different regions, speak different languages, practice different religions and have different castes. The preferences of one group can clash with those of other groups. How do we resolve such a conflict? Democracy provides the only peaceful solution to this problem. In a democracy, no one is a permanent winner or loser. Different groups can live with one another peacefully.

Democracy enhances the dignity of citizens: Democracy is based on the principle of political equality. It recognises that the poorest and the least educated have the same status as the rich and the educated.

Democracy is better than other forms of government because it allows us to correct our own mistakes:

Even if no government can guarantee that no mistakes will be made, in a democracy one can be sure that it will not be hidden for too long. It makes space for public discussion on these mistakes. There is also room for correction. Rulers have to change their decisions, or they could themselves be changed.

Thus, we can correctly infer that while democracy may not be the solution to all problems, it is still clearly better than any other alternatives.



Democracy improves the quality of Decision Making

- Democracy is based on consultations and discussions. People collectively discuss and take decisions.
- This reduces the possibility of taking any irresponsible decision.

Democracy provides a method to deal with differences and conflicts

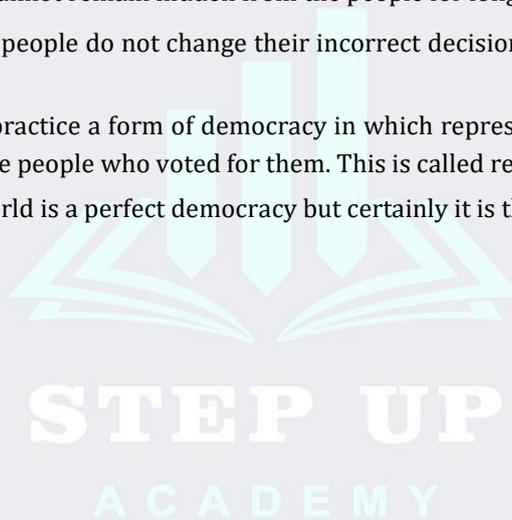
- Differences are bound to take place in a society where people belonging to various castes, religion and classes live together.
- People belonging to different religions and castes have their own preferences and interests of one group may clash with the other.
- If a powerful group begins to dictate its terms and forces its decisions over the other groups, it may lead to discontentment and resentment among the other people.
- Democracy provides peaceful solution to this problem because decisions which are taken by mutual consent are followed and respected by all.

Democracy allows people to correct their own mistakes

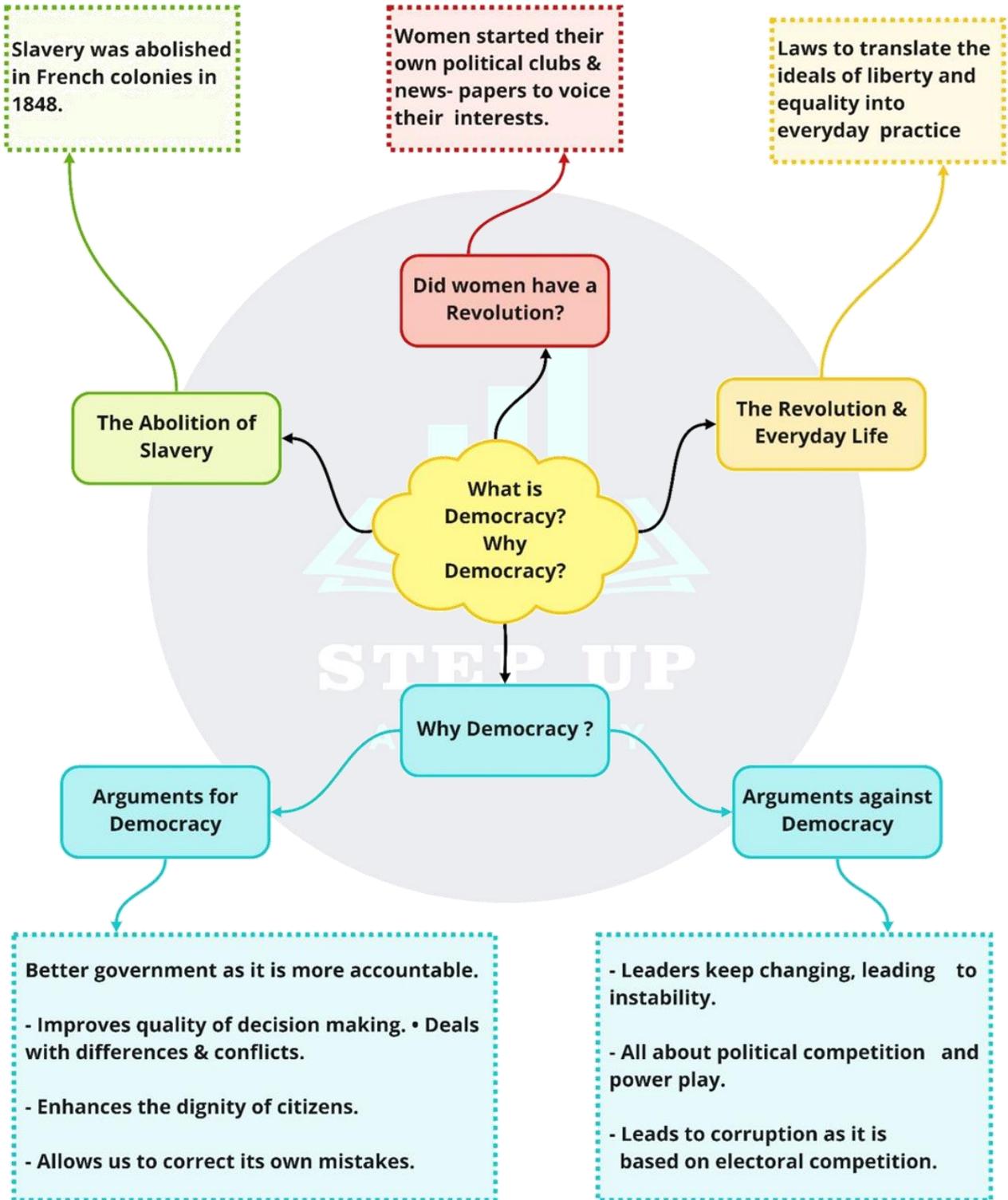
- There are possibilities of taking wrong decisions in a democracy. However, as there is a space for public discussions, such mistakes cannot remain hidden from the people for long.
- If the representatives of the people do not change their incorrect decisions, they may not get elected by the people in the next elections.

Currently most of the countries practice a form of democracy in which representatives of the people make laws and take decisions on behalf of the people who voted for them. This is called representative democracy.

We find that no country in the world is a perfect democracy but certainly it is the best form of government.



Class : 9th Social Studies (Political Science)
Chapter-1: What is Democracy? Why Democracy?





Important Questions

Multiple Choice questions-

1. A democracy must be based on a free and fair election where those currently in power:
 - (a) Have a fair chance of winning
 - (b) Have a fair chance of losing
 - (c) Cannot be removed from their seats
 - (d) None of the above
2. In Saudi Arabia:
 - (a) Men do not have the right to vote
 - (b) Women do not have the right to vote
 - (c) Both men and women have the right to vote
 - (d) Both men and women do not have the right to vote
3. Estonia has made its citizenship rules in such a way that people belonging to:
 - (a) African minority find it difficult to get the right to vote
 - (b) American minority find it difficult to get the right to vote
 - (c) Russian minority find it difficult to get the right to vote
 - (d) All the above
4. In Fiji, the electoral system is such that the vote of an indigenous Fiji has more value than that of:
 - (a) An African Fijian
 - (b) A Chinese Fijian
 - (c) An Indian Fijian
 - (d) Pakistani-Fijian
5. In a democracy, each adult citizen must:
 - (a) Have one vote and each vote must have two values
 - (b) Have two votes and each vote must have one value
 - (c) Have one vote and each vote must have one value
 - (d) All the above
6. Zimbabwe attained independence from white minority rule in:
 - (a) 1960
 - (b) 1970
 - (c) 1980
 - (d) 1990
7. A democratic government rules within limits set by:
 - (a) The ruling government
 - (b) The constitutional law
 - (c) Citizens right
 - (d) Constitutional law and citizens' rights
8. Democracy is a form of government in which:
 - (a) Rulers elected by the government take all the major decisions
 - (b) Elections offer a choice and fair opportunity to the people to change the current rulers
 - (c) The exercise of this choice leads to a government limited by basic rules of the constitution and citizen's rights
 - (d) All the above
9. The correct argument/s of democracy is/are:
 - (a) Leaders keep changing in a democracy. This leads to instability
 - (b) Democracy is all about political competition and power play. There is no scope for morality
 - (c) So many people have to be consulted in a democracy that it leads to delays
 - (d) All the above
10. The worst recorded famine in world history is:
 - (a) Bengal famine
 - (b) Japanese famine
 - (c) China's famine
 - (d) American famine
11. A democratic government is a better government because it is a more:
 - (a) Effective form of government
 - (b) Accountable form of government
 - (c) Powerful form of government
 - (d) None of the above
12. Democracy improves the:
 - (a) Dignity of the people
 - (b) Economy of the country
 - (c) The quality of decision-making
 - (d) All the above

13. Democracy provides a method:
 - (a) To build buildings
 - (b) To fight poverty
 - (c) To deal with differences and conflict
 - (d) All the above
14. Democracy is the form of government in which:
 - (a) People are elected by the rulers
 - (b) Rulers are not elected by the people
 - (c) People themselves become rulers
 - (d) Rulers are elected by the people
15. In Pakistan, General Parvez Musharraf led a military coup in October:
 - (a) 1997
 - (b) 1998
 - (c) 1999
 - (d) 2000

Very Short Questions:

1. To what was Allende's government committed in Chile?
2. To what was Walesa's government committed in Poland?
3. Why do we need a definition?
4. What form of government democracy is?
5. State any one necessary condition of democracy.
6. Do we have election in a monarchy where the king is all-powerful?
7. Does the army regime permit elections where it rules through the gun?
8. From which language the word democracy has come up?
9. How did Abraham Lincoln define democracy?
10. Does holding of the elections ensure democracy in a country?

Short Questions:

1. Why is it more likely that decisions are wrong in dictatorship than under a democracy?
2. Why perfect equality does not exist in a society?
3. Why are the governments responsive in democracies?
4. Give any one definition of democracy.
5. Why do we need a definition of any concept?
6. Democracy involves people in the formation of the government. How do the people form government?

7. What do you mean by political freedom? How does it help the functioning of democracy?

Long Questions:

1. Explain the following:
 - (i) Freedom of expression
 - (ii) Freedom of information
 - (iii) Freedom to form association?
2. Write on the following:
 - (a) Freedom of culture and religion.
 - (b) Individual freedoms.
3. What do you mean by 'Rule of law'?
4. Can you identify some features necessary for any country to be called democratic?
5. Are elections necessary conditions in a democracy? Give arguments.

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) followed by a statement of Reason (R) is given. Choose the correct option out of the choices given below each question.

Assertion (A) : A referendum was held in Pakistan in the year 2002.

Reason (R) : Pervez Musharraf was granted five year extension as President.

- A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
- B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A
- C) A is true, but R is false
- D) A is false, but R is true

2. In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) followed by a statement of Reason (R) is given. Choose the correct option out of the choices given below each question.

Assertion (A) : Pakistan is considered as a democratic country.

Reason (R) : In Pakistan the final powers rested with military officers.

- A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
- B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A
- C) A is true, but R is false
- D) A is false, but R is true



Case Study Based Question:

1. Read the source and answer the following questions.

In Pakistan, General Pervez Musharraf led a military coup in October 1999.

He overthrew a democratically elected government and declared himself the 'Chief Executive' of the country. Later he changed his designation to President and in 2002 held a referendum in the country that granted him a five year extension. Pakistani media, Human Rights Organisations and democracy activists said that the referendum was based on malpractices and fraud.

In August, 2002 he issued a 'Legal Framework Order' that amended the Constitution of Pakistan. According to this order, the President can dismiss the National and Provincial Assemblies. The work of the Civilian Cabinet is supervised by a National Security Council which is dominated by military officers. After passing this law, elections were held to the National and Provincial Assemblies. So, Pakistan has had elections, elected representatives have some powers. But the final power rested with military officers and General Musharraf himself.

- (1) Why did Pakistani media and Human Rights Organisation criticise General Pervez Musharraf?
- Musharraf over threw an elected government and declared himself as the 'Chief Executive' .
 - Musharraf changed his designation to President and held a referendum that granted him a 5 year extension which was based on mal practices and fraud.
 - He was an autocratic ruler.
 - None of the above
- (2) Find the incorrect statement from the given options
- General Musharraf declared himself as the ' Prime Minister' of the country in 1999.
 - In August 2002, General Musharraf amended the Constitution of Pakistan.
 - General Musharraf has the authority to dismiss the National and Provincial Assemblies.
 - General Musharraf imbibed himself with supreme powers.

- (3) According to the Legal Framework Order, the work of the civilian cabinet of Pakistan is supervised by the.....
- Chief Executive Council Members.
 - Prime Minister.
 - Military Officers of the National Security Council.
 - None of the above.
- (4) The power to take final decision in Pakistan rested with
- Elected representative of National Assemblies.
 - Elected representative of Provincial Assemblies.
 - Army officials and General Musharraf.
 - All of the above.

2. Read the given passage and answer the following questions.

Zimbabwe attained independence from White minority rule in 1980. Since then the country has been ruled by ZANU-PF, the party that led the freedom struggle. Its leader, Robert Mugabe, ruled the country since independence.

Elections were held regularly and always won by ZANU-PF. President Mugabe was popular but also used unfair practices in elections. Over the years his government changed the constitution several times to increase the powers of the President and make him less accountable.

Opposition party workers were harassed and their meeting disrupted. Public protests and demonstrations against the government were declared illegal. There was a law that limited the right to criticise the President.

Television and radio were controlled by the government and gave only the ruling party's version. There were independent newspapers but the government harassed those journalists who went against it.

The government ignored some court judgments that went against it and pressurized judges. He was forced out of office in 2017.

- (1) Which of the following statement is/ are correct in the case of Zimbabwe?.
- Popular governments are always democratic.

- B) Popular governments can be undemocratic.
C) Popular leaders can be autocratic.
D) Both (a) and (c).
- (2) What kind of oppressive practices were adopted under the rule of Mugabe?
A) Public protests and demonstrations against the government were declared illegal.
B) Opposition party workers were harassed and their meeting disrupted.
C) There was a law that limited the right to criticise the President.
D) All of the above.
- (3) Which of the following statement is incorrect?
A) Democracy also lead to instability.
B) A democratic government rules within limits set by constitutional law and citizens rights.
C) A democratic government cannot do whatever it likes, simply because it has won an election.
D) In democracy, rulers elected by the people cannot take all the major decisions.
- (4) Which of the following facts are correct with respect to Robert Mugabe?
A) He always followed a pragmatic approach to benefit the common people.
B) He always intended to convert Zimbabwe from a parliamentary democracy into a one-party socialist state.
C) He was an autocratic leader.
D) Both (a) and (c).

Answer Key

MCQ

- (b) Have a fair chance of losing
- (b) Women do not have the right to vote
- (c) Russian minority find it difficult to get the right to vote
- (c) An Indian-Fijian
- (c) Have one vote and each vote must have one value
- (c) 1980
- (d) Constitutional law and citizens' rights
- (d) All the above
- (d) All the above
- (c) China's famine
- (b) Accountable form of government
- (c) The quality of decision-making
- (c) To deal with differences and conflict
- (d) Rulers are elected by the people
- (c) 1999

Very Short Answer:

- Allende's government was committed to greater role in economic activities.
- Walesa's government was committed to as little role as was possible.
- We need a definition when we counter a difficulty in everyday use.
- Democracy is a form of government in which the rulers are elected by the people.
- Election is the necessary condition of democracy.
- There can be no election in a monarchy headed by a real powerful king.
- Normally not. The army general may allow election only to legitimate his rule.
- Etymologically, democracy is derived from two Greek words 'demos' and 'Kratia'. 'Demos' means people and 'Kratia' means rule. Thus, etymologically, democracy means the rule of the people.
- Democracy, Lincoln had said, is government of the people, by the people and for the people.



10. Certainly not. Salazar allowed elections in Portugal once for a while. But there was never a time when the opposition parties won a single seat.

Short Answer:

- Under dictatorship (monarchy or military rule), the rulers do not involve people at all in decision-making. That is why that the decisions there are likely to be wrong.
- Perfect equality does not exist in any society because of inequalities, among people, in wealth, social status, and position. In fact, perfect inequality is never possible.
- As the elected representatives, in a democracy, has to secure the support of the people, they cannot afford to be insensitive to the aspirations of the people.
- Abraham Lincoln defines democracy as the government of the people (i.e. through participation people constitute the government) by the people (i.e. the people, through the use of their rights, control, their rulers), for the people, (i.e. the government rules for the welfare of the people.
- We need a definition of a concept so as to understand the meaning of the concept. Definition clarifies the meaning. For example, the definition of democracy, etymologically, means, that it is the rule of the people.
- Democracy, indeed, means government of the people. People form government through elections. Periodic elections are conditions of democracy.
Elections have to be
 - frequent (i.e. after definite periods),
 - free and, fair
 - In the absence of elections, democracy is impossible; it can not function successfully.
- Political freedom means freedom given to the people in matter relating to democratic functioning of the government. Political freedom implies right of the people to have their opinions, their right to express those, opinions, and demonstrate their political actions in the form of procession. When people are not permitted to express their opinion, this weakens democratic trends/tendencies, The house arrest of Aung San Suu Kyi does not fit in democratic functioning.

Long Answer:

- Freedom of expression: Citizens have freedom of opinion, expression and discussion. They can criticize officials, government or the socio-economic order. They can also organize meetings, campaign on public issues or demonstrate against government.
 - Freedom of information: Citizens have access to information about candidates in elections. They can seek information from different sources. Government cannot have monopoly on sources of information. Laws shall protect alternative sources of information.
 - Right to form associations: Citizens have a right to form, join or quit associations. It includes a right to form or join a political party that opposes government or to contest elections in opposition to the ruling party. Opposition shall have an equal opportunity to increase popular support or gain power through elections.
- Freedom of culture and religion: People have freedom of faith, belief and religion. Those who belong to ethnic minorities have the right to follow their cultural practices. Linguistic minorities can speak their language. Religious minorities can freely follow and profess their religion. Persons who belong to minorities enjoy rights available to any other citizen of the country.
 - Individual freedoms: State does not impose restrictions on travel, choice of residence, and choice of employment. Citizens have an equal right to seek admission in colleges or recruitment to jobs. They can acquire or sell property. They can establish private businesses. They can read any book of their choice. Government does not impose ban on the discussion of ideas.
- All citizens are treated as equal under the law. Law protects citizens from unjustified detention. Military and police are under the control of elected representatives. Military and police cannot terrorize or torture those who oppose government. Independent courts effectively protect individual and group rights. Decisions of courts are respected and enforced by those in government.

4. There are, indeed, certain features which are necessary for any country to be called as democratic. Some of these are:

- There should be rights for the citizens, riot nominal but actually available.
- The Constitution of the country should not only provide these rights, it should also ensure them.
- The Constitution should also provide democratic institutions and procedures as well.

5. Elections, indeed, are necessary conditions for any democracy. In fact, elections alone distinguish between a democracy and non-democracy. In a non-democracy, such as in military rule or in a nonparty, there are no elections. If there are elections, they are not frequent, nor fair, and nor even freer. Salazar of Portugal did allow one month of campaign but there was little possibility of opposition leaders whining the elections.

Elections are necessary, but if the power is not given to those who win elections, there cannot be democracy in such countries. Aung San Suu Kyi won elections in Burma (now Myanmar) in 1990, but she was not given power, instead, she was put under house arrest.

Elections imply the existence of more than one political party so to enable them to contest elections. In China, only the ruling political party can put up candidates, two or more. How can we

call such a system as a democratic one? Democracy requires elections free, fair and frequent; elections where people are able to remove those elected and install need leaders in power.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
2. D) A is false, but R is true

Case Study Answer:

1. Answer:

- (1) B) Musharraf changed his designation to President and held a referendum that granted him a 5 year extension which was based on mal practices and fraud.
- (2) A) General Musharraf declared himself as the 'Prime Minister' of the country in 1999.
- (3) C) Military Officers of the National Security Council
- (4) C) Army officials and General Musharraf

2. Answer:

- (1) D) Both (a) and (c)
- (2) D) All of the above
- (3) D) In democracy, rulers elected by the people cannot take all the major decisions.
- (4) D) Both (a) and (c).





Constitutional Design | 2

South Africa – From Apartheid to the Formulation of the Constitution

The Constitution can be defined as the set of rules and laws which the citizens and the Government have to follow. It is the supreme law of the country. It lays down the rights and the freedoms of the citizens and the power and the responsibilities of the Government.

The Policy of Apartheid

- Apartheid refers to the racial discrimination on the basis of the colour of skin. Many Europeans had settled in South Africa during the seventeenth and the eighteenth centuries.
- These white Europeans began to rule the country. They followed the policy of apartheid in which the natives called „blacks“ and the coloured (people of mixed
- races and Indians) were treated as inferiors.
- The blacks and the coloured people could not live in the areas inhabited by the whites. They could work in these areas only if they had the permit to work in the white areas.
- Swimming pools, libraries, cinema halls, beaches and colleges were all separate for the whites and the blacks. The coloured and the blacks could not even enter into churches
- which were reserved for the whites. Non-whites also did not have the right to vote.
- The blacks and the Indians began to raise their voice against the oppressive apartheid policy. The African National Congress led the struggle against the apartheid policy. Many whites who opposed the policy of apartheid also joined this organisation and protested against the policies of the white Government. Nelson Mandela led the struggle of the non-whites against the South African Government.
- The South African Government detained, tortured and killed many protestors and continued to rule. Nelson Mandela was detained and sent to prison for a period of 28 years by the Government.
- By 1994, the Government realised that it will not be possible to rule South Africa, and thus, the white Government changed its policies. All discriminatory laws were repealed, and freedom of speech and expression was granted to the people. Nelson Mandela was liberated from prison, and he became the President of South Africa.



Nelson Mandela

South Africa – Drawing of the Constitution

The whites, blacks and coloured population of the country together formulated the Constitution of the country. They decided that every section of society should be part of the Constitution and should get equal rights. Some negotiations among the South Africans which became the basis of the South African Constitution are

- The whites agreed to the principle of majority rule and the concept of one person having one vote.
- The blacks agreed that the majority rule would not be absolute, and the rights of the minority will not be taken away.

- The Constitution further defined the way the Government was to be elected and its functions.
- The rights and the freedoms of the citizens were laid down.

Necessity of the Constitution

A Constitution is necessary because of the following reasons:

- It is an important law of the land. It determines the relationship of the citizens with the governments.
- It lays down principles and guidelines which are required for people belonging to different ethnic and religious groups to live in harmony.
- It specifies on how the Government would be elected and who will have the power and the responsibility to take important decisions.
- It outlines the limits on the power of the Government and tells us about the rights of the citizens.
- It expresses the aspirations of the people about creating a good society.

Making of the Constitution of India

It was not easy for the framers of our Constitution to draw a constitution because of the following reasons:

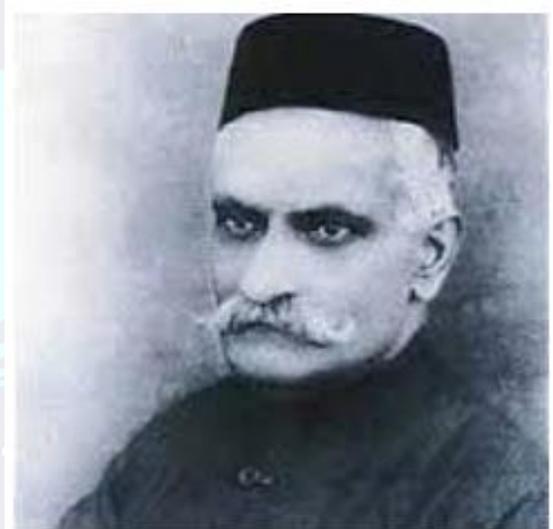
- India was a large country which was inhabited by various diversified communities.
- India had just become independent from the colonial rule and Indians had experienced the pain and trauma which was related to the partition of the country.
- The British had drafted the instrument of accession according to which the princely states were free to decide if they wanted to remain as a part of India or join Pakistan or to remain independent. This was a threat to the unity of our country.
- The framers of the Constitution also had anxieties about the present and the future of the country. Motilal Nehru.

Our Constitution informally had begun to take shape during the later years of the British rule. In 1928, Motilal Nehru and eight other Congress leaders had drafted a constitution for the people of India. In 1931, in the Karachi session of the Indian National Congress (INC), discussions took place on the Constitution which should be framed for the country. All leaders agreed on the universal adult franchise, protection of the rights of the minorities and right to equality to be granted to the citizens.

The holding of elections in 1937 in all parts of British India and the passing of various Acts of the Government of India helped the Indians to gain experience in the working of legislative assemblies and drafting of the Constitution. The leaders of the country also drew inspiration from the American Revolution, French Revolution and the practice of the parliamentary democracy in Great Britain. They had also read constitutions of other countries and were inspired by features of these constitutions. This helped our leaders to frame the Constitution of the country.

The Constituent Assembly

- The Constituent Assembly was a body of elected representatives which drafted and framed the Constitution of our country. The elections to the Constituent Assembly were held in July 1946, and the first meeting was held in December 1946.



Motilal Nehru



Dr. B.R. Ambedkar



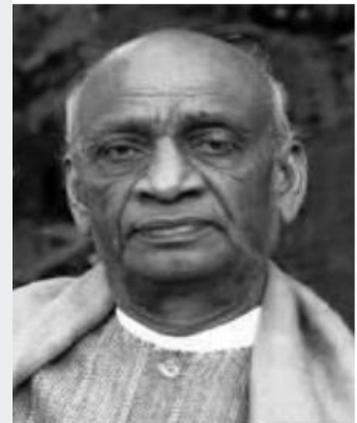
- The Constituent Assembly adopted the Constitution on 26 November 1949, but it came into effect on 26 January 1950. Thus, we celebrate 26 January as Republic Day every year.

Why should we accept a constitution framed fifty years ago?

- Our Constitution has granted basic rights and freedoms to all citizens. Any kinds of discriminations are illegal, and minority communities are given protection from any kind of discrimination. This is the reason why until now, no group or political party has questioned the legitimacy of the Constitution.
- The Constituent Assembly which drafted the Constitution had representatives of the people of India. Although no elections were held at that time, the members of the Constituent Assembly were elected by the members of Provincial Legislatures. The assembly represented people from various regions and linguistic and religious communities.
- The Constituent Assembly worked in a systematic, open and consensual manner while drafting the Constitution of the country. Discussions took place on each clause of the Constitution. Every document was debated. The Constituent Assembly took three years to prepare the Constitution of the country. These are called the „Constituent Assembly Debates“.

Some Members of the Constituent Assembly

- Vallabhbhai Patel:** He was the first Home Minister of India and played a prominent role in Bardoli Satyagraha.
- Abul Kalam Azad:** He was the first Education Minister of India and opposed Muslim separatist politics.
- T. T. Krishnamachari:** He was the finance minister and an entrepreneur.
- Rajendra Prasad:** He was the first President of India and a lawyer by profession.
- Jaipal Singh:** He was a sportsman and an educationist. He was the captain of the Indian hockey team. He was also the founder of Adivasi Mahasabha.
- H.C. Mookerjee:** He was the Vice Chairman of the Constituent Assembly and later became the Governor of Bengal.
- Durgabai Deshmukh:** She was the founder of Andhra Mahila Sabha and advocated women emancipation.
- Baldev Singh:** He was an entrepreneur and was the defense minister in the union cabinet.
- B. R. Ambedkar:** He was the Chairman of the drafting assembly. He denounced the caste system and was the first Law Minister of independent India. Some other members were Sarojini Naidu, S. P. Mukherjee, Jawaharlal Nehru, Somnath Lahiri and K. M. Munshi.



Sardar Patel



Sarojini Naidu

Preamble and Features of the Constitution of India

Our Constitution begins from “We the people of India” which means that the Constitution derives its authority from the people of India. The Preamble is the guiding line of the Constitution. The Preamble declares India to be a sovereign, secular, socialist, democratic republic. It also secures the principles of justice, liberty, equality, and fraternity to all citizens.

Sovereign: It means that our country has the right to make decisions on external or internal matters of the country. No external or internal authority can pressurise the Government to take any decisions.

Socialist: It means that wealth should be divided among all sections of society. The Government should work for the upliftment of the downtrodden sections of society.

Secular: The people of India are free to follow any religion. India has no official religion and neither it encourages or discourages any religion in India.

Democratic: The Government is elected by the people. The Government is run according to some basic rules, and people enjoy basic rights and freedoms. Preamble of our Constitution

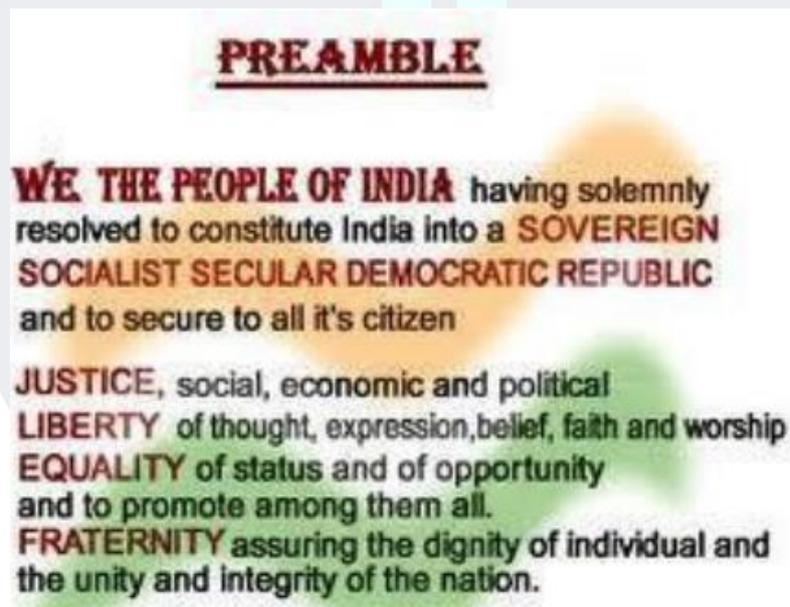
Republic: The head of the state is elected for a fixed period of time and the position is not hereditary.

Justice: Citizens cannot be discriminated on the grounds of caste, religion, and gender.

Liberty: Citizens are free to think and express their thoughts.

Equality: All citizens are equal before the law irrespective of their caste, class, or gender.

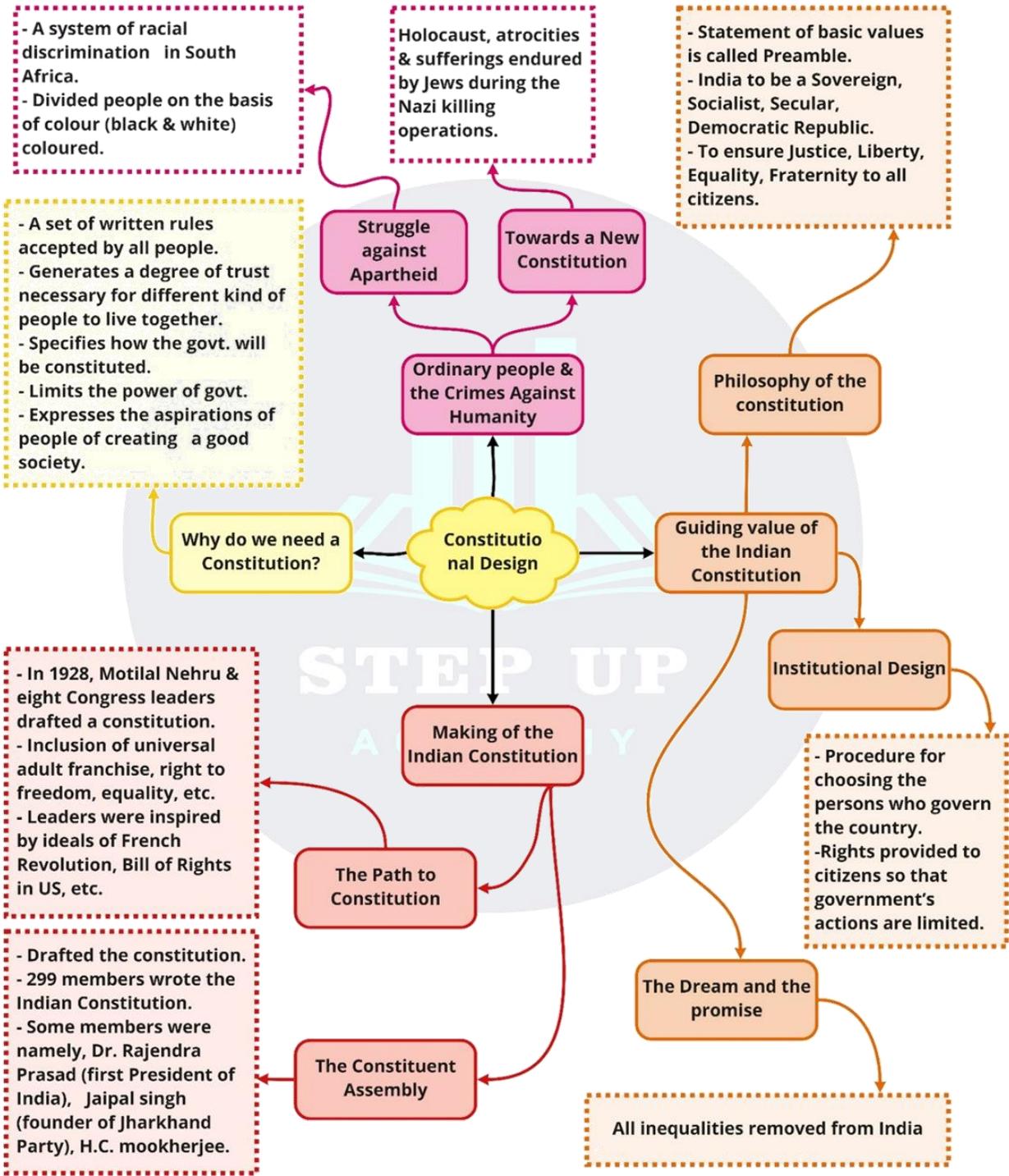
Fraternity: All citizens of India are equal, and no one is inferior to another



Preamble of our Constitution



Class : 9th Social Studies (Political Science)
Chapter-2: Constitutional Design



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

- What does a Republic mean?
 - King has the power to decide
 - The head of the state is hereditary
 - Dictatorship
 - The head of the state is an elected person and not a hereditary positions.
- Who framed Indian Constitution?
 - Ordinary Citizens
 - Governor General of India
 - British Parliament
 - Constituent Assembly
- When were elections of Constituent Assembly held?
 - June 1946
 - July, 1946
 - August 1946
 - September 1946
- President of constituent Assembly was
 - B.R. Ambedkar
 - B.N. Rao
 - K.M. Munshi
 - Rajendra Prasad
- Who was the Chairman of Drafting Committee?
 - B.R. Ambedkar
 - Rajendra Prasad
 - K.M. Munshi
 - B.N. Rao
- The first meeting of the Constituent Assembly was held on
 - September 1946
 - October 1946
 - November 1946
 - December 1946
- How much time did framing of constitution took?
 - 3 years, 11 months, 18 days
 - 2 years, 11 months, 18 days
 - 1 years, 11 months, 18 days
 - 1 year, 11 months, 16 days
- When was Indian Constitution adopted?
 - 26 November 1949
 - 26 December 1949
 - 26 January 1950
 - 26 February 1950
- Which article of the Indian Constitution, the procedure of amendment of constitution is mentioned?
 - Article 366
 - Article 367
 - Article 368
 - Article 369
- When was the first amendment to the Indian Constituent made?
 - In 1950
 - In 1951
 - In 1952
 - In 1953
- To which country does Nelson Mandela belong?
 - Namibia
 - Uganda
 - South Africa
 - Zimbabwe
- System of 'Apartheid' was prevalent in which country?
 - Ghana
 - India
 - Gold Coast
 - South Africa
- What is the full form of A.N.C.?
 - Asian National Congress
 - African National Congress
 - African National Contest
 - American National Congress
- Who was the president of Constituent Assembly?
 - Dr. Rajendra Prasad
 - Dr. Bhim Rao Ambedkar
 - Sh. B.N. Rao
 - Mahatma Gandhi



15. Who framed Indian constitution?
 - (a) Governor General
 - (b) Ordinary Citizens
 - (c) Constituent Assembly
 - (d) British Parliament

Very Short Questions:

1. Mention the number of states in the Union of India.
2. Mention the number of union territories in India.
3. Give the date when the Constitution of India was Enforced.
4. Who was elected as the President of the Constituent Assembly?
5. Name the chairman of the drafting committee who drafted the constitution.
6. Name the three states which Originated in 2001.
7. What is meant by the union territory?
8. For how many days did the Constituent Assembly meet?
9. What time was taken in the making of the constitution?
10. Why tire Constitution is called a living document?

Short Questions:

1. How were the number of seats allocated to the states?
2. What is Constitution?
3. Explain in your own words the difference you find between the political maps of India, in 1947 and in 2002.
4. Why the Constituent Assembly is called the miniature India?
5. Give a brief description of the Constituent Assembly.
6. Make a table of the languages which have been included in the Constitution.
7. Name the states which were carved out of in view of the popular demand much after 1956.

Long Questions:

1. What is the basic structure of the T Constitution?
2. Explain terms such as "sovereign", "democratic", and republic
3. Compare the grant of the democratic rights as it came in the European countries and in India.
4. Write a brief note on the Directive Principles of State Policy.

5. Who proposed the Objectives Resolution? For what did it stand?

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) followed by a statement of Reason (R) is given. Choose the correct option out of the choices given below each question.

Assertion (A) : The white rulers treated all non-whites as inferiors.

Reason (R) : The white rulers divided the people and labeled them on the basis of their skin colour.

- A) Both A and R are correct and R is the correct explanation of A
- B) Both A and R are correct, but R is not the correct explanation of A
- C) A is true, but R is false
- D) A is false, but R is true

2. In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) followed by a statement of Reason (R) is given. Choose the correct option out of the choices given below each question.

Assertion (A) : The Constitution of a country is a set of written rules that are accepted by all the people living in a country.

Reason (R) : It generates a degree of trust and coordination among people that is necessary for different kinds of people living together.

- A) Both A and R are correct and R is the correct explanation of A
- B) Both A and R are correct, but R is not the correct explanation of A
- C) A is true, but R is false
- D) A is false, but R is true

Case Study Based Question:

1. Read the source and answer the following questions.

Finally, the manner in which the Constituent Assembly worked gives sanctity to the Constitution. The Constituent Assembly worked in a systematic, open and consensual manner. First some basic principles were decided and agreed upon. Then a Drafting Committee chaired by Dr. B.R. Ambedkar prepared a draft constitution for discussion. Several rounds of thorough discussion took place on the Draft Constitution, clause by clause. More than two thousand amendments were considered. The members deliberated for 114 days spread over

three years. Every document presented and every word spoken in the Constituent Assembly has been recorded and preserved. These are called 'Constituent Assembly Debates'. When printed, these debates are 12 bulky volumes! These debates provide the rationale behind every provision of the Constitution. These are used to interpret the meaning of the Constitution.

- (1) The Constitution of India was passed and adopted by the Constituent Assembly which of the following days?
 - A) 24th January, 1949
 - B) 26th January, 1950
 - C) 26th November, 1949
 - D) 26th November, 1950
- (2) The members of the Constituent Assembly were
 - A) Nominated by the Governor-General.
 - B) Directly elected by the people.
 - C) Nominated by the Congress.
 - D) Elected by the Legislatures of various provinces and nominated by the rulers of princely states.
- (3) Which of the following statements are true regarding the Composition of the Constituent Assembly after partition?
 - A) The total strength of the Constituent Assembly was 299.
 - B) The Drafting Committee under the chairmanship of Dr. BR Ambedkar consisted of Eight members.
 - C) The Chairman of the Union Constituent Committee was Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel.
 - D) The representatives were to be elected from the four Constituents Hindu, Muslim, Sikh and Christian.
- (4) Every document presented and every word spoken in the Constituent Assembly has been recorded and preserved. These are known as.....
 - A) Constitutional Debates
 - B) Constituent Assembly Agenda
 - C) Constitutional Assembly Debates
 - D) Constituent Assembly Minutes

2. Read the given passage and answer the following questions.

On the 26th of January, 1950 we are going to enter a life of contradictions. In politics we will have equality and in social and economic life we will have inequality. In politics we will be recognising the principle of one man one vote and one vote one value. In our social and economic life, we shall, by reason of our social and economic structure, continue to deny the principle of one man one value. How long shall we continue to live this life of contradictions? How long shall we continue to deny equality in our social and economic life? If we continue to deny it for long, we will do so only by putting our political democracy in peril.

- (1) The speaker of the given lines is
 - A) Jawaharlal Nehru
 - B) Mahatma Gandhi
 - C) Shyama Prasad Mukherjee
 - D) Dr. B.R. Ambedkar
- (2) Which of the following statement is/ are true about the speaker?
 - A) He was one of the main architects of the Indian Constitution.
 - B) He worked towards eradicating untouchability and other social inequalities.
 - C) He had complete faith in democracy.
 - D) All of the above
- (3) The speaker in the above lines is a bitter critic of.....
 - A) Mahatma Gandhi
 - B) Dr. Rajendra Prasad
 - C) Jawaharlal Nehru
 - D) Maulana Abul Kalam Azad
- (4) Which of the following days is celebrated to mark the enforcement of the constitution?
 - A) Independence day
 - B) Republic day
 - C) Constitution Enforcement day
 - D) Gandhi Jayanti



Answer Key

MCQ

- (d) The head of the state is an elected person and not a hereditary positions.
- (d) Constituent Assembly
- (b) July, 1946
- (d) Rajendra Prasad
- (a) B.R. Ambedkar
- (d) December, 1946
- (b) 2 years, 11 months, 18 days
- (a) 26 November, 1949
- (c) Article 368
- (b) In 1951
- (c) South Africa
- (d) South Africa
- (b) African National Congress
- (a) Dr. Rajendra Prasad
- (a) Governor General

Very Short Answer:

- Twenty eight (2006).
- Seven (2006).
- January 26, 1950, also called the Republic Day.
- Dr. Rajendra Prasad.
- Dr. B. R. Ambedkar.
- 1.Chattisgarh,
- 2.Uttranchal,
- 3.Jharkhand.
- Union territory is the region where the government is under the direct control of the Centre.
- 114 days.
- 2 years 11 months and 18 days.
- The Constitution is called a living document because it has the scope of continuous development according to the needs, aspirations and the expectations of the people.

Short Answer:

- Each of the states was allocated the number of seats in such a manner that the ratio between the number of seats and the population remain practical.

- Constitution is a set of rules according to which the government of a country runs. The constitution also defines the composition and powers of the three organs of the government- the Executive, the Legislative and the Judiciary. The constitution also explains the relations between the government and the citizens. The constitution defines the powers of the government so clearly that in order to make sure the government does not misuse its powers. The constitution protects the right of the citizens. In fact, every independent country prepares a constitution of its own as it signifies independence.
- The political map of India in 1947: In 1947, when India got its freedom; it had provinces and several princely states. Many of its parts were still: under the foreign possession like Pondicherry, Yanam, Mahe, and Chandernagore were under the French rule while Goa, Daman and Diu were under the rule of Portugal, This also shows nearly 562 princely states independence. Hie political map of India in 2002: This map shows the present political condition of India. having 28 states and 7 union territories. In the present map of India, there is no foreign territory.
- The Constituent Assembly is called the miniature India because the members of the Constituent Assembly were from all of the parts and communities of the country. In fact, the Constituent Assembly did not only have the members from different communities and regions but also had the members representing different political parties. Hence, it was a miniature India in a very true sense.
- The Constituent Assembly had the great leaders like Pt. Jawaharlal Nehru, Sardar Ballabhbhai Patel, Maulana Abdul Kalam Azad, Dr. Shyama Prasad Mukerji, Sardar Baldev Singh. Dr. Rajendra Prasad was the President of the Constituent Assembly. Dr. B.R. Ambedkar was the Chairman of the Drafting Committee. In fact, the Constituent Assembly had its members from different regions and sections of India. More than 30 members were from scheduled castes. The Anglo Indian community was being represented by Frank Anthony while H. P. Modi was representing the Parsi community.

6. Assemse Bengali Gujarati' Hindi Dogri Kannada
Kashmiri Konkani Malayalam
Manipuri Marathi Nepali Orissa Santhali
Punjabi Sanskrit Sindhi Tamil Maithali
Telugu Urdu Bodo

7. In 1956 the states of India were reorganized for the first. But several states were carved out in view of the popular demands.

These states are

- Gujarat,
- Nagaland,
- Haryana,
- Mizoram,
- Himachal Pradesh,
- Manipur,
- Meghalaya,
- Arunachal Pradesh,
- Tripura,
- Goa,
- Chhattisgarh,
- Jharkhand,
- Uttaranchal.

Long Answer:

1. The Constitution of India does not describe as what is the basic structure of the Constitution. But the Supreme Court has done it.

The basic structure of the constitution is as follows: "every provision of the Constitution is essential; otherwise it would not have been put in the Constitution. This is true. But this does not place every provision of the Constitution in the same position. The true position is that every provision of the Constitution can be amended provided the basic foundation and structure of the Constitution remains the same.

The basic structure may be said to consist of the following features:

- Supremacy of the Constitution;
- Republican and Democratic form of Government;
- Secular character of the Constitution;
- Separation of powers between the legislature, the executive and the judiciary;
- Federal character of the Constitution."

"The above structure is built on the basic foundation, i.e., the dignity and freedom of the individual. This is of supreme importance. This cannot, by any form of amendment, be destroyed," The Supreme Court said this in its judgement on the Kesavananda Bharati case.

2. The Constitution proclaimed India to be a sovereign democratic republic. This three words- sovereign, democratic and republic are significant. Sovereignty means supreme power. It means the right of people to take decisions on internal matters as well as policies determining our relations with other countries. As the authority of the government rests upon the support of the people, people are sovereign. Democracy means people enjoy equal political rights.

They include right to form associations, right to criticise and oppose policies of government, right to contest elections and hold public offices. People have a right to elect a government through periodical, free and fair elections. Government is responsible to people and exercises powers only as defined in the Constitution.

No government can continue in power without the support of majority of people's representatives in the legislature. People can change the government in elections. Republic means that the head of the State (President) is an elected person. He/ she wields power for a fixed term. India is a Union of States.

3. European countries had developed industrially before they became full-fledged democracies. But in India democracy came before any such substantial industrial development. At the time of its Independence, India was predominantly an agrarian economy. Illiteracy was widespread. Poverty was rampant. This was an unusual experiment in establishing democracy in conditions of mass poverty. European countries had become strong nations by the time they became democratic.

The situation was different in our country. The task of building the nation in real sense started after we became a democracy. In Europe and America expansion of democracy took place by limiting the powers of government. People there believed that freedom is possible if there is no



unnecessary interference of government in private affairs of the individual.

So they fought for freedoms against absolutist governments. But in India, government was assigned a larger role from the beginning: We wanted the state to bring about all-around development. So the expansion of democracy in India has been bound with the expansion of government.

Thus in the history of the Western nations, expansion of democracy was associated with industrialisation, emergence of strong nations, militant struggles for voting rights and limiting the governmental powers. Those countries went through these stages one after the other, over a period of nearly 200 years. But in India democracy had to address these issues all at the same time.

The country has to industrially develop, build a nation and national government, transform social relations, and meet the basic needs of the people. The Indian state had to simultaneously pursue these, goals in a democratic framework.

4. The Constitution prescribed certain guidelines for governments in making policies. These are called "Directive Policies of State Policy". Their objective is to secure a social order, which promotes the welfare of the people. For example, the State should take steps for securing an adequate means of livelihood to all citizens.

The ownership and control of the material resources of the nation are to be distributed in such a way as to secure the common good. The economic system of the county is to be operated in a maimer so as to prevent concentration of wealth.

Men and women shall receive equal pay for equal work. Free and compulsory education, shall be provided to all children. Child labour shall be eliminated. The principles of socialism and Gandhian ideals are incorporated in these Directive Principles.

5. The Objectives Resolution was proposed by Pt Jawaharlal Nehru on 13th December 1946. It was passed on 22 January 1947. Objective Resolution was in fact a document which contained the main objectives of the framing of the new constitution for India.

The Objectives Resolution stood for the following objectives-

- The Objectives Resolution dealt with fundamentals which were commonly held and had been accepted by the people.
- The Resolution states that it is our firm and solemn resolve to have a sovereign republic.
- It stands for a free India that can be nothing but a republic.
- It declared that the Union would be an "independent Sovereign Republic" and it would be comprised of the autonomic units of the British and the princely states with residuary powers.
- It ensures that the ideas of social, political and economic democracy would be guaranteed to all the sections of the people.
- It also ensures that an adequate safeguard would be provided for minorities and the backward communities and the areas.
- It also guaranteed that the people of India would be given the freedom of thought, vocation, association, expression, belief, faith, worship and in law and morality.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. A) Both A and R are correct and R is the correct explanation of A
2. A) Both A and R are correct and R is the correct explanation of A

Case Study Answer:

- **Answer:**
 - (1) C) 26th November, 1949
 - (2) D) Elected by the Legislatures of various provinces and nominated by the rulers of princely states.
 - (3) A) The total strength of the Constituent Assembly was 299.
 - (4) C) Constitutional Assembly Debates
- **Answer:**
 - (1) D) Dr. B.R. Ambedkar
 - (2) D) All of the above
 - (3) A) Mahatma Gandhi
 - (4) B) Republic day



Electoral Politics

3

Elections in a Democracy

People cannot govern themselves directly in any democratic setup. Thus, elections are held in a democracy in which people elect their own representatives.

Why are Elections Needed?

Elections are needed because of the following reasons:

- It is not possible for people in large countries to hold meetings and take decisions regarding the working of the Government. Not all people are educated enough to take major decisions. Thus, in democratic countries, elections are held where people elect their own representatives who make laws for the country.
- Representatives cannot be selected on the basis of age and experience. Such representatives may not rule according to the wishes of the people. It is only through elections that people can elect their own representatives.

Therefore, elections are needed in any democracy. During elections, voters choose the people who could make laws for them. They also choose a specific party which may govern the country according to its principles. Thus, voters decide the people and the party which form the Government.

Free and Fair Elections

Sometimes elections may not be fair. For example, in China, elections are held at regular intervals but only the members of the Communist party can contest the elections. This is not a democratic election. Some features of free and fair elections are

- Every citizen above a certain age should have the right to vote, and every vote should have one value.
- There should be more than one party, and parties and people should be free to contest elections.
- Elections should be conducted at regular intervals.
- A candidate preferred by the people should be elected.
- More importantly, elections should be held in a free and fair manner and people should have the right to choose their own candidates.

In a democracy, political competency is always preferred even though it has some limitations. It is claimed that political competency encourages factionalism, petty party politics and dirty tricks employed by the parties to ensure the victory of their candidates.

Our Constitution however has opted for free electoral politics despite short comings. Political competition is necessary in the world. To eliminate dirty tricks used by political leaders, efforts should be made to improve the knowledge and character of political leaders. Besides, if a leader is not fulfilling his promise, he may be rejected by the voters in the next election. Thus, even if a political party is driven by the motive to be in power, it will still be forced to serve the people.

What is system of elections in India?

General Election

- Elections are held in all constituencies at the same time, either on the same day or within a few days.



By-election

- Sometimes election is held only for one constituency or two to fill the vacancy caused by death or resignation of a member.

Electoral Constituencies

- The country is divided into different areas based on population for the purpose of elections which are called electoral constituencies.
- For Lok Sabha elections, the country is divided into 543 constituencies.
- Similarly, each state is divided into a specific number of Assembly constituencies.

Reserved Constituencies

- Some constituencies are reserved for people who belong to the Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes.

Voter's List

- The list of people who are eligible for voting is prepared by the Election Commission of India before election.
- In India, all the citizens aged 18 years and above has the right to vote, regardless of his or her caste, creed, colour, religion or gender.

Nomination of Candidates

- Anyone who can be a voter can also become a candidate in elections.
- However, minimum age of in order to be a candidate the minimum age is 25 years.

Election Campaign

- The campaigns take place for a two-week period between the announcement of the final list of candidates and the date of polling.

Polling and Counting of Votes

- The final stage of an election is the day when the voters cast or 'poll' their vote.

Electoral System in India

- In India, the Lok Sabha elections are held at the national level, while the State Assembly (Vidhan Sabha) elections are held at the state level. The elected members of both Lok Sabha and Vidhan Sabha are held regularly after every five years.
- When elections are held after five years to the Lok Sabha and the Assembly, they are called general elections. When elections take place for one constituency only to fill the vacancy created by the death or the resignation of the member, it is called a by-election.
- India is divided into several areas known as electoral constituencies for the purpose of voting. People living in one constituency elect one representative from their area.
- For example, in the Lok Sabha elections, the country is divided into 543 constituencies. One person is elected from each constituency. He/she is called a Member of Parliament. Each constituency has roughly an equal population.
- Similarly, in the State Assembly elections, the state is divided into a specific number of constituencies. An elected member of a constituency is known as a Member of Legislative Assembly (MLA).
- The same is the case with the municipal or panchayat elections. Each village or town is divided into a number of wards which are like constituencies.
- In India, some constituencies are reserved for people belonging to scheduled castes, scheduled tribes and other economic backward castes. This has been done so that even the most marginal sections of society get a fair chance of representation in the Lok Sabha, State Assembly, Municipal Corporation and Panchayat. In municipal corporations and gram panchayats, one-third of the seats are reserved for women.

Voter's List

- In a democracy, the list of persons who can vote is prepared well before the elections. Officially, this list is called an Electoral Roll and is commonly known as the Voters' List.
- In India, every adult above the age of eighteen years is eligible to vote irrespective of caste, religion and gender.

The voters' list is revised after every five years. Of late, an Election Photo Identity Card has been introduced, although it is not compulsory to show this card.



A lady showing her voters identity card while voting at the booth.

Nomination of a Candidate

- A person above 25 years can contest the elections. Political parties select their candidates for contesting elections and give them a 'ticket' to contest the elections.
- A person contesting the elections has to fill a nomination form and deposit an amount as a security deposit.
- While contesting elections, every candidate has to give complete details of educational qualifications, serious criminal cases pending against them and total property value of his/her family.



Electronic Voting Machine

Role of the Election Commission

In India, elections are held by an extremely powerful Election Commission (EC). Similar to the judiciary, it is an independent body.

- The Chief Election Commission (CEC) is appointed by the President of India. CEC is not answerable to the President or to the Government of India. The powers of the EC are
- It takes decisions on every matter related to the elections. It announces the date of the elections and the declaration of the results.
- It implements the Code of Conduct and takes action against candidates who violate it.
- It gives guidelines to the Government which have to be followed during the elections.
- When on election duty, government officials work under the supervision of the EC and not the Government.
- Every political party has to obey the instructions and guidelines of the EC.

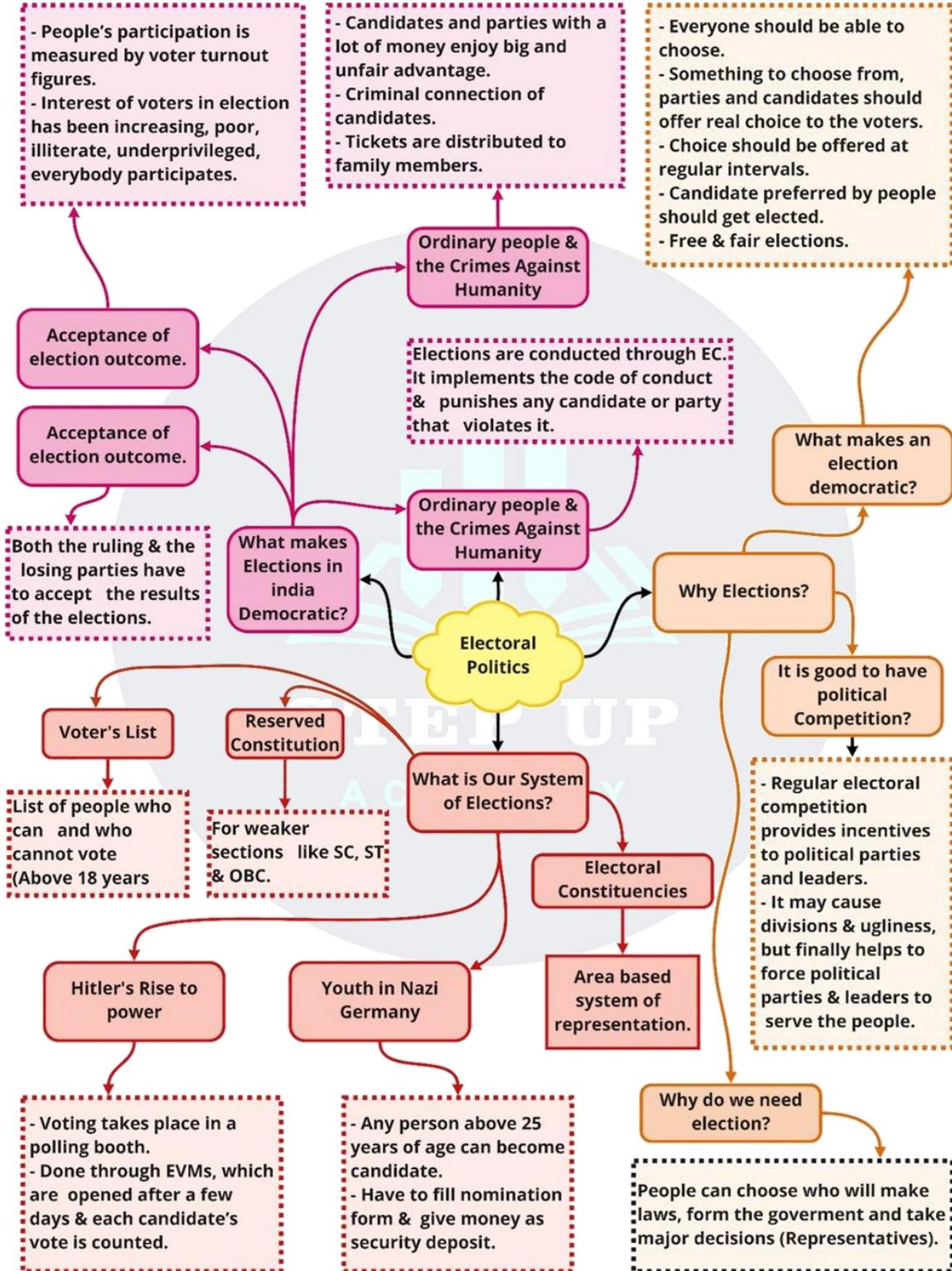
The results of the elections in India are respected by each political party. Free and fair elections are held in the country. This can be ascertained by the fact that the ruling Central Government and various State Governments routinely lose the elections. Candidates with criminal records and those who 'buy' votes also often lose the elections.

Challenges to Free and Fair Elections in India





Class : 9th Social Studies (Political Science)
Chapter-3: Electoral Politics



Important Questions

Multiple Choice questions-

- How much money was spent in conducting 2004 Lok Sabha elections?
 - About Rs. 1,000 crores
 - About Rs. 1,100 crores
 - About Rs. 1,200 crores
 - About Rs. 1,300 crores
- According to election law in India. What is the current limit of election expenses by a candidate or party in a constituency for a Lok Sabha election?
 - Rs. 35 lakhs
 - Rs. 30 lakhs
 - Rs. 25 lakhs
 - Rs. 20 lakhs
- Who appoints member of the Election Commission?
 - Prime Minister
 - President
 - Vice-President
 - None of these
- Who issues Election Manifesto?
 - President
 - Prime Minister
 - Political Parties
 - None of these
- What is the tenure of Lok Sabha and Vidhan Sabha in India?
 - Four years
 - Five years
 - Six years
 - None of these
- Which institution conducts elections in India?
 - Parliament
 - Supreme Court
 - Election Commission
 - None of these
- What is the age when a citizen get voting rights?
 - 18 years
 - 21 years
 - 25 years
 - None of these
- The procedure of impeaching Chief Election Commissioner:
 - The resolution should be passed by 2/3rd majority of the members of Parliament.
 - The resolution should be passed by 1/3rd majority of the members of Parliament.
 - The resolution should be passed by 3/4th majority of the members of Parliament.
 - None of these
- Challenge before free and fair elections is:
 - Allotment of Symbols
 - Casteism and Communalism
 - Withdrawal of Nominations
 - None of these
- What is the meaning of Criminalization of politics?
 - Ruling parties try to use official machinery during election campaign
 - Candidates and political parties use lot of money in the election
 - People with criminal background and tendencies are entering politics
 - None of these
- Importance of Election Symbols is:
 - Illiterate voters can identify party and candidate through these symbols
 - In a constituency if there are more than one candidate with same name, then symbol can be used the differentiate
 - Both
 - None of these
- How many assembly seats are there in Haryana Vidhan Sabha/ (Assembly)?
 - 90
 - 70
 - 100
 - 80



13. How many seats are there in Delhi Assembly/(Vidhan Sabha)?
- 90
 - 70
 - 100
 - 80
14. For Lok Sabha elections, the country is divided into constituencies.
- 553
 - 563
 - 533
 - 543
15. What is the minimum age required for getting voting rights in India?
- 21
 - 25
 - 18
 - 16

Very Short:

- What is considered as the barometer of democracy?
- What is known as the lifeline of the election procedure?
- Name the state where the National Conference is active in politics.
- In which state AI'ADMK is a prominent party?
- What is the name of the Chief Election Commissioner during whose tenure a large number of electoral -reforms were carried out?
- What are the means of electronic media?
- By whom the election procedure of our country is controlled?

- What is the election called which is held when Lok Sabha or the State Assembly is dissolved before die expiry of its full term?
- What is meant by an election?
- On which principle is the system of universal adult franchise based?

Short Questions:

- Did Devi Lai fulfil promise to waive farmer loans on becoming Chief Minister?
- What is Constitution
- What are the different methods used by political parties during the election campaign to seek vote?
- How many seats did the Lok Dal also capture in the 1987 elections?
- How many seats did the Congress Party obtain in 1987?
- Why are elections considered essential for any representative democracy in our times?
- It is said that the elections are about political competition. Explain

Long Questions:

- Give some of the successful slogans by different political parties in various elections in India in the past
- Give details of the election laws which prohibit the candidates when they indulge in election campaign
- Mention the details about a model code of conduct for the election campaign as agreed by all the political parties in India.
- Explain Universal Adult Franchise.
- "It is said elections are the barometers of Democracy". What do you understand by this sentence?

Answer Key

MCQ:

- (d) About Rs. 1,300 crores
- (c) Rs. 25 lakhs
- (b) President

- (c) Political Parties
- (b) Five years
- (c) Election Commission
- (a) 18 years

8. (a) The resolution should be passed by 2/3rd majority of the members of Parliament.
 9. (b) casteism and Communalism
 10. (c) People with criminal background and tendencies are entering politics
 11. (c) Both
 12. (a) 90
 13. (b) 70
 14. (d) 543
 15. (c) 18
6. The elections are considered essential for democracy because of the following reasons-
 - The voters are able to choose who will make laws for them.
 - They can choose who will sit in government and take major decisions.
 - They can choose the party whose ' policies will guide the government and lawmaking.

These choices are not made once and for all. In democratic elections, the people get a chance to make a fresh choice after some time. If they want they can retain the same party', the same government and the same representatives. But if they are hot, satisfied with the performance of any of these, they can make a change at that level or at all the levels. This ensures that representatives remain answerable to the people.

Very Short Answer:

1. Elections.
2. The political parties are known as the lifeline of the election procedure.
3. Jammu and Kashmir.
4. In Tamil Nadu.
5. T. N. Seshah.
6.
 - Radio,
 - Television,
 - Cinema.
7. By the Election Commission.
8. Mid-term election.
9. An election is the contest which is held between different political parties in order to get people's support.
10. On the principle of "one person one vote"

Short Answer:

1. Yes, after, becoming Chief Minister, Devi Lai fulfilled the promise he made in election campaign by passing an order waiving the loans of the farmers, agricultural labourers, and small shopkeepers.
2. Devi Lai's approach was direct- talking to liis audience.
3. Processions, public meetings, door to door campaign, holding corner meetings, distributing pamphlets, badges etc.
4. 60 seats out of 90; Lok Dal together with Bhartiya Janata Party captured 76 seats.
5. 5 seats.

7. Elections are all about political competition. The competition takes various forms. The most obvious form is the competition among political parties. At the level of constituency, it takes the form of competition among several candidates. Very often the competition turns into a personality race among the top leaders of various parties. Elections also involve competition among various policies and ideologies. If there is no competition, there is no point in having elections.

Long Answer:

1. Some of the successful slogans are asunder:

The Congress party led by Indira Gandhi gave the slogan of "Remove Poverty" (Garibi Hatao) in the Lok Sabha elections of 1971. The party promised to recurrent all the policies of the government to remove poverty from the country.

"Save Democracy" was the slogan used by Janata Party in the next Lok Sabha election held in 1977. The party promised to undo the excesses committed during Emergency and restore civil liberties.

The Left Front used the slogan of "Land to the Tiller" in the West Bengal assembly elections held in 1977.

"Protect the Self-Respect of the Telugus" was the slogan used by N. T. Rama Rao, the leader of the Telugu Desam Party in Andhra Pradesh assembly elections in 1983.



2. According to our election laws, no party or candidate can:

- Bribe or threaten the voters.
- Appeal to them in the name of caste or religion etc.
- Use government resources for election campaign.
- Spend more than Rs. 25 Lakh for a Lok Sabha election or Rs. 10 Lakhs in an assembly election.

If they do so/their election can be rejected by court even after they have been declared elected. Minimum conditions of a Democratic Elections First, everyone should be able to choose; Everyone can vote and every vote should have equal value. Second, there should be something to choose from. Parties and candidates should be free to contest elections and should offer some real choice to the voters.

Third, the voice should be offered at regular intervals. Elections must be held regularly after every few years.

Fourth, the candidate preferred by the people should get elected. Fifth, elections should be conducted in a free and fair manner where people can choose as they really wish.

3. The following sum up the Model Code of conduct for the election campaign:

- Any place of worship shall not be used for election propaganda.

- Criticisms of the opponents shall be limited to their policies, programmes, past records and work and will not mention their personal lives.
- No flags, banners, notices, slogans shall be placed on any building without the permission of the owner.
- The government transport including official aircrafts, vehicles, machinery and personnel shall not be used by ministers and the ruling party.
- The ministers shall not lay foundation stones of any projects or make any promises of providing public facilities after elections have been announced.

4. The Universal Adult Franchise 'refers to the enjoyment of right to vote by all the adult citizens of the county, without any discrimination i.e., on the basis of caste, creed, colour, sex, education and place of birth. It is a well-known fact that every citizen of India who is 18 years of age and above and who is not otherwise disqualified, is entitled to vote in the elections.

5. In a democratic form of government, tie elections are considered as barometers of democracy because the elections are very crucial in democratic setup. Elections provide opportunity to the people to judge the performance of the representatives. Elections also generate a new political attitude which can determine the future course of the country at large.



Working on Institutions

4

Need for Political Institutions

In a democratic country like India, major decisions are taken by the Parliament which is a body of elected representatives in the country. All bills become laws when they are passed by the Parliament with a majority vote. In this chapter, a Government Order regarding the reservation of seats for people belonging to scheduled castes and scheduled tribes is taken as an example to understand how a major policy decision is taken by the Government.

- In 1979, the Government of India had appointed a committee under B. P. Mandal to determine criteria to identify the socially and economic backward classes in the country. It was also entrusted with the task to suggest ways and means to improve their socioeconomic condition.
- One of the recommendations of the Mandal Commission was to reserve 27% of seats for the people of socioeconomic backward classes (SEBC) in government institutions and government jobs.
- When the Janta Dal formed the Government at the Centre in 1989, its leader V. P. Singh became the Prime Minister. The President of India announced the intention of the Government to implement the recommendations of the Mandal Commission.
- In 1990, the Central cabinet decided to implement the recommendations of the Mandal Commission. This was communicated to both houses by the then Prime Minister of India.
- The decision of the Cabinet was sent to the Department of Personnel and Training. An Order to this effect was drafted by the department with the approval of the minister. This Order was signed by an officer on behalf of the Central Government.
- This issue was feverously debated in newspapers and magazines, and on
- TV and radio. Protests against this Order were organised all over the country. While some people argued that this Order denied equality of opportunity to the people and hampered the unity of the nation, others argued that this Order gave a fair chance to people belonging to SEBC who have been completely subjugated by the people of upper castes and classes.
- Cases against this Order were also filed in the Supreme Court. The latter after examining various clauses and the present scenario declared that the Order of the Government of India is valid. However, the Supreme Court asked the Government to modify its previous Order and exclude the rich section of the backward classes from the benefits of reservations.
- Hence, another memorandum was drafted by the Department of Personnel and Training, and the policy of reservation was implemented.

We thus find that in a democracy, important decisions are taken by the Prime Minister and his cabinet ministers. The civil servants ensure the implementation of important policy decisions. Citizens may file cases directly in the Supreme Court against the Government's decision. The decision of the Supreme Court is considered final.



Protest against caste-based reservations



Houses of Parliament

In India, at the Centre, there are two houses of Parliament—the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha. The following table shows the differences between both houses.

Lok Sabha	Rajya Sabha
Its members are elected by the people of India.	Its members are elected by the elected members of the Lok Sabha and the Legislative Assemblies of the states.
Its members are elected for a period of five years.	Its members are elected for a period of six years.
Its maximum strength cannot be more than 552 members.	Its maximum strength cannot be more than 250 members.
Lok Sabha can be dissolved before completing its term of five years.	Rajya Sabha cannot be dissolved. One-third of its members retire after every two years.
It is also called the Lower House.	It is also called the Upper House.
It is a powerful house as it can frame or change the existing laws.	It is comparatively less powerful. No money bills can originate in the Rajya Sabha.

The Lok Sabha exercises supreme power in the country in the following ways:

- Any ordinary bills need to be passed by members of both houses. In a joint session of both houses, generally the will of the members of the Lok Sabha prevails.
- The Lok Sabha has more powers than the Rajya Sabha in monetary matters. The Rajya Sabha cannot reject money bills.
- The Lok Sabha controls the Council of Ministers. If a motion of no confidence is passed in the Parliament against any minister, then all ministers (including the Prime Minister) have to resign from their posts.

Executive

The members of the Parliament who are part of the Government and who take important decisions on behalf of the people including the Prime Minister and his Council of Ministers form the executive wing of the Government. They are called the 'Executive' as they execute the policies of the Government. Those people who are elected by the people are called the Political Executive (the PM and his cabinet), while the people who are appointed and remain in office even when the ruling party changes are known as Permanent Executive (civil servants). Because the members of the Political Executive are directly elected by the people, they exercise more powers than the Permanent Executive.

Functions of the Parliament

The Parliament consists of the elected representatives of the people. At the state level, it is known as the Legislative Assembly. The main functions of the Parliament are

- The Parliament not only makes laws for the country but also amends the existing laws. It can also revoke the existing laws.
- It exercises control over the Government. Ministers can take decisions as long as they enjoy the support of the Members of Parliament.
- The Government needs the approval of the Parliament before using public money.
- The Members of Parliament discuss and debate various policies of the Government. They can ask questions from the ministers and seek information from them.

Prime Minister and his Council of Ministers

- The Prime Minister is the leader of the party which gets a majority in the Lok Sabha elections. He chooses the members of his council. The Council of Ministers are appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister.

- The Council of Ministers includes the cabinet ministers such as the ministers of home, defense and finance. These cabinet ministers form the inner ring of the Council of Ministers and take important decisions. Each cabinet minister has to support another cabinet minister in his/her work.
- The Council of Ministers also includes Ministers of State with independent charge. They attend Cabinet meetings only when they are invited.
- Ministers of State assist the Cabinet Ministers.
- Every ministry has secretaries who are civil servants. They also coordinate the working of various ministries.
- Powers of the Prime Minister are
 - He presides over the meetings of the cabinet ministers and coordinates the workings of various departments.
 - He supervises the work of various ministries, and his decisions are final.
 - He appoints the ministers. He can also transfer or dismiss his ministers. When the Prime Minister quits, the entire ministry has to quit.



Cabinet – Inner ring of the Council of Ministers

Thus, the Prime Minister is the most powerful person in the country. However, when a coalition government is formed, he is not able to take any decision at his will because he has to consult various coalition parties before taking any decision.

The President

The President is the head of the state. His functions are ceremonial. The President is elected by the Members of Parliament and the members of the State Legislative Assemblies. Because he is not directly elected by the people of India, he is only a nominal executive. The powers of the President are

- All major policy decisions are issued by the Government in the name of the President.
- All ministers are appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister. He also appoints the Chief Justice of India, judges of the Supreme Court, Election Commissioners, Ambassadors and Governors of the states. He however can appoint them only on the advice of the Prime Minister.
- All international treaties and agreements are made by the Prime Minister in the name of the President.
- No bill becomes an Act until and unless it is signed by the President. The President may send the bill back to the Parliament for reconsideration. However, when it is sent to him for the second time, he has to pass it.
- When no party gets a majority in the Lok Sabha elections, the President can appoint the leader of largest party as the Prime Minister and ask him to prove the required majority in the Lok Sabha.

The Judiciary

In India, the judiciary consists of the Supreme Court, High Courts, District Courts and the courts at the lower level. India has an integral judiciary as the Supreme Court controls judicial administration of the country. Its decisions are considered final. The Supreme Court can decide disputes which involve-

- Citizens of the country
- Citizens on one side and Government on the other side
- Two or more State Governments
- Union Government on one hand and State Governments on the other hand

People who are not satisfied with the decision of the High Court can file cases in the Supreme Court.



The Supreme Court of India in New Delhi



Independence of the Judiciary

In India, the judiciary is independent from the control of the executive and legislature in the following ways:

- The judges of the Supreme Court and the High Courts are appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister and in consultation with the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court. Once appointed, the judges cannot be removed from their office.
- Judges can be removed from their office by the process of impeachment which needs to be passed by two-thirds majority of the members of both houses. Hence, the process of their removal is extremely difficult.
- The salaries of the judges cannot be reduced by the Government.

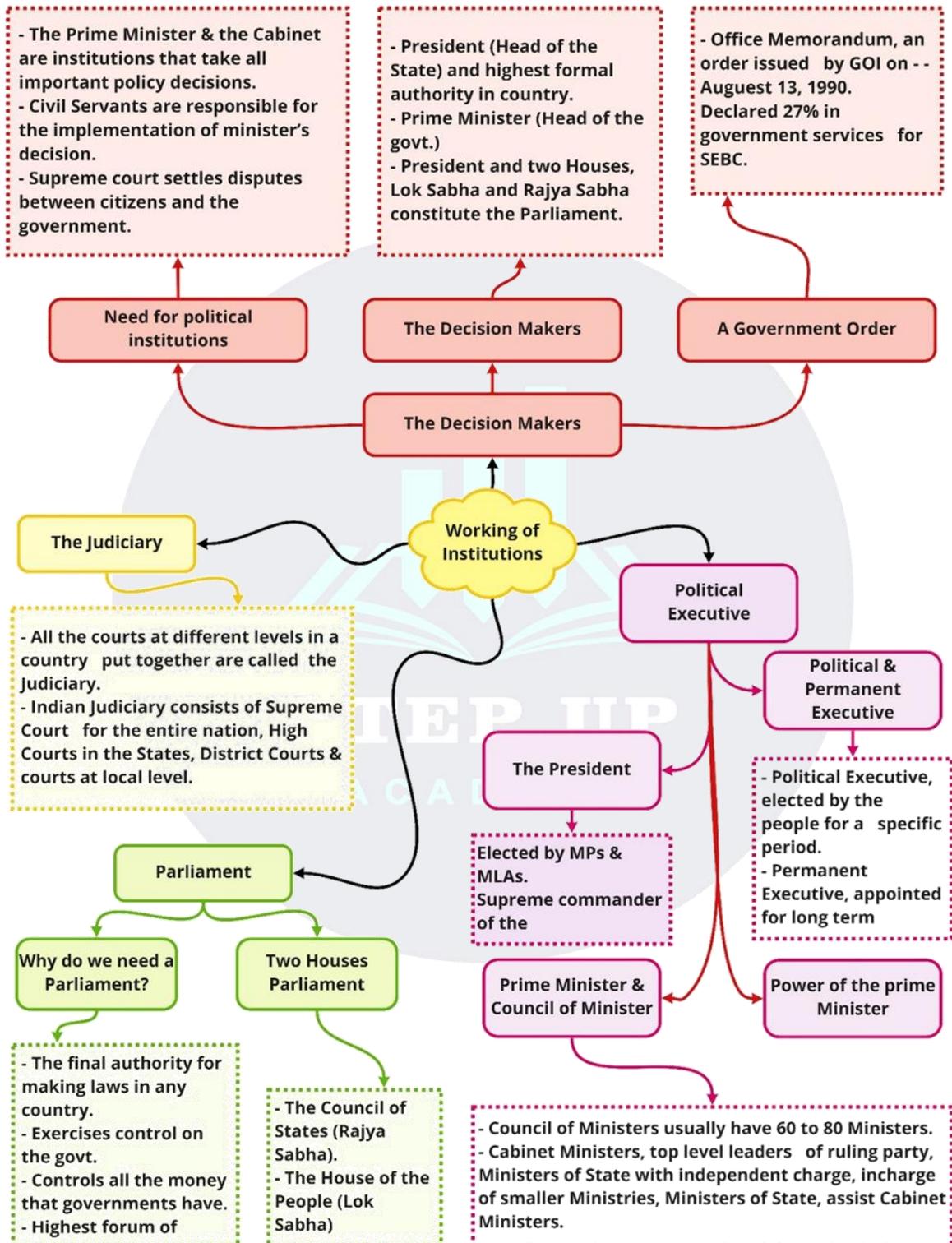
Powers of the Judiciary

The powers of the judiciary are

- The Supreme Court along with the High Courts has the power to interpret the Constitution of the country.
- Any law passed by the Executive, or the Legislature can be declared null and void by the Supreme Court if it is against the spirit of the Constitution. This is known as the power of judicial review.
- The judiciary protects the fundamental rights of the people.
- Anyone can file a case in the court if the general interests of the people are hurt by any government order. This is known as public interest litigation (PIL).
- The courts can always put a check on the malpractices of the people.



Class : 9th Social Studies (Political Science)
Chapter-4: Working of Institutions





Important Questions

Multiple Choice questions-

- Who is guardian of Fundamental Rights?
 - President
 - Parliament
 - Council of Ministers
 - Judiciary
- Who among the following is part of the political executive?
 - District Collector
 - Secretary of the ministry of Home Affairs
 - Home Minister
 - Director General of Police
- Which of the following statements about the judiciary is false?
 - Every law passed by the Parliament needs approval of the Supreme Court
 - Judiciary can strike down a law if it goes against the spirit of the Constitution
 - Judiciary is independent of the Executive
 - Any citizen can approach the court if his rights are violated.
- What is the tenure of Lok Sabha?
 - Four years
 - Five years
 - Six years
 - None of these
- How many members can President nominate for Lok Sabha?
 - 2 members
 - 12 members
 - 14 members
 - None of these
- How many members of Rajya Sabha are nominated by President?
 - 2 members
 - 12 members
 - 14 members
 - None of these
- Whose accent is required for a passed bill to become law?
 - Prime Minister
 - President
 - Vice-President
 - None of these
- Who appoints Prime Minister?
 - President
 - Ministers
 - Chief Justice of Supreme Court
 - None of these
- Who acts as President if office of the President fall vacant?
 - Prime Minister
 - Chief Justice
 - Vice President
 - None of these
- Who has the power to issue ordinance in India?
 - President
 - Vice President
 - Chairman of Rajya Sabha
 - None of these
- Who appoints Chief Justice of Supreme Court?
 - Prime Minister
 - President
 - Vice President
 - None of these
- Who is interpreter of constitution?
 - Parliament
 - President
 - Supreme Court
 - None of these
- How many houses are there in Indian Parliament?
 - One
 - Two
 - Three
 - Four



Very Short Answer:

1. 27% the vacancies.
2. Mandal Commission.
3. OM No. 36012/31/90-Est (SCT) dated 13.8.1990.
4. 1978.
5. (a) Joint Secretary: The officer who signed OM No. 36012/31/90.
(b) BP Mandal: The person who had headed the Second Backward Classes Commission.
(c) V. P. Singh: The Prime Minister when OM 36012/31/90 was issued.
(d) Indira Sawhney: One who filed a case against the Union of India in the Supreme Court relating to the Mandal Commission recommendations.
6. A democracy works through certain political institutions.
7. The Department of Personnel and Training decides about how and on what terms should the government employees be recruited.
8. The Cabinet meeting decides the major decisions about the country.
9. The Supreme Court is an institution where disputes about any policy or its implementation are resolved.
10. The Parliament makes laws for the country.

Short Answer:

1. The Prime Minister is the head of the central government. All the powers vested in the President are actually exercised by the Council of Ministers under the leadership of the Prime Minister.

As a matter of fact, the most powerful office in the central government is that of the Prime Minister.

Powers and Functions of the Prime Minister-

- He selects the members of the Council of Ministers.
- He allocates portfolios among the ministers.
- He can drop any minister.
- He presides over the meetings of the Council of Ministers.
- He decides about the policies of the government.

- He coordinates the v/or of different ministers.
 - He is also the chairman of the planning commission.
 - The entire government is associated with the name of the Prime Minister.
2. The Vice-President performs the duties and the functions of a President in his absence or illness. If the President resigns or dies in office, the Vice-President officiates till a new President is elected. The Vice-President is also the ex-officio chairman of the Rajya Sabha. The Vice-President in our country is elected for 5 years by an electoral college.

A candidate for the office of the Vice-President must be a citizen of India and must be of 35 years of age or above as well as he must be eligible to be a member of the Rajya Sabha.

3. The Council of Ministers in our country is headed by the Prime Minister. In the council, there are three categories of ministers:
 - The cabinet ministers,
 - The ministers of state,
 - deputy ministers. It is essential for the members of the Council of Ministers to be members of either house of the parliaments.

If a minister is not a member of the Parliament, he has to acquire its membership within six months of his appointment. The ministers are individually responsible for their ministries and departments. This responsibility is enforced through the Prime Minister. The Council of Ministers remains in power as long as it enjoys the support of the majority in the Lok Sabha.

4. The Speaker is elected by the members of Lok Sabha among themselves. The Speaker presides over the sessions and conducts its business. The Speaker may be a member of any political party. However once elected, he has to conduct, the business of the house impartially. It is the Speaker who keeps the house in order. Though he does not vote during the voting in the house, yet he can use his casting vote in case of a tie.
5. India is a federal country. Each of its states has a legislature. Some of the state legislatures have two houses while the maximum number of the states have only one house, the lower one. The upper house in a state legislature is known as

Vidhan Parishad while the lower house is known as the Vidhan Sabha. According to the provisions of our constitution, no legislative assembly is allowed to have more than 500 or less than 60 members.

The members of the Vidhan Sabha are elected by the people. A citizen of India of 25 years or more is able to be elected as its member.' The Legislative Assembly is generally elected for 5 years. However, it may be dissolved before its term. Just like the Parliament, in a state legislature, the lower house that is the Legislative Assembly is more powerful than the Legislative Council.

6. Financial Emergency is a situation in which the President of India feels that the financial Stability or the credit of India is threatened. And to cope with this situation, he declares financial emergency. In financial emergency, the President can reduce the salaries of all government officials including the Judges of the Supreme Court and High Courts.
7. When the President of our country is satisfied on the basis of the report of the governor of a state or even from other sources that the government in the state cannot be carried out in accordance with the provisions of the Constitution. In such a situation, he can declare emergency in that state. In this situation, the President can take over the entire work of the executive and dissolve or suspend the State Assembly. The governor rules in the name of the President. The budget is passed by the Parliament.

Long Answer:

1. Administration involves a lot of governmental activities. For example, the government is responsible for ensuring the security of the citizens and providing facilities for education and health to all. It collects taxes and spends money thus raised on army, police and development programmers. It formulates several welfare schemes and elements, them.

Some persons have to take decisions on how to go about these activities. Some have to implement these decisions. If disputes arise on these decisions or in their implementation, there should be someone to determine what is right and what is wrong.

It is important that everyone should know who is responsible for doing what. It is also important that these activities are not influenced too much by the personal likes and dislikes of someone who happens to be doing that. So, to attend all these tasks several arrangements are made in handed democracies. Such arrangements are called institutions. A democracy works through political institutions. It works well when these institutions do what, people expect of them, do it efficiently and are answerable to the people.

2. Legislature exists in every democracy. It exercises political authority on behalf of the people in many ways :
 - (a) The parliament is the final authority for making the laws in any country. This task of lawmaking or legislation is so crucial that these assemblies are called legislatures. Parliaments all over the world can make new laws, change the existing laws, or abolish the existing laws and make new ones in their place, in most countries, the parliaments can also amend the Constitution in some situations.
 - (b) The parliaments all over the world can criticize and exercise some control over those who run the government. In some countries like India, this control is direct and full. Those who run the government can do so only as long as the parliament wants them to.
 - (c) Parliaments control public finances. In most countries, any money raised from the people can be spent only when the parliament sanctions it.
 - (d) The parliaments are the highest forum of discussion and debate about public issues and national policy in any country. Parliament can seek information about any matter related to government.
 - (e) Parliament chooses the real chief executive called also the Prime Minister, and it can also force him to resign if he loses its confidence.

It is because of these functions and powers that the Parliament is described as supreme.

3. Our Constitution clearly gives more powers to the directly elected house, the Lok Sabha as compared to the Rajya Sabha. This is clear from



the following. Any ordinary law needs to be passed by both the houses. But if there is a difference between the two Houses, the final decision is taken by a joint session in which members of both the houses meet together. Because of the larger number of members, the view of the Lok Sabha is likely to prevail in such a meeting.

- (i) Lok Sabha exercises more powers in financial matters. Once the Lok Sabha passes the budget of the government or any other finance-related law, the Rajya Sabha cannot reject it. The Rajya Sabha can only delay it by 14 days or suggest changes in it. The Lok Sabha may or may not accept these changes.
- (ii) Most importantly, the Lok Sabha controls the government. The government continues in power only as long as it enjoys the support of the majority of the members in the Lok Sabha. If the majority of the Lok Sabha members say they have 'no confidence' in the Council of Ministers, all of them including the Prime Minister have to quit. This the Rajya Sabha cannot do.

4. At different levels of any government, we find functionaries who take day-to-day decisions but do not exercise supreme power on behalf of the people. All those functionaries are collectively known as the executive. They are called executives because they are in charge of the 'execution' of the policies of the government. Thus, when we refer to 'the government' we usually mean the executive. The executive in a democratic country consists of two parts.

Those who are elected by the people for a specific period are called the political executives. These are political leaders who take the big decisions. Those who are appointed on a long-term basis are called the permanent executive or civil services. Those working in civil services are called civil servants. These are officers who work under political executives and assist them in carrying out the day-to-day administration.

In both the parliamentary and presidential systems, the political executive does a lot more than we think it does; The role of the executive is not limited to implementing laws made by the parliament, it also includes: The political executive actively participates in lawmaking. It is the cabinet that proposes a draft legislation that

is passed by the parliament as the National Commission on Backward Classes Act 1993.

In fact, it is mandatory that all legislation; that has to do with financial; matters should be proposed by the government, The executive frames policies and rules that are as important as the law itself. Let us recall that O.M. No. 36012/30/90 was an executive order, not a law. Subsequent decisions about who could benefit from these reservations were also made by the executive.

5. In a parliamentary system like ours, the head of the government is different from the head of the state. Both of them are part of the executive. But the head of the government exercises most of the real powers. This position is called the Prime Minister in most countries with parliamentary system. In our country too the Prime Minister is the head to the government. That is why the Prime Minister is the most important political office in the country.

In a parliamentary system, the head of the state appoints the head of the government. In our country⁷ the President appoints the Prime Minister. But this is only a formal description. What it means in real life is that the President appoints leader of the majority party or the coalition of parties that command majority in the Lok Sabha as the Prime Minister.

As the head of the government, the Prime Minister has wide-ranging powers. He chairs cabinet meetings. He coordinates the work of different departments. His decisions are final in case disagreements arise between departments; He exercises general supervision of different ministries. All ministers work under his leadership. The Prime Minister distributes and redistributes work to the ministers. He also has the power to dismiss ministers. When he quits, the entire ministry quits.

The extent of power that Prime Minister really wields varies a lot. It depends upon, the personality of the holder of the office, his or her authority in the ruling party and the image and following among the people. Jawaharlal Nehru, the first Prime Minister of India, exercised enormous authority because he was the supreme leader to the ruling Congress party at that time. He also had great influence on the public. But this was not true of all other Prime Ministers.



Democratic Rights

5

Life without Rights

Democracy is regarded as the best form of Government. In a democratic country, not only does the Government work within the limits of the Constitution but rights and freedoms are also provided to the citizens. In a monarchy or in a dictatorial nation, basic rights and freedoms are denied to the people.

The Rights of Citizens in Saudi Arabia

Saudi Arabia is a monarchy, a country which is ruled by a king. Some facts about Saudi Arabia:

- The position of the king is hereditary.
- The legislature, executive and judges are appointed by the king. The latter can reverse any of their decisions.
- The formation of political parties is illegal, and the media cannot publish anything which the king does not like.
- The people of Saudi Arabia cannot follow their religion freely. Non- Muslims can follow their religion only in private.
- Many restrictions are imposed on women. The testimony of one man is considered equal to that of two women.



Women in Saudi Arabia do not have the right to vote

Prison in Guantanamo Bay

USA is a democratic country. However, a arises of whether it treats people of other religions in a democratic manner.



- After the September 2001 attacks on the United States of America, about 600 people were arrested by the US forces and were imprisoned in Guantanamo Bay. It is an area near Cuba which is controlled by the American Navy.
- These people were arrested without any warrant and without informing their families.
- Neither the family members nor the UN members were allowed to meet them.
- The prisoners neither faced any trial before any magistrate in the US nor could they approach the courts in their home country.
- An international human rights organisation, Amnesty International, collected various reports on the Guantanamo Bay prison and reported the torturing of the prisoners which itself violates US laws.
- Prisoners were not released even when they were declared not guilty.
- The US Government did not pay any heed to the UN Secretary General who said that Guantanamo Bay should be closed down.



Prisons in Guantanamo Bay

The Massacre of Ethnic Albanians in Kosovo

- Kosovo presents a case where a government elected by the people indulged in a large-scale massacre of citizens.
- Kosovo was a province of Yugoslavia before it separated. The Serbians were in a majority in Yugoslavia, and the ethnic Albanians were in a majority in Kosovo.
- Milosevic was elected as the leader of the country. As he was a Serbian, he wanted to establish Serbian domination in the country.
- Thus, large-scale attacks on the ethnic Albanians were carried out by the soldiers. Thousands of Albanians were killed in Kosovo.
- Many countries intervened to end this massacre. Milosevic was later tried by an International Court of Justice for committing crimes against humanity.



Milosevic

While Saudi Arabia shows us the features of a dictatorial government, Guantanamo Bay prison shows us how civil rights such as the Right to Live and Detention without Trial were denied to people. Kosovo is an example of an elected government carrying out the massacre of an ethnic minority.

The rights of citizens are given utmost importance in any democratic country.

Rights of Citizens in a Democracy

Rights are claims of a person over other fellow citizens, over society and over the Government. However, it has to be kept in mind that our rights should not hurt or harm others; the Serbians in Yugoslavia cannot claim rights which could harm ethnic Albanians. Thus, rights are reasonable claims of persons recognised by society and sanctioned by law. Rights are required in a democracy to protect the minorities from the oppression of the majority. Rights also protect citizens from the tyranny of the Government.

Rights Guaranteed by the Constitution of India

The Constitution of India provides basic rights and freedoms to its citizens. These are:

➤ Right to Equality

- Our Constitution declares that every citizen irrespective of caste, creed, sect, religion or gender is equal before the laws of the country.
- No person is above the law whether it is a political leader, ordinary citizen or police personnel. This is known as the rule of law.
- Any citizen can use public places such as parks, public hospitals, bathing ghats, roads, wells and tanks.
- All citizens have equality of opportunity for getting appointed in any governmental institution or organisation.
- Untouchability has been abolished so that people belonging to every caste get socially equal treatment.



Right to Freedom is an important right guaranteed to the people of India.

➤ Right to Freedom

- Freedom of speech and expression: Every citizen has the right to criticise the policies of the Government or of any institution. The media of the country are also free to opine their views on any matter. However, one cannot use this freedom to instigate violence against other communities or the Government.
- To assemble peacefully: People can assemble or hold rallies to protest against any issues without any arms. However, these protests should be peaceful.
- To move freely from one part of the country to the other part
- Freedom to reside in any part of the country
- Freedom to form associations and unions
- Freedom to practice any profession and to carry out any trading and business activities
- A person arrested and detained by the police should be produced before the nearest magistrate within 24 hours of arrest. An arrested person has the right to consult a lawyer or hire a lawyer for his/her defense.

➤ Right against Exploitation

- Our Constitution prohibits any trafficking in human beings.
- No child below the age of 14 can be employed in factories, mines and other hazardous works.
- Begar or forced labour is prohibited by the Constitution.

➤ Right to Freedom of Religion

- All citizens of the country are free to profess, practice and propagate their religion.
- India is a secular state. It neither encourages nor discourages the practice of any religion.



Our Constitution prohibits any kind of trafficking in human beings



- However, the right to freedom of religion does not apply in those cases where liberties of other citizens are compromised. For example, the sacrifice of human beings and the brutal treatment meted out to widows are illegal.

➤ **Cultural and Educational Rights**

- A minority community has the right to preserve its culture, language and script.
- Admission to any governmental educational institutions cannot be denied to any citizen on the basis of language or religion.
- Every minority community has the right to establish and maintain institutions of their choice.

National Human Rights Commission (NHRC) is an independent organisation. It enquires into cases where the rights to liberty and basic freedoms are denied to citizens. It however cannot decide cases and punish the guilty. It just highlights the issues and cases. Any person or group of persons can file cases in the court if their freedoms and rights are violated. If the violation of rights is of a larger social or public interest, a **public interest litigation** (PIL) can be filed in the court.

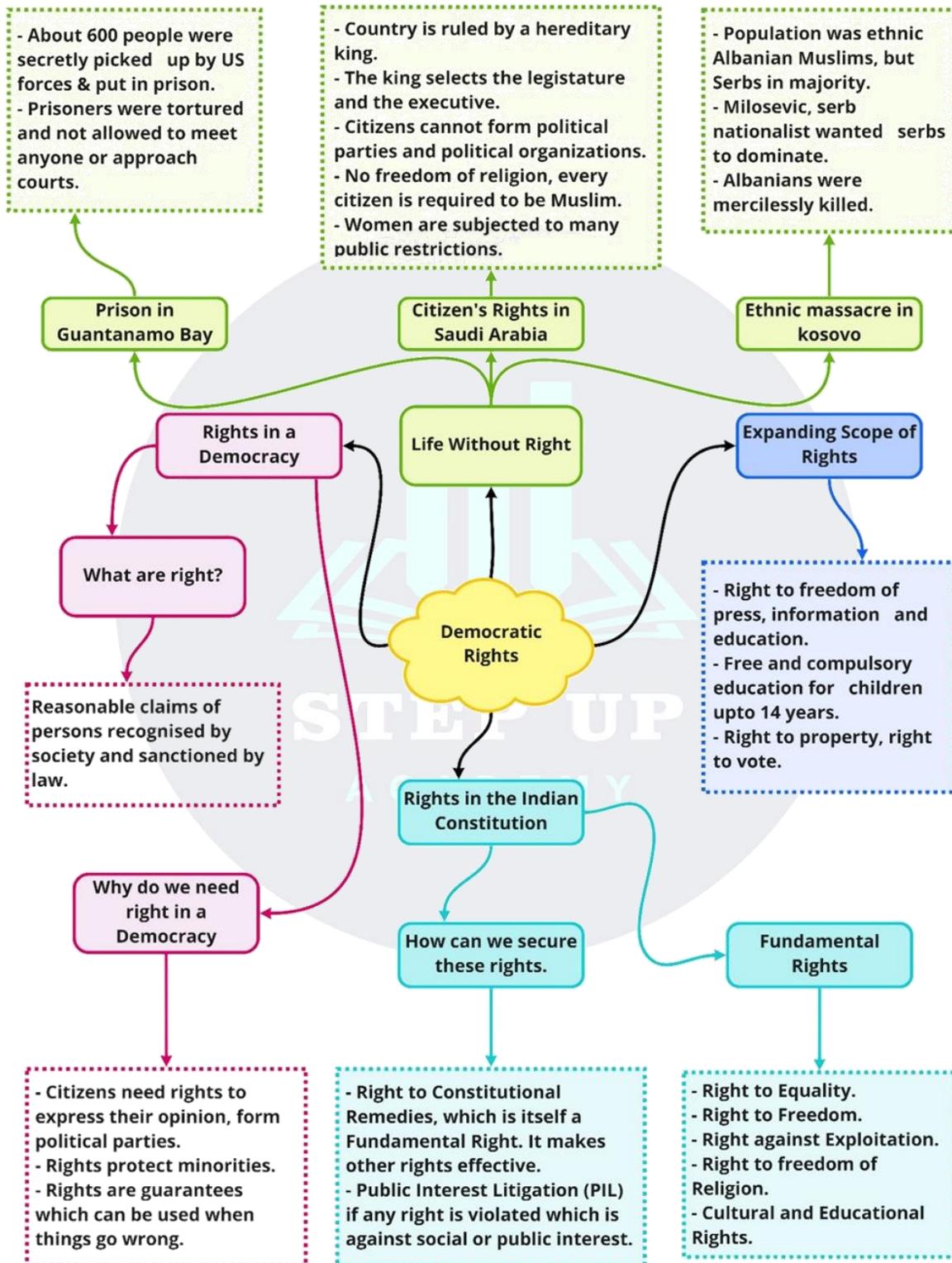
Scope of Fundamental Rights

- Because fundamental rights are the source of all rights and our Constitution, the scope of these rights has expanded over years.
- Of late, the right to education has been added to the Constitution of India. It is the responsibility of the Government to provide free and compulsory education to children up to the age of 14 years.
- Another right, the Right to Information to the Citizens has also been added under the Right to Freedom of Thought and Expression.
- Rights such as the Right to Property and the Right to Vote are important constitutional rights.
- Expansion of all fundamental rights takes the form of human rights.

Some New Rights Guaranteed by the Constitution of South Africa to its Citizens are

- Right to Privacy
- Right to safe and clean environment
- Right to have access to housing
- Right to have access to healthcare facilities

Class : 9th Social Studies (Political Science)
Chapter-5: Democratic Rights



14. Right to vote is a right.
- Social
 - Political
 - Economic
 - Moral
15. Which right explains about abolition of untouchability?
- Right to equality
 - Right to freedom
 - Right against exploitation
 - Right to freedom of religion

Very Short:

- With do you think that the constitutions of different countries have sections on rights?
- How many rights are there in the Right to Freedom?
- Is an Indian state allowed to discriminate against a citizen on the basis of place of birth?
- In which form does the Indian Constitution provides for special provisions while guaranteeing the right to equality?
- To whom the reserved posts have been provided?
- Which of the fundamental rights has abolished untouchability?
- What will be done to a person practising

untouchability?

- What kind of titles have not been abolished by the constitution?
- On what basis the government can restrict the fundamental rights?
- Name the various kinds of the writs.

Short Questions:

- Define rights.
- Mention some qualities of rights.
- Mention some types of rights with example.
- Are all types of rights available to all the people? State with examples
- Discuss the relationship between rights and democracy.
- Explain briefly the evolution of rights.
- Write is short note on Human Rights.

Long Questions:

- Point out some aspects of the Rights to equality enjoyed by the citizens of India.
- Describe special provisions which are provided for the advancement of the backward classes.
- “The right to freedom is a cluster of six freedoms.” Explain.
- Write short notes on:
- How can we secure our fundamental rights?

Answer Key

MCQ:

- (a) 24 hours
- (b) Right of constitutional remedies
- (c) (a) and (b)
- (d) Public Interest Litigation
- (c) Judiciary
- (c) Right against exploitation
- (b) Right to Constitutional Remedies
- (c) Political Rights
- (c) Right to Constitutional Remedies
- (b) Six Fundamental Rights
- (c) American Navy

- (b) Yugoslavia
- (c) Right to property
- (b) Political
- (a) Right to equality

Very Short Answer:

- It is so only to emphasise that such rights are fundamental for the development of human personality.
- 6
- No.
- The Indian Constitution provides for special provisions in the form of reserve posts while guaranteeing right to equality.

as freedom of speech press, religion, assembly and to petition the government.

7. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights adopted by the United Nations in 1948 was an important milestone in the long struggle for rights in the world. It recognized certain rights as fundamental to human life. They are the right to life, liberty and security of person; the right to freedom of opinion and expression: the right to freedom of throughout, conscience and religion: and the right to own property.

Long Answer:

1. Right to equality is one of the most important fundamental rights provided by the Constitution.

These rights have been given in the Articles 14 to 18 of the Indian Constitution.

- Article 14 establishes equality before the law, It says the state shall not deny to any person equality before the law or equal protection of the laws within the territory of India.
- Article 15 prohibits any sort of discrimination among the citizens of the Republic on grounds of religion, race, caste, sex, place of birth or any of them.
- Article 16 of the Constitution of India provides equal opportunities in all fields of public employment.
- Article 17 has erased the age-long slur on the face of the Indian social order. Practising of. untouchability in any form has been made an offence punishable by law.
- Article 18 puts an end to all the titles other than educational and military.
- Thus, the Indian citizens have been provided the right to equality to enjoy their lives.

2. Special provisions are also provided for the advancement of backward classes of citizens and those of the Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes. Equality does not mean that everyone gets, the same treatment, no matter what they need. Right to equality allows special treatment in favour of persons who belong to the weaker sections. For example, government reserves some seats in public educational institutions, or provide stipends to such persons. Similarly,

government reserves some posts in favour of backward classes of citizens who are not adequately represented in government services.

But for such special provisions, it would not be possible for the boys and girls of these groups to get admission in premier educational institutions or to get good jobs. These special provisions and reservations are aimed at promoting socio-economic equality. For promoting social equality, the Constitution forbids the practice of untouchability in any form. Untouchability refers hr. any belief or social practice which looks down upon people on account of their birth with certain caste labels. Such practice denies them interaction with others or access to public places as equal citizens. So the Constitution made untouchability a punishable offence.

3. The right to freedom given by the constitution to its citizens includes six freedom rights. Hence the right to freedom is called a cluster of six freedoms.

These rights are the following;

- Freedom of speech and expression.
- Freedom to assemble peacefully and without arms.
- Freedom to form associations and unions.
- Freedom to move freely throughout the territory of India.
- Freedom to reside and settle and
- Freedom to adopt in any profession or the right to carry on any occupation, trade or business.

Every citizen has the right to all these freedoms. That means you cannot exercise your freedom in such a manner that violates others' right to freedom. Your freedoms should not cause public nuisance or disorder. You are free to do everything which injures no one else. Freedom is the absence of interference by other's in our affairs, so far as such affairs do not adversely affect other's lives.

So our freedoms have some limitations. However, such restrictions have to be reasonable. They should be as per the law. Accordingly, the government imposes certain restrictions on our freedoms in the larger interests of the society.



The Constitution ensures protection of individual life and personal liberty. It says that no person can be deprived of his life or personal liberty except according to procedure established by law. That means no government or police officer can interfere with the life and liberty of a citizen unless his action is supported by some provision of law.

4. (i) **Right Against Exploitation:** This is a very important fundamental right. Earlier people were made to do work free of charge for landlords or the wealthy persons. This was known as beggar or forced labour.

It was the kind of labour which was done without any wage in return. Begar is now a crime and punishable by law.

Providing this right the Constitution also forbids employing of children below the age of 14 years in dangerous jobs like factories and mines. This right makes us conscious about the fact that the children are our assets. They must be allowed to get education and lead happy childhood.

In actual practice, it is very easily seen that the children are working in much less wages. This is done because the child labour is much cheap. Children in fact cannot work like an adult hence they are given low wages. This is, however, a gross violation of the spirit and provisions of the constitution. In this situation, the right against exploitation is a legal weapon to protect today's children. This right is considered a legal weapon because if this right is violated, one can go to the court of law to get justice.

- (ii) **Right to Freedom of Religion:** Ours is a secular country. That means the government of India would not give any undue bias or preference to any religion. Every religion is equal before the state. Citizens of India are free to practice their respective religions. This is one of the fundamental rights of the citizens given by the Constitution. Foremost objective part of this right is to sustain the principle, of secularism in the country. No state-run institutions can give religious education. However, religious communities are free to set up charitable institutions of their own.

- (iii) **Cultural and Educational Rights:** India is a vast country with a number of religions, languages as well as cultures. Hence the Indian Constitution provides special measures to protect the rights of the minorities. Any community which has a language and script of its own has the right to conserve and develop them. No citizen can be discriminated against for, admission in state or state-aided institutions because of religion or language. All minorities, religious or linguistic, can set up their own educational institutions. Thus, they are able to preserve and develop their culture.

5. One important characteristic of the rights in the Constitution is that they are enforceable. We have a right to seek the enforcement of the above-mentioned rights. This is called the Right to Constitutional Remedies. This itself is a Fundamental Right. This right makes other rights effective. It is possible that sometimes our rights may be violated by fellow citizens, private bodies or by the government.

When any of our right is violated we can seek remedy through courts. If it is a Fundamental Right we can directly approach the Supreme Court or the High Court of a state. That is why, Dr Ambedkar called the Right to Constitutional Remedies as the heart and soul of our Constitution.

Fundamental Rights are guaranteed against the actions of the Legislatures, the Executive, and any other authorities instituted by the government. There can be no law or action that violates the Fundamental Rights. If any act of the Legislature or the Executive takes away or limits any of the Fundamental Rights it will be invalid. We can challenge such law's of the central and state governments, the policies and actions of the government or the governmental organizations like the nationalized banks.

The Supreme Court and High Courts are empowered to declare such laws or acts as invalid. They also enforce the Fundamental Rights against private individuals and bodies. The Supreme Court and High Courts have tire power to issue directions, orders or writs for the enforcement of the Fundamental Rights. They award compensation for the violation.



ECONOMICS

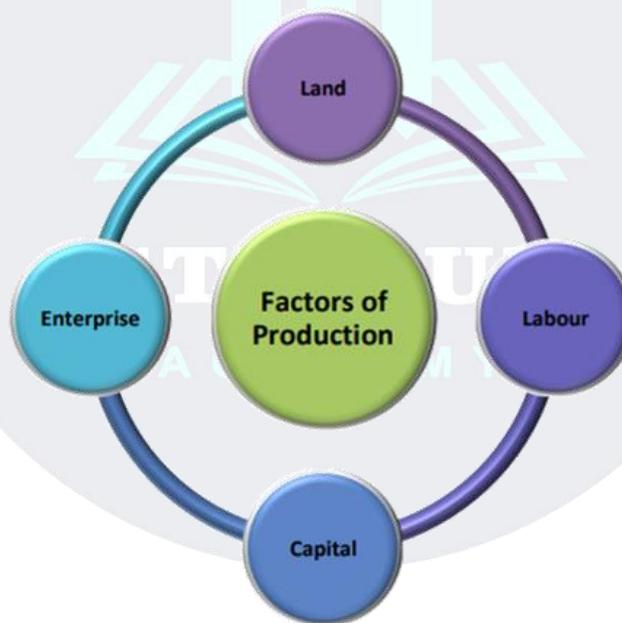
The Story of Village Palampur

1

Basic Concepts: Production

The main activity of Palampur village is farming. Other activities include small-scale manufacturing, dairy, and transport. Palampur has a well-developed system of roads, transport, electricity, irrigation, schools and a health Centre. Let us understand how these production activities are undertaken with the various resources available in this village.

There are four main factors of production of goods and services. These are land, labour, capital and enterprise/human capital. First, land is required to produce goods. Second, labour is involved to execute production activities. Third, physical capital, which is classified into fixed and working capital, is required at every stage of production. Finally, enterprise and knowledge are able to form all the inputs together to produce goods for self use or to sell in the market.



Organisation of Production

The main aim of production is to produce goods and services, which require four essential components.

1. Land and other natural resources such as water, forests, minerals
2. Labour
3. Physical Capital such as tools, machines, buildings, raw materials and money

A variety of raw materials are required during the process of production, such as the yarn used by the weaver and clay used by the potter. Money is also essential during production and both of them in hand are called working capital. The fourth requirement is knowledge and enterprise to be able to put together land, labour and physical capital and produce an output. The factors of production are combining of land, labour, physical capital and human capital.



Farming in Palampur

Land is fixed

- Nearly 75% of the working people depend on farming.
- Land area under cultivation is basically fixed.
- There is no scope for expansion of production with new cultivable land

To grow more from the same land

- Kinds of crops grown and facilities available to Palampur village would resemble the western part of the state of Uttar Pradesh.
- All the land is cultivated, and nothing is left unused.
- Rainy season (Kharif): Jowar and Bajra are grown in this season. Potato is cultivated between October and December. Winter season (Rabi): Wheat is produced. Sugarcane is harvested once in a year. Wheat is used for self-consumption as well as sold in the market at Raiganj. A part of the sugarcane crop is sold in the raw form, while the remaining is sold as jaggery to traders in Shahpur.
- Due to a well-developed system of irrigation in Palampur, farmers are able to grow three different crops in a year. Electricity came early to Palampur. They used electric-run tube wells to irrigate the land effectively. By mid-1970s, the entire cultivated area of 200 hectares was irrigated.
- Multiple cropping: To increase production, more than one crop is grown on a piece of land during the year. At least two main crops are grown in Palampur, and they have been growing potato as the third crop in the past fifteen to twenty years.

Cultivated Area over the Years	
Years	Cultivated Area
1950	120
1960	130
1970	140
1980	140
1990	140
2000	140

- Modern farming methods are used for higher yields. The yield is measured as crop is produced on a given piece of land during a single season. High-yielding variety (HYV) seeds produce greater amounts of grain on a single plant. Higher yields were possible only from a combination of HYV seeds, irrigation, chemical fertilisers, pesticides etc. Through the traditional method, the yield of wheat grown was 1300 kg per hectare. With HYV seeds, the yield went up to 3200 kg per hectare.

Will the land sustain?

- Modern farming has overused the natural resource base.
- The Green Revolution is associated with the loss of soil fertility due to increased use of chemical fertilisers.
- Consumption of chemical fertilisers in Punjab is highest in the country.

How is land distributed between the farmers of Palampur?

- One third of the 450 families are landless. Most of them are Dalits and have no land for cultivation.
- Of the remaining families who own land, 240 families cultivate small plots of land less than 2 hectares in size.

Who will provide the labour?

- Small farmers along with their families cultivate their own field.

- Medium and large farmers hire farm laborers to work on their fields.
- Wages are paid to the hired labour. Wages can be in cash or in kind.
- Wages are paid on a daily basis, for one particular farm activity like harvesting or for the whole year.

Capital needed in farming

- Most small farmers need to borrow money for their capital.
- The rate of interest on such loans is high.
- The medium and large farmers have their own savings from farming.



Sale of surplus farm products

- Small farmers produce for their own consumption.
- Medium and large farmers who supply wheat to the market.
- Traders buy the wheat from the market and sell it to shopkeepers in the towns in cities.
- This amount is saved for lending to small farmers who are in need of loans or used for arranging working capital.
- Some farmers may use their savings for buying cattle or trucks. These constitute the capital for non- farming activities.

Non-farming in Palampur

Dairy

- Dairy farming is a common activity in many families.
- During the rainy season, jowar and bajra are grown.
- Milk is sold in Raiganj village.
- Two traders from Shahpur town have set up collection-cum-chilling centers at Raiganj.
- This milk is transported to far away towns and cities.

Small-scale manufacturing in Palampur

- Less than fifty people are engaged in manufacturing.
- Simple production methods are done on a small scale.
- People are engaged in small-scale manufacturing which is carried out at home or in the fields. This manufacturing involves very simple production methods.

Shopkeepers of Palampur

- The traders of Palampur are shopkeepers who buy various goods from wholesale markets in the cities and sell them in the village.

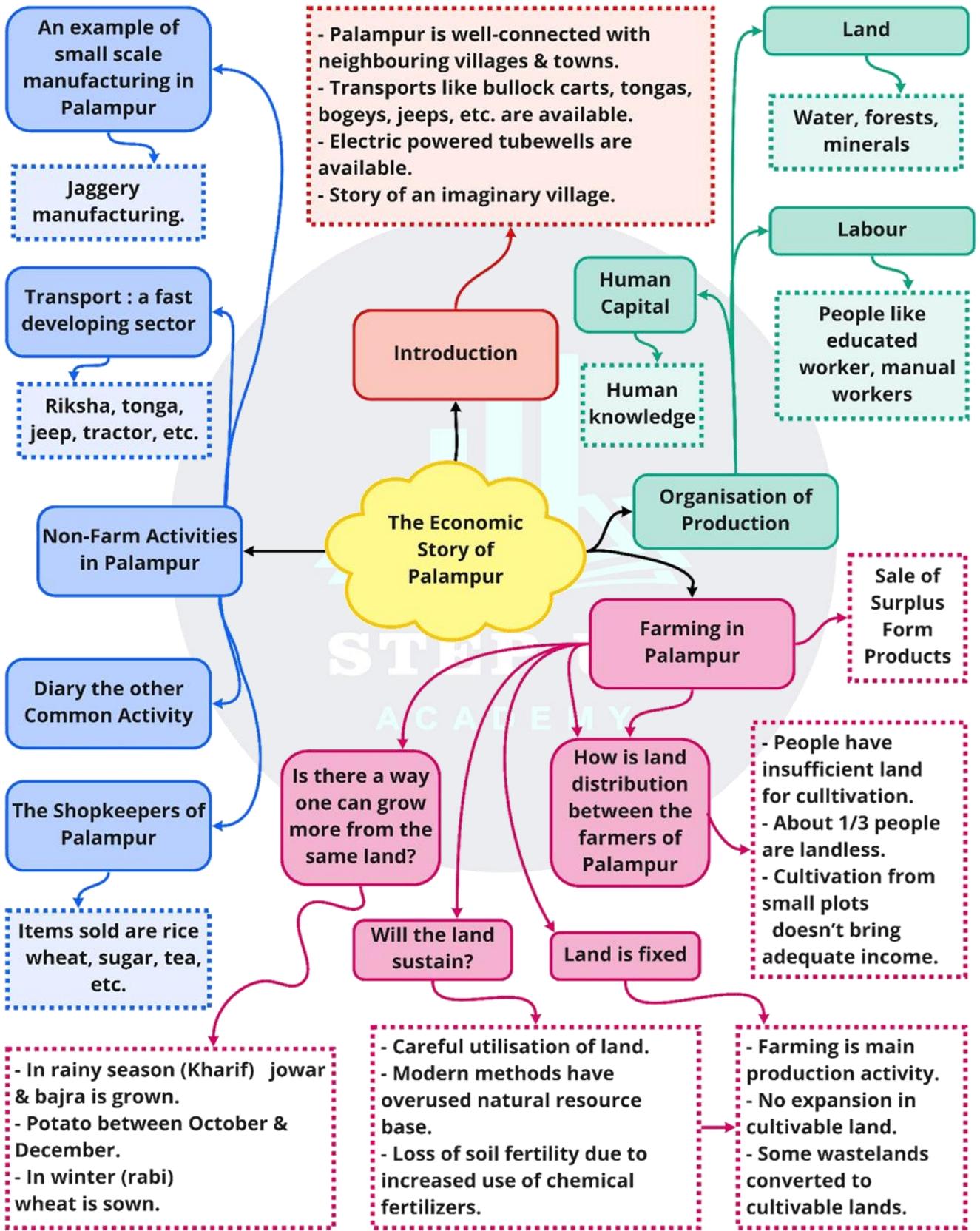
Traders of Palampur buy various goods from wholesale markets in the cities and sell them in the village. General stores in the village sell a wide range of items like rice, wheat, sugar, tea, oil, biscuits, soap, toothpaste, batteries, candles, notebooks, pen, pencil, even some types of cloth.

Transport

- Palampur is connected to Raiganj by road; a variety of vehicles ply on this route.
- Transport services include rickshaws, tonga, jeep, tractor, truck drivers, traditional bullock cart and bogey.
- They transport people and goods from one place to another and in return get paid for it.



Class : 9th Social Studies (Economics)
Chapter-1: The Economic Story of Palampur



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

- The standard unit of measuring land is:
(a) bigha (b) guintha
(c) hectare (d) kilometre
- Palampur resembles a village of the western part of the state of:
(a) Gujarat (b) Rajasthan
(c) Maharashtra (d) Uttar Pradesh
- During the rainy season, farmers in Palampur grow:
(a) wheat and barley (b) wheat and rice
(c) wheat and bajra (d) jowar and bajra
- During the winter season, farmers in Palampur grow:
(a) rice (b) jowar
(c) bajra (d) wheat
- The raw form of jaggery is:
(a) sugar (b) honey
(c) beat root (d) sugarcane
- To grow more than one crop in a piece of land during the year is known as:
(a) crop rotation (b) cultivation
(c) single cropping (d) multiple cropping
- All farmers in Palampur grow atleast two main crops may be growing:
(a) sugarcane as the third crop
(b) rice as the third crop
(c) potatoes as the third crop
(d) onion as the third crop
- Yield is measured as crop produced on a given piece of land during:
(a) two seasons
(b) three seasons
(c) a single season
(d) all the above
- The Green Revolution in the late 1960s introduced the Indian farmer to cultivation of:
(a) wheat and jowar
(b) jowar and barley
(c) wheat and sugarcane
(d) wheat and rice
- The states that were the first to try out modern farming methods are:
(a) Punjab, Haryana and Western Uttar Pradesh
(b) Punjab, Haryana and Eastern Uttar Pradesh
(c) Punjab, Haryana and West Bengal
(d) Orissa, West Bengal and Gujarat
- The minimum wages for a farm labourer set by the government is Rs:
(a) Rs. 50 per day
(b) Rs. 60 per day
(c) Rs. 70 per day
(d) Rs. 80 per day
- People in Palampur feed their buffaloes on various kinds of grass and the jowar and bajra that grows during the:
(a) summer season
(c) rainy season
(d) none of the above
- The traders of Palampur are shopkeepers who buy various goods from:
(a) retailers and sell them in the village
(b) wholesale markets in the village and sell them in the cities
(c) wholesale markets in the cities and sell them in the villages
(d) none of the above
- What is the main activity in Palampur?
(a) manufacturing (b) dairy
(c) farming (d) none of the above
- The village of Palampur has about families belonging to several different castes.
(a) 450
(b) 550
(c) 650
(d) 750

Very Short Questions:

- Sugarcane crushing undertaken in the village is what type of activity?
- What is the main economic activity in village Palampur?
- What are the factors of production?

machines, buildings can be used in production over many years, and are called fixed capital.

Raw Materials and Money in Hand

Production requires a variety of raw materials such as the yarn used by the weaver and the clay used by the potter. Also, some money is always required during production to make payments and buy other necessary items. Raw materials and money in hand are called working capital. Unlike tools, machines and buildings, these are used up in production.

- (1) A small farmer has 2 hectares of land to cultivate wheat crop his land comes under which type of factor of production?
 - A) Fixed capital
 - B) Working capital
 - C) Natural resource
 - D) Human capital
- (2) For a sugarcane farmer the sugarcane seeds sown in the agricultural field is
 - A) Fixed capital
 - B) Working capital
 - C) Human capital
 - D) All of the above
- (3) If a farmer wants to cultivate his field, then which kind of factors of production he may need?
 - A) Working capital
 - B) Natural resources
 - C) Fixed capital
 - D) All of the above
- (4) If a manufacturer wants to establish his factory at a place what he would need to do so?
 - A) Labour
 - B) Money and raw material
 - C) Land
 - D) All of the above

2. Read the source and answer the following.

We have learnt about farming as the main production activity in Palampur. We shall now take a look at some of the non-farm production activities. Only 25 per cent of the people working in Palampur are engaged in activities other than agriculture.

Dairy is a common activity in many families of Palampur. People feed their buffalos on various kinds of grass and the jowar and bajra that grows during the rainy season. The milk is sold in Raiganj, the nearby large village. Two traders from Shahpur town have set up collection cum chilling centres at Raiganj from where the milk is transported to far away towns and cities.

At present, less than fifty people are engaged in manufacturing in Palampur. Unlike the manufacturing that takes place in the big factories in the towns and cities, manufacturing in Palampur involves very simple production methods and are done on a small scale. They are carried out mostly at home or in the fields with the help of family labour. Rarely are labourers hired.

- (1) Why are most of the families engaged in farming activity in Palampur village?
 - A) People have much area for agricultural activities.
 - B) People have become well-off due to farming activities.
 - C) Farming has become a passion for people.
 - D) Other non-farm activities have not much developed.
- (2) Which of the following is an example of non-farm production activities?
 - A) Transportation
 - B) Weaving
 - C) Handicrafts
 - D) All of the above
- (3) How dairy is dependent on farming in Palampur?
 - A) Dairy is a farming activity.
 - B) Dairy is done by farmers.
 - C) Buffaloes are fed on agricultural produce.
 - D) Dairy gives more money to farmers.
- (4) Which of the following steps can be taken in order to increase manufacturing sector in Palampur?
 - A) Provide incentive to people who are engaged in manufacturing.
 - B) Establish factories in Palampur.
 - C) Provide skill training to people of Palampur.
 - D) All of the above.

Answer Key

MCQ Answers:

1. **Answer:** (c) hectare
2. **Answer:** (d) Uttar Pradesh
3. **Answer:** (d) jowar and bajra
4. **Answer:** (d) wheat
5. **Answer:** (d) sugarcane
6. **Answer:** (d) multiple cropping
7. **Answer:** (c) potatoes as the third crop
8. **Answer:** (c) a single season
9. **Answer:** (d) wheat and rice
10. **Answer:** (a) Punjab, Haryana and Western Uttar Pradesh
11. **Answer:** (b) Rs. 60 per day
12. **Answer:** (c) rainy season
13. **Answer:** (c) wholesale markets in the cities and sell them in the villages
14. **Answer:** (c) farming
15. **Answer:** (a) 450

Very Short Answers:

1. **Answer:** Sugarcane crushing undertaken in the village is the first step in manufacture of jaggery from raw sugarcane. Thus, it is a manufacturing activity.
2. **Answer:** The main economic activity in village Palampur is agriculture.
3. **Answer:** Land, labour, physical capital and human capital are the factors of production.
4. **Answer:** The major advantage of using HYV seeds in agriculture is growing more crops on the same piece of land.
5. **Answer:** Some of the non-farming activities being carried out in Palampur include manufacturing, transport, shop keeping and computer education.
6. **Answer:** The Primary Health Centre in Palampur is run by the government.
7. **Answer:** Multiple cropping means that we grow more than one crop on the same piece of land in a year.
8. **Answer:** During the Green Revolution, due to the extra crops produced which utilized the soil nutrients fully, no nutrients were left for the next crop.

9. **Answer:** The chemicals kill bacteria and microbes, which are essential for soil fertility.
10. **Answer:** Hectare is the standard unit for measurement of agricultural land. Bigha and Guintha are local units used in different parts of India.

Short Answers:

1. **Answer:** Bajra is a rapid growing warm weather crop suitable for areas with 40 to 75 cm of annual rainfall. Thus, it is suitable for the kharif season, which is between July and October. Wheat is not suitable for warm weather and sugarcane requires a full year to grow.
2. **Answer:** Seeds, once used, cannot be used again and so they fall in the category of working capital. Land, machinery and building are fixed capital, as they can be used again and again.
3. **Answer:** The constituents of modern farming methods are use of high yielding variety of seeds, using chemical fertilizers and pesticides, as well as using plenty of water for irrigation.
4. **Answer:** A part of the earnings is saved and kept as capital for the next season. Thus, they are able to arrange for the capital for farming from their own savings. Some farmers also use the savings to buy cattle, trucks or use it in other non-agricultural activities.
5. **Answer:** Landless farmers are hired as laborers are hired. Small farmers do not need additional labour, as they work with their family members in the fields. Only the medium and large farmers have extensive work, which makes them hire additional labour.
6. **Answer:** Land being a natural resource, it is necessary to be very careful in its use. Scientific reports indicate that the modern farming methods have overused the natural resource base.
7. **Answer:** Chemical fertilizers provide minerals which dissolve in water and are immediately available to plants. But these may not be retained in the soil for long. They may escape from the soil and pollute groundwater, rivers and lakes.
8. **Answer:** Farm laborers come either from landless families or families cultivating small



plots of land. Unlike farmers, farm laborers do not have a right over the crops grown on the land, they are paid wages by the farmer.

9. **Answer:** Small farmers either borrow from large farmers or the village moneylenders or the traders who supply various inputs for cultivation. The rate of interest on such loans is very high which makes it difficult for them to repay.
10. **Answer:** Large and medium farmers sell the surplus farm products. A part of the earnings is saved and kept for buying capital for the next season. Some farmers might also use the savings to buy cattle, trucks or to set up shops.

Long Answers:

1. **Answer:** The advent of electric power in Palampur has brought about the following changes:
 - i. Irrigation is now done through electric run tube wells, which has reduced the dependence of the farmers upon rainfall and enables larger areas of land to be irrigated.
 - ii. Irrigation improvement allowed farmers to grow three different crops in a year.
 - iii. It enabled Mishrilal to set up a sugarcane crushing machine so that he can sell jaggery manufactured by him to the traders at Shahpur.
2. **Answer:** The use of modern agricultural implements like tractors, threshers and harvesters by the large and medium farmers has reduced the amount of agricultural labour required. So, there is competition for work among the agricultural laborers in the village. Knowing that the supply is much more than the demand, the laborers themselves agree to work for wages that are lower than minimum wages. The farmers exploit this condition of excess labour supply and force laborers to work for low wages.
3. **Answer:** Multiple Cropping: To grow more than one crop on a piece of land during the year is known as multiple cropping. It is the most common way of increasing production on a given piece of land. Modern Farming Method The farmers of Punjab, Haryana and Western Uttar Pradesh use HYV seeds, tube wells for irrigation, chemical fertilizers and pesticides, as well as machinery like tractors and threshers to increase

the production. All these measures comprise what are known as modern farming methods.

4. **Answer:**
 - i. Dala and Ramkali are landless farm laborers who work on daily wages in Palampur.
 - ii. The minimum wages for farm laborer set by the government are 115 per day, they get only 80.
 - iii. There is heavy competition for work among the farm laborers in Palampur, so people agree to work for lower wages.
 - iv. They remain out of work for most parts of the year and have to take loans from the moneylender to fulfill their needs. Due to this seasonal unemployment, they remain poor and are unable to repay the loan and fall into a debt trap.
5. **Answer:** The 'Green Revolution' was introduced in India, in the late 1960s. Indian farmers used it for the production of major food crops like wheat and rice. They made use of the High Yielding Variety seeds, which produced much greater yield than the traditional seeds. However, they needed plenty of water, chemical fertilizers and pesticides to produce best results.
6. **Answer:**
 - i. Most of the houses in Palampur have electric connections.
 - ii. Electricity powers all the tube wells in the fields that help to irrigate much larger areas of land more effectively as compared to the traditional Persian wheel drawn by bullocks. Since the entire cultivated area of 200 hectares had come under irrigation farmers did not have to depend on rainfall and could grow multiple crops.
 - iii. It helps small businesses run their machinery like Mishrilal's sugarcane crushing machine.
7. **Answer:** More area under irrigation would lead to more yield or production to fulfill the needs of the population. More yield would fetch more income to the farmers. It would provide more employment opportunities for them. Their supplement income can provide them more capital for further investment in non-farm activities also.

8. **Answer:**

- i. The first requirement is land and other natural resources like water, forests, minerals, etc.
- ii. The second requirement is labor, i.e., the people who will do the work. Some activities require educated workers to perform the necessary task and other activities require workers who can do manual work.
- iii. The third requirement is physical capital, i.e., the variety of inputs required at every stage during production. It includes fixed capital and working capital.
- iv. Fourth requirement-knowledge and entrepreneur.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
2. A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

Case Study Answer:1. **Answer:**

- (1) C) Natural resource
- (2) B) Working capital
- (3) D) All of the above
- (4) D) All of the above

2. **Answer:**

- (1) D) Other non-farm activities have not much developed.
- (2) D) All of the above.
- (3) C) Buffaloes are fed on agricultural produce.
- (4) D) All of the above.



(ii) Secondary Sector

It is also known as manufacturing sector. This sector considers manufacturing of goods.

(iii) Tertiary sector

This sector provides service. This sector includes trade, transport, communication, banking, education, health, tourism, services, insurance.

Activities

Economic activities have two parts: Market and non-market activities.

- Market activities are the activities performed to earn income or the activities performed for pay or profit. For example, production of goods and services (including government service).
- Non-market activities are the production of goods and services for self-consumption.

Division of Labour between Men and Women

Most women are less educated and less skilled. Women are paid lower than men. Women are not paid for their services rendered to the family. However, women with high education are paid at par with men.

Quality of Population

Illiteracy rate, life expectancy rate and skills acquired by the people determine the quality of population. These also decide the growth rate of an economy.

Education

Education provides a way towards the growth of an economy. It improves national income, cultural richness and increases the efficiency of governance. Many educational provisions are made to provide quality education for all.

Statistical Figures

- Educational outlay was Rs 151 crore in the first plan, and it has increased to Rs 43,825 crore in the tenth plan.
- The expenditure on education as a percentage of GDP has increased from 0.64% in 1951 to 3.98% in 2002–03.
- The literacy rate has increased from 18% in 1951 to 65% in 2001.
- The literacy rate of males is nearly 50% higher than that of females, and it is 50% higher in urban areas as compared to rural areas.

Literacy Rates in India			
Year	Male	Female	Person
1951	27.16	8.86	18.33
1961	40.4	15.35	28.3
1971	45.96	21.97	34.45
1981	56.38	29.76	43.57
1991	64.13	39.29	52.21
2001	75.26	53.67	64.83
2011	82.14	65.46	74.04

Source: Census of India 1951–2011

Health

Healthy people work efficiently and help the firm to maximize its profit. The Indian National policy aims at improving the accessibility of health care, family welfare and nutritional service with special care on the underprivileged segment of the population.



Birth rates: It is the number of babies born there for every 1,000 people during a particular period of time.

Death rate: It is the number of people per 1,000 who die during a particular period of time.

Gross National Product: Gross national product is the estimation of the value of the final goods and services by the residents of the country in a given time period.

National Income: National Income is the estimation of the value of the final goods and services produced by a country in a given time period.

Human capital: Human capital is the stock of skill and productive knowledge embodied in human beings.

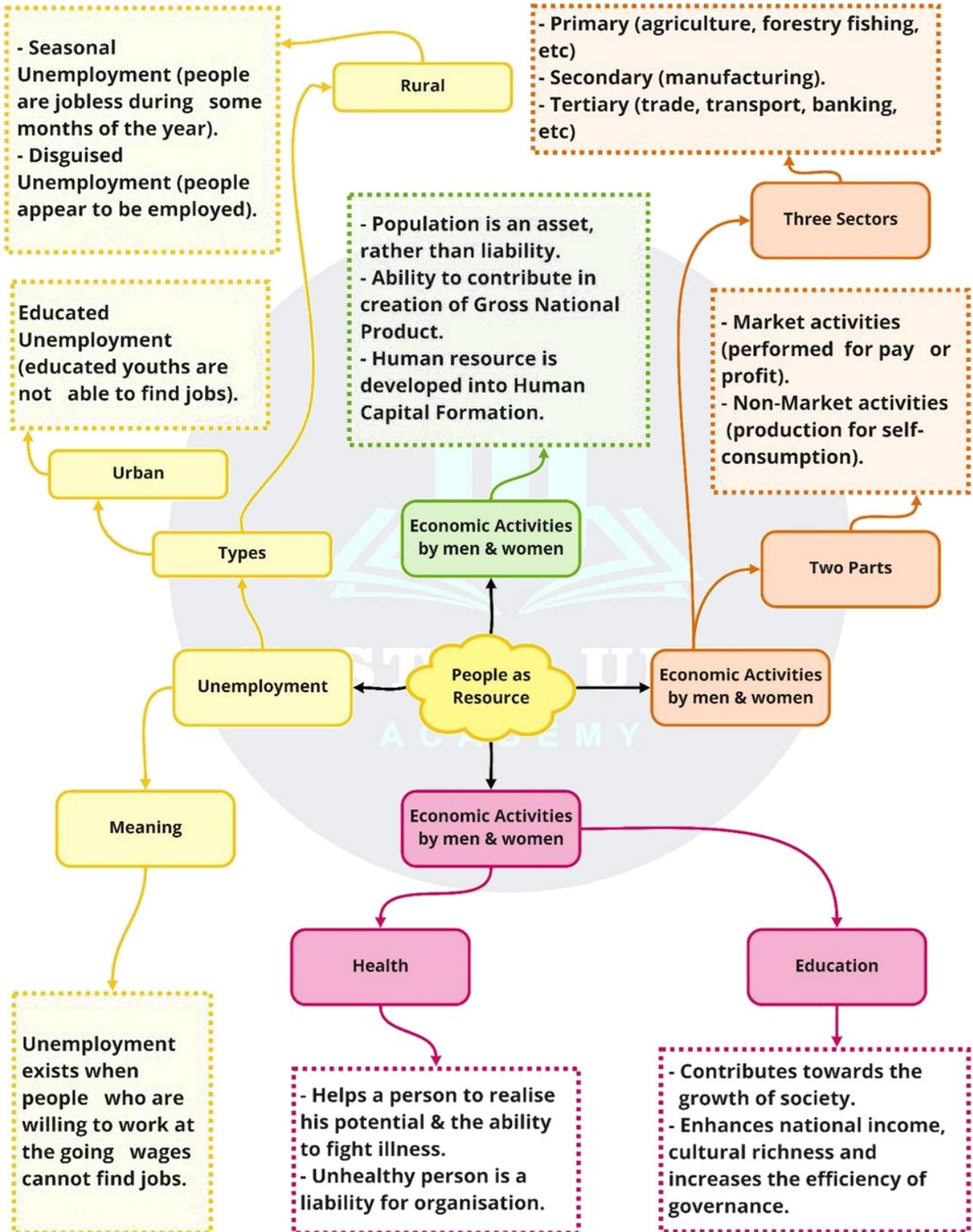
Human capital formation: Human capital formation includes the process of training, medical care etc. Education and health are the source for the human capital formation.

People as resources: It is a way of referring to a country's workforce in terms of existing skills and abilities.





Class : 9th Social Studies (Economics)
Chapter-2: People as Resource



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

- The quality of the population decides the:
(a) birth rate of the country
(b) death rate of the country
(c) growth rate of the country
(d) none of the above
- Literate and healthy population are:
(a) an asset for a country
(b) a liability for the economy
(c) could be both (a) and (b)
(d) none of the above
- The literacy rates have increased from in 1951 to in 2001.
(a) 18%-45% (b) 20%-55%
(c) 18%-55% (d) 18%-65%
- 'Sarva Siksha Abhiyan' is a significant step towards providing elementary education to all children in age group of:
(a) five to ten (b) ten to fifteen
(c) six to fifteen (d) six to fourteen
- The health of a person helps him to realise his potential and the ability to fight:
(a) the enemy (b) diseases
(c) illness (d) none of these
- Urban areas have mostly:
(a) educated employment
(b) educated unemployment
(c) educated people
(d) none of the above
- Investment in human capital yields a return just like investment in:
(a) secondary capital
(b) primary capital
(c) physical capital
(d) none of the above
- Investment in human resources is the same as investment in:
(a) land
(b) property
(c) land and capital
(d) none of these
- Primary sector includes:
(a) agriculture, forestry, animal husbandry, etc.
(b) fishing, quarrying and manufacturing
(c) trade, transport, banking etc.
(d) none of the above.
- Tertiary sector includes:
(a) agriculture, forestry, animal husbandry etc.
(b) fishing, quarrying and manufacturing
(c) trade, transport, banking etc.
(d) none of the above
- Economic activities have two parts:
(a) market activities and sale activities
(b) market activities and non-market activities
(c) only market activities
(d) none of the above.
- In early times, women generally looked after domestic chores and men:
(a) work in offices
(b) work in factories
(c) work in the fields
(d) all the above

Very Short Questions:

- Begging is which category of activity?
- Construction is an activity of which sector?
- Sprinkling crops with insecticide is an activity of which sector?
- Navodaya Vidyalayas have been started for which kind of school children?
- Sarva Shiksha Abhiyan is meant to provide what kind of education?
- What is the age group of population which is treated as the workforce?
- Unemployment wastes what resources?
- In which category of activity will you place a social worker educating poor children for free?
- Is it correct that disguised unemployment is very common in urban areas?
- When we refer to a woman as a 'resource', we are referring to which of her skills?



Short Questions:

1. Why do educated parents invest more in their children's education and health?
2. Why are rural women employed at very low wages?
3. Describe any three steps taken by government in the field of education.
4. What do you understand by 'people as a resource'?
5. What part does health play in the individual's working life?
6. What are the various activities undertaken in the Primary sector, Secondary sector and Tertiary sector?
7. What is 'human capital formation'?
8. How can investment be made in human capital?
9. How is human capital superior to other resources?
10. How can a large population of India be turned as an asset rather than a liability?

Long Questions:

1. What are various activities which are classified into the three main sectors? Name each sector with suitable examples.
2. What is the difference between economic activities and non-economic activities?
3. Why does unemployment have a detrimental effect on the overall growth of an economy?
4. Explain why Infant Mortality Rate (IMR) and literacy rate are considered to be indicators of human resource development.
5. Do you notice any difference between the two friends Vilas and Sakal? What are those?
6. Visit a nearby village or a slum area and write down a case study of a boy or girl of your age facing the same condition as Vilas or Sakal.
7. Can you imagine some village which initially had no job opportunities but later came up with many?
8. Which capital would you consider the best – land, labour, physical capital and human capital? Why?

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) followed by a statement of Reason (R) is given. Choose the correct option out of the choices given below each question.

Assertion (A): Educated parents are found to invest more heavily on the education of their child.

Reason (R): They want their child should have a good future.

- A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- C) A is true, but R is false.
- D) A is false, but R is true.

2. In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) followed by a statement of Reason (R) is given. Choose the correct option out of the choices given below each question.

Assertion (A): People dependent upon agriculture usually face problem of seasonal unemployment.

Reason (R): There are certain busy seasons when sowing, harvesting, weeding and threshing is done. Certain months do not provide much work to the people dependent on agriculture.

- A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- C) A is true, but R is false.
- D) A is false, but R is true.

Case Study Based Questions:

1. Read the source and answer the following.

Unemployment leads to wastage of manpower resource. People who are an asset for the economy turn into a liability. There is a feeling of hopelessness and despair among the youth. People do not have enough money to support their family. Inability of educated people who are willing to work to find gainful employment implies a great social waste.

Unemployment tends to increase economic overload. The dependence of the unemployed on the working population increases. The quality of life of an individual as well as of society is adversely affected. When a family has to live on a bare subsistence level there is a general decline in its health status and rising withdrawal from the school system.

Hence, unemployment has detrimental impact on the overall growth of an economy. Increase in unemployment is an indicator of a depressed economy. It also wastes the resource, which could have been gainfully employed. If people cannot be used as a resource they naturally appear as a liability to the economy.

- (1) A person is not able to find work despite having skills he is termed as:
 - A) Asset of the country.
 - B) Liability of the country
 - C) Unemployed person
 - D) Both (b) and (c)
- (2) A person is a home-maker who has started a Tiffin service to deliver food to nearby offices. That person is
 - A) An unemployed person
 - B) An employed person
 - C) An entrepreneur
 - D) None of the above
- (3) From the above source, what do you understand by depressed economy?
 - A) High economic growth
 - B) Low economic growth
 - C) Mild economic growth
 - D) Very high economic growth
- (4) Unemployment is responsible for:
 - A) Depressed economy of a nation
 - B) Wastes the resources
 - C) Make human capital as a liability for the country
 - D) All of the above

2. Read the source and answer the following:

In case of India we have unemployment in rural and urban areas. However, the nature of unemployment differs in rural and urban areas. In case of rural areas, there is seasonal and disguised unemployment. Urban areas have mostly educated unemployment. Seasonal unemployment happens when people are not able to find jobs during some months of the year. People dependent upon agriculture usually face such kind of problem. There are certain busy seasons when sowing, harvesting, weeding and threshing is done.

Certain months do not provide much work to the people dependent on agriculture.

In case of disguised unemployment people appear to be employed. They have agricultural plot where they find work. This usually happens among family members engaged in agricultural activity. The work requires the service of five people but engages eight people. Three people are extra. These three people also work in the same plot as the others. The contribution made by the three extra people does not add to the contribution made by the five people.

If three people are removed the productivity of the field will not decline. The field requires the service of five people and the three extra people are disguised unemployed.

- (1) Suppose a farm labourer. After harvesting season you have no work to feed your family. You are facing which type of unemployment?
 - A) Disguised unemployment
 - B) Seasonal unemployment
 - C) Educational unemployment
 - D) All of the above
- (2) A person is a post-graduate student, who is unable to find work despite of having first class division in his course. The person is facing:
 - A) Seasonal Unemployment
 - B) Educational Unemployment
 - C) Disguised Unemployment
 - D) None of the above
- (3) Seasonal and disguised unemployment are common phenomena in which of the following places?
 - A) Rural areas
 - B) Urban areas
 - C) Semi-urban areas
 - D) None of the above
- (4) What can be done to reduce the unemployment rate in rural areas?
 - A) To provide skill training to farm labourers and small farmers
 - B) To provide incentive to people who want to open a manufacturing unit.
 - C) To establish factories in the rural and nearby areas
 - D) All of the above



Answer Key

MCQ Answers:

- Answer:** (c) growth rate of the country
- Answer:** (a) an asset for a country
- Answer:** (a) 18%-45%
- Answer:** (a) five to ten
- Answer:** (c) illness
- Answer:** (b) educated unemployment
- Answer:** (c) physical capital
- Answer:** (c) land and capital
- Answer:** (a) agriculture, forestry, animal husbandry, etc.
- Answer:** (c) trade, transport, banking etc.
- Answer:** (b) market activities and non-market activities
- Answer:** (c) work in the fields

Very Short Answers:

- Answer:** Begging does not involve production of any goods or services and also does not add to national income. So, it is a non-economic activity.
- Answer:** Construction is an activity of the Secondary sector.
- Answer:** Since, this is an activity which is a part of agriculture, it is an activity of the Primary sector.
- Answer:** Navodaya Vidyalayas have been started for talented school children residing in rural areas.
- Answer:** Sarva Shiksha Abhiyan is meant to provide elementary education (up to class VIII) to children in the age group of 6 to 14 years.
- Answer:** The workforce population in India includes people from the age of 15 to 59 years. In other countries, this may be slightly different. For instance, it is 16 to 65 years in USA.
- Answer:** Unemployment refers to human beings and thus it wastes human resources,
- Answer:** Since, the social worker is not earning any money, his activity will be classified as a non-market activity.
- Answer:** No, it is incorrect, as disguised unemployment is very common in rural areas, particularly in agriculture.
- Answer:** When a person is referred to as a resource, it refers to that person's productive skills and abilities.

Short Answers:

- Answer:** Educated parents invest more in their children's education and health because they realise that poor education and indifferent health is detrimental to their children's well-being and future.
- Answer:** In rural areas, girls are not given a proper education or given skill training for doing jobs due to being involved in household duties and the view that they should not go out of the home to work. Due to these factors, when they need a job, they are not able to demand as high wages as men can
- Answer:**
 - A child, too with investment made on his/her education can yield a higher return in future in the form of higher earning and greater contribution to society.
 - Educated parents realise the importance of education.
 - They are conscious of proper nutrition and hygiene.
- Answer:** 'People as a resource' is a way of referring to a country's working people in terms of their existing productive skills and abilities. Because the humans contribute to GDP, they are also considered as a resource.
- Answer:** Health plays an important part in the individual's working life because
 - An unhealthy person cannot work efficiently.
 - If the body is healthy then only the mind can perform well.
 - A healthy person is able to work harder and better, thus earning more and living a better life.
- Answer:** Primary Sector Activities Agriculture, forestry, animal husbandry, fishing, poultry farming and mining. Secondary Sector Activities Manufacturing and construction. Tertiary Sector Activities Trade, transport, communication,

banking, education, health, tourism, services and insurance.

7. **Answer:** When the existing 'human resource' is further developed by becoming more educated and healthier, we call it 'human capital though education training and medical care formation' that adds to the productive power of the country.
8. **Answer:** Investment in human capital through education training and medical care yields a return just like investment in physical capital. Higher income is earned because of higher productivity of the more educated or the better trained persons, as well as the higher productivity of healthier people.
9. **Answer:** Human Capital is in one way superior to other resources like land and physical capital: human resource can make use of land and capital but otherwise land and capital cannot become useful on its own.
10. **Answer:** A large population can be turned into a productive asset by investment in human capital by spending resources on education and health for all, training of industrial and agricultural workers in the use of modern technology, and useful scientific researches etc.

Long Answers:

1. **Answer:** The three sectors of economic activities are:
 - a. Primary Sector Which harvests or extracts natural products from the Earth; it involves production of raw materials and food products. Examples, include agriculture, dairy farming, mining and quarrying.
 - b. Secondary Sector Which involves manufacture of finished goods. Examples includes manufacturing and construction.
 - c. Tertiary Sector All activities which support the Primary and Secondary sectors with services. Examples are transportation, banking, trade, insurance, legal services, administration and government.
2. **Answer:** Economic Activities which result in production of goods and services which add to the national income are called economic activities. The activities classified in the three sectors are economic activities. Non-Economic Activities Those activities which are not performed for pay or profit, e.g., parents looking after their children or a mother cooking food for her family is a non-economic activity, as it is neither performed for pay or profit and nor does it add to the national income.
3. **Answer:** Unemployment tends to increase economic overload, i.e., the dependence of the unemployed persons on the people who are working goes up. This adversely affects the quality of life of people, as they have to live at subsistence level, which leads to poor health and even increase in school dropouts. Ultimately this has a detrimental effect on the growth of the economy if it continues, as it wastes resources who can be gainfully employed.
4. **Answer:** Infant Mortality Rate is a factor that can be associated with the well-being of a population. High infant mortality rates could reflect improper childcare owing to poverty, lack of education and other factors. Similarly, the literacy rate reflects the quality of a population. An illiterate and unhealthy population shows poor human development, whereas a literate and healthy population shows proper human development. Thus, infant mortality rate and literacy rate are considered to be indicators of human resource development.
5. **Answer:** The differences between the two friends Sakal and Vilas were:
 - a. Vilas's father died when Vilas was two years old whereas Sakal was living with his parents.
 - b. Sakal went to school, but Vilas did not go to school.
 - c. Sakal was interested in studies whereas Vilas was not interested in studies.
 - d. Sakal did a – course in computers and became employed whereas Vilas remained illiterate and was not employed.
 - e. The condition of Sakal and his family became better whereas Vilas and his family lived in poverty.
6. **Answer:** A typical case study can be written as follows. I visited my ancestral village and found some families in a similar plight to Vikas. One boy, Puran, who is 15 years old, works as a farm labourer. In fact, all his family members are farm labourers, as they are landless and uneducated. Since, there is no secondary school in the village, Puran did not study beyond class five. He does



not have enough clothes and whatever clothes he is wearing are also torn and worn out with use. He and his family members are undernourished. His father has already become a patient of tuberculosis and may not live long. He feels he will forever remain a poor person.

7. **Answer:** Health plays an important role in human capital formation for the following reasons:

- Only a healthy person can perform to his full potential.
- A healthy person can do the work in a more effective manner.
- A healthy person can contribute to the growth and development of the economy by doing productive work.
- An unhealthy person becomes a liability for an organisation. Indeed, health is an indispensable basis for realising one's well-being. Realising the importance of health, improvement in the health status of the population has been the priority of the government.

8. **Answer:**

- Agriculture sector in India is suffering from disguised unemployment and there is no more possibility of further employment.

- Unemployed rural labour force is now migrating to the cities to work in the industrial sector, where many industries have been set-up and have the maximum capacity to provide employment.
- The educated unemployed can also find jobs in the Service sector or the Tertiary sector.

Assertion Reason Answer:

- A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

Case Study Answer:

1. **Answer:**

- D) Both (b) and (c)
- C) An entrepreneur
- B) Low economic growth
- D) All of the above

2. **Answer:**

- B) Seasonal unemployment
- B) Educational Unemployment
- A) Rural areas
- D) All of the above



STEP UP
ACADEMY

Poverty As a Challenge | 3

Dimensions of Poverty's

India has the largest single concentration of poor in the world. In India, nearly 260 million people live in poverty. Poverty means lack of food, shelter, education, clean water, sanitation facilities and a regular job for livelihood.

Two Typical Cases of Poverty

The following two cases show the many dimensions of poverty, including lack of proper food, shelter, healthcare, education as well as clean water and sanitation. They also show lack of a regular means of livelihood.

(i) Urban Case

Ram Saran is a daily wage laborer in a flour mill near Ranchi in Jharkhand. He earns around Rs. 1500 per month when employed. He supports his family of 6 persons, besides sending some money to his elderly parents. His wife and son also work, but none of his 4 children can attend school. The family lives in a one-room rented house on the outer areas of the city; The children are undernourished, have very few clothes or footwear and no access to healthcare.

(ii) Rural Case

Lakha Singh is a landless labourer in a small village near Meerut in Uttar Pradesh. By doing odd jobs for farmers, he earns Rs. 50 per day. Sometimes, he gets some foodgrain or other items instead of cash. He is not literate, and his family of 8 people lives in a kuccha hut near the edge of the village. They have no access to healthcare, cannot afford new clothes or even soap or oil.

Poverty as Seen in Social Science

Poverty is analyzed through social indicators such as illiteracy level, lack of general resistance because of malnutrition, lack of access to healthcare and lack of job opportunities. Recently, the analysis of poverty is based on social exclusion and vulnerability.

Social exclusion can be both a cause and a consequence of poverty. It is the trend where individuals or groups are excluded from the privilege of benefits and opportunities which others enjoy.

The vulnerability of the poor is a measure which states the probability of particular communities or individuals of becoming poor in the future. It is identified through the options available to different communities for finding an alternative living style in terms of assets, education, health and job opportunities.



- Because of rapid economic growth, poverty has declined in China and South Asian countries.
- The number of poor in China has reduced from 606 million in 1981 to 212 million in 2001.
- Poverty has increased from 41% in 1981 to 46% in 2000 in Sub-Saharan Africa.
- In Latin America, the poverty ratio remained the same.
- The United Nations, through its Millennium Development Goals, has called for reducing the proportion of people living on less than \$1 a day to half the 1990 level by 2015.

Causes of Poverty

During the British colonial administration, there was a low level of economic development. British policies ruined the traditional method of making handicrafts and discouraged industrial development. This resulted in the failure of economic growth, population control and lack of job opportunities.

The Green Revolution with the spread of irrigation created many job opportunities in the agricultural sector. However, the benefit does not reach all parts of the country. Inadequate jobs and wage earners could not afford to run their family. Income inequality and many other socio-cultural and economic factors are responsible for poverty in India.

Anti-Poverty Measures

The anti-poverty strategy of the Government is based on the promotion of economic growth and targeted anti-poverty programmers.

- National Rural Employment Guarantee Act (NREGA), September 2005
 - 100 days assured employment every year to every household in 200 districts; will extend to 600 districts later.
 - One-third of jobs reserved for women.
 - The Central Government will establish National Employment Guarantee Funds.
- National Food for Work Programme (NFWP), 2004
 - Launched in 150 most backward districts.
 - Open to all rural poor who are in need of wage employment and manual skilled labour.
 - 100% centrally sponsored scheme and food grains free of cost.
- Pradhan Mantri Gramodaya Yojana (PMGY), 2000
 - Additional central assistance to states for basic services.
- Swarna Jayanti Gram Swarozgar Yojana (SGSY), 1999
 - To assist poor families above the poverty line by organizing them into self-help groups through a mix of bank credit and government subsidy.
- Rural Employment Generation Programme (REGP), 1995
 - To create self-employment opportunities in rural areas and small towns.
 - To create 25 lakh jobs for the programme under the Tenth Five-Year Plan.
- Prime Minister Rozgar Yojana (PMRY), 1993
 - To create self-employment opportunities for educated unemployed youth in rural areas and small towns.
 - To help set up small businesses and industries.

Challenges Ahead

Although poverty has declined in India, there is a disparity between rural and urban areas and among different states. Great challenges include making better progress in reducing the poverty level in the next ten to fifteen years, providing minimum necessary health care, education, and job security for all and achieving gender equality in society.



The Challenges to Poverty Reduction

Poverty reduction is still a major challenge in India, due to the wide differences between regions as well as rural and urban areas. Further, poverty should include not only the matter of the adequate amount of food but other factors like education, healthcare, shelter, job security, gender, equality, dignity and so on.

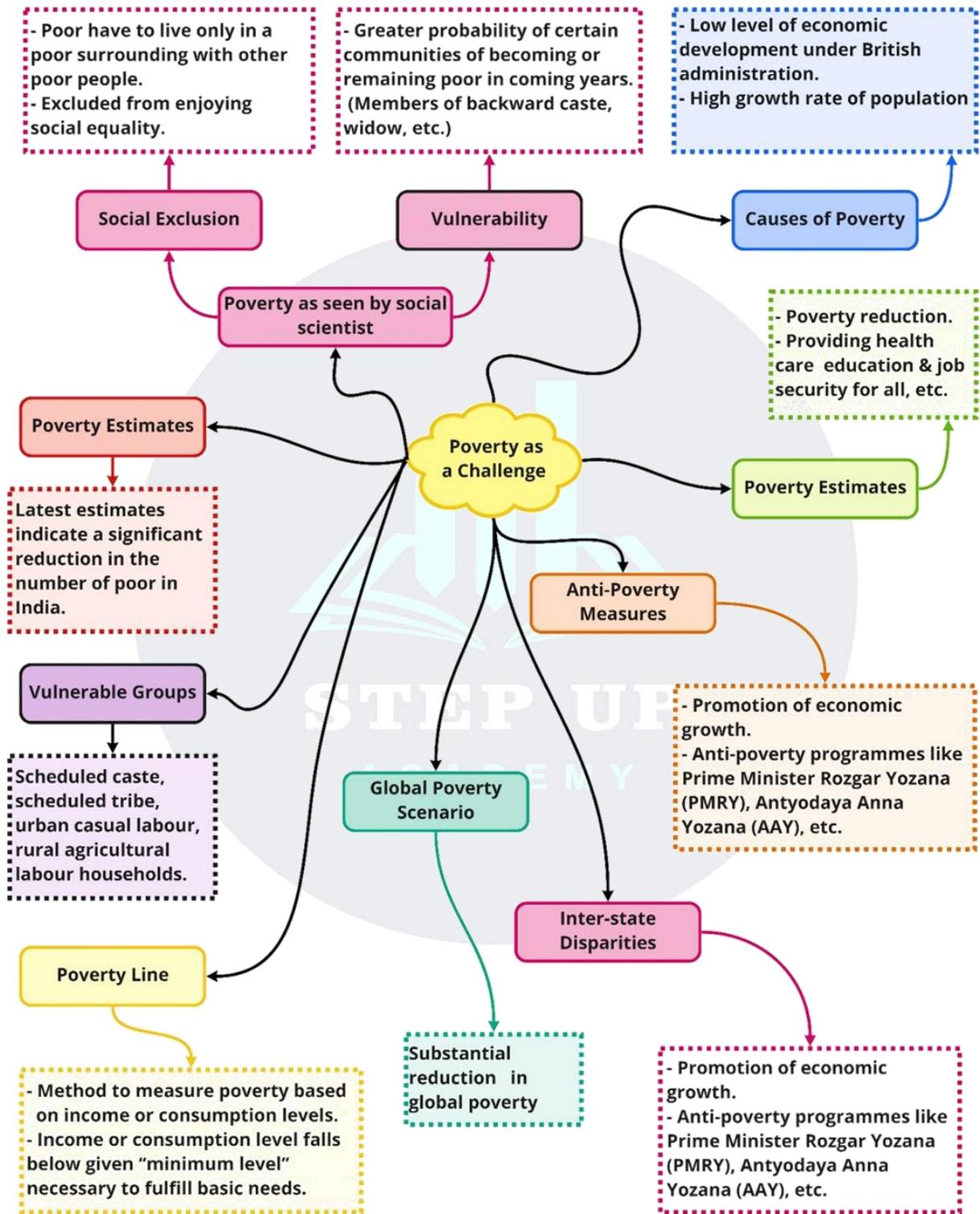
These give us the concept of human poverty. Poverty reduction is expected to be lower in the next 10-15 years.

In addition to anti-poverty measures, the government should focus on the following to reduce poverty.

- Higher economic growth.
- Universal free elementary education.
- The decrease in population growth.
- Empowerment of women and weaker sections.



Class : 9th Social Studies (Economics)
Chapter-3: Poverty as a Challenge





Important Questions

Multiple Choice questions-

1. Number of poors in China has come down for million in 1989 to million in 2001.
(a) 606 – 312 (b) 506 – 212
(c) 606 – 212 (d) 706 – 312
2. Prime Minister Rozgar Yozana was started in:
(a) 1973 (b) 1983
(c) 1993 (d) 2003
3. The Swarnajayanti Gram Swarozgar Yojana was launched in:
(a) 1979 (b) 1989
(c) 1999 (d) 2009
4. In Latin America the ratio of poverty:
(a) declined (b) increased
(c) remained the same (d) none of the above
5. According to World Development Report, 2001, the % of population in Nigeria below \$1 a day was:
(a) 70.8 (b) 80.8
(c) 90.8 (d) 60.8
6. About million people in India live in poverty.
(a) 260 million (b) 270 million
(c) 280 million (d) 290 million
7. A person is considered poor if his or her income level falls below a given:
(a) 'maximum level' necessary to fulfill basic needs
(b) 'minimum level' necessary to fulfill basic needs
(c) could be (a) and (b) both
(d) none of the above
8. For the year 2000, the poverty line for a person was fixed at:
(a) Rs. 328 per month for rural areas and Rs. 554 for urban areas
(b) Rs. 428 per month for rural areas and Rs. 454 for urban areas
(c) Rs. 328 per month for rural areas and Rs. 454 for urban areas
(d) none of the above
9. Social groups which are most vulnerable to poverty are:
(a) scheduled castes only
(b) scheduled tribes only
(c) both scheduled castes and scheduled tribes
(d) none of the above
10. Women, children (girl child) and old people are:
(a) much richer than others
(b) poorest of the poor
(c) dependent on these
(d) none of the above

Very Short Questions-

1. What is the average number of calories required per person per day in rural areas of India?
2. When was the National Rural Employment Guarantee Act (NREGA) passed?
3. Which state out of Bihar, Odisha, Punjab and Assam has the highest poverty ratio?
4. Which state out of West Bengal Maharashtra, Assam and Uttar Pradesh has a poverty ratio below the national average?
5. In what part of the world has poverty remained the same between 1981 to 2001?
6. Which section of the population is the target for REGP and AAY anti-poverty programmes?
7. Which section of the population is the target for SGSY and NREGA programmes?
8. Is it correct that India has the largest concentration of poor in the world?
9. Can social exclusion cause poverty in rural areas?
10. What do we mean by the term 'vulnerability to poverty'?

Short Questions-

1. How is regular growth of population one of the major causes of poverty?
2. Why is the calorie requirement of people higher in rural areas compared to urban areas?
3. What are the major reasons for ineffectiveness of anti-poverty measures in India?

4. What kind of people in India are considered poor?
5. What are the dimensions of poverty?
6. What is one of the biggest challenges of independent India?
7. What are the social indicators of poverty as seen by social scientists?
8. What is the concept of social exclusion?
9. How does a country measure its poverty?
10. What is the historical cause of poverty in India?

Long Questions-

1. What is the status of poverty in scheduled caste, or scheduled tribe?
2. How is the poverty line determined?

Or

Describe how the poverty line is estimated in India.

3. Which groups are most vulnerable to poverty?

Or

Identify social and economic groups are most vulnerable to poverty in India.

4. What is the global poverty scenario?
5. What are the main causes of poverty?

Or

Describe the major reasons for poverty in India.

6. What is the current anti-poverty strategy of the government for the promotion of economic growth?
7. Mention some anti-poverty programmes undertaken by the government.

Answer Key

MCQ Answers-

1. **Answer:** (c) 606 – 212
2. **Answer:** (c) 1993
3. **Answer:** (c) 1999
4. **Answer:** (c) remained the same
5. **Answer:** (a) 70.8
6. **Answer:** (a) 260 million
7. **Answer:** (b) 'minimum level' necessary to fulfill basic needs
8. **Answer:** (c) Rs. 328 per month for rural areas and Rs. 454 for urban areas
9. **Answer:** (c) both scheduled castes and scheduled tribes
10. **Answer:** (b) poorest of the poor

Very Short Answers-

1. **Answer:** The average number of calories required per person per day in rural areas of India is 2400.
2. **Answer:** The National Rural Employment Guarantee Act (NREGA) was passed in September 2005.
3. **Answer:** Odisha has the highest poverty ratio of 47.2%, as per Economic Survey of 2001-02.

4. **Answer:** The national average poverty ratio was 26.1%. Only Maharashtra, out of the given four states, with a poverty ratio of 25%, was better.
5. **Answer:** Poverty has remained the same between 1981 to 2001 in Latin America and the Caribbean Nations.
6. **Answer:** The target group for REGP is unemployed rural youth and the target group for AAY is the rural and urban poor families.
7. **Answer:** The target for SGSY is rural poor households and the target for NREGA is rural households.
8. **Answer:** Yes, India has about 260 million people who live in poverty, as per an estimate made in the year 1999-2000.
9. **Answer:** Yes, social exclusion of the Scheduled Castes (SCs) in rural areas is a major cause of their poverty.
10. **Answer:** 'Vulnerability to poverty' means the chances of some communities or persons to become poor or remain poor in the future.

Short Answers-

1. **Answer:** High population growth rate increases the rate of depletion of resources. Due to this, pressure on resources increases. More people will be able to avail of a smaller share of resources, thus bringing more people below the poverty line.



2. **Answer:** The calorie requirement of people in rural areas is higher because the rural people are engaged in more physical labour than people in urban areas. Physical labour is more energy consuming than mental work.
3. **Answer:** The major reasons for ineffectiveness of anti-poverty measures in India are lack of proper implementation of the programmes, overlapping of schemes and lack of right targeting of people.
4. **Answer:** They could be landless labourers in villages or people living in overcrowded jhuggis in cities. They could be daily wage earners at construction sites or child workers in dhabas. They could also be beggars with children in tatters.
5. **Answer:** Poverty means hunger and lack of shelter. Poverty means lack of clean water and sanitation facilities. It also means lack of a regular job at a minimum decent level. Above all, it means living with a sense of helplessness.
6. **Answer:** One of the biggest challenges of independent India has been to bring millions of its people out of abject poverty. Mahatma Gandhi always insisted that India would be truly independent only when the poorest of its people become free of human suffering.
7. **Answer:** Prevalent factors like illiteracy levels, lack of general resistance due to malnutrition, lack of access to health care, lack of job opportunities, lack of access to safe drinking water, sanitation, etc., are the social indicators of poverty as seen by social scientists.
8. **Answer:** According to this concept, poverty must be seen in terms of the poor having to live only in poor surroundings with other poor people, excluded from enjoying the company of better off people in better surroundings.
9. **Answer:** Each country uses an imaginary line that is considered appropriate for its existing level of development and its accepted minimum social norms. For example, a person not having a car in the United States may be considered poor. In India, owning of a car is still considered a luxury.
10. **Answer:** It is the low level of economic development under the British Colonial administration. The policies of the colonial government ruined traditional handicrafts and

discouraged development of industries like textiles. This resulted in less job opportunities and low growth rate of incomes. This was accompanied by a high growth rate of population.

Long Answers-

1. Answer:

- i. 50 per cent of casual workers in urban areas are below poverty line. About 50 per cent of landless agricultural workers and 43 per cent of scheduled caste are also poor.
- ii. The double disadvantage of being a landless casual wage labour household in the socially disadvantaged social groups of the scheduled caste or the scheduled tribe population highlights the seriousness of the problem.
- iii. Some recent studies have shown that except for scheduled tribe households all the other three groups that is, scheduled caste, rural agricultural labour and the urban casual labour have seen a decline in poverty.

2. Answer:

- i. In India, a minimum level of food requirement, clothing, footwear, fuel and light, educational and medical requirement, etc., are determined for subsistence.
- ii. These things are multiplied by their prices in rupees.
- iii. The desired calorie requirements are seen depending on age, sex and the type of work that a person does.
- iv. The accepted average calorie requirement in India is 2,400 calories per person per day in rural areas and 2,100 calories per person per year in urban areas.
- v. Since people living in rural areas are considered to be higher than urban areas.
- vi. The monetary expenditure per capita needed for buying these calorie requirements is revised time to time, keeping in mind the rise in prices.
- vii. On the basis of these calculations, for the year 2000, the poverty line for a person was fixed at ` 328 per month for the rural areas and ` 454 for the urban areas.

3. **Answer:**
- The social groups which are most vulnerable to poverty are those belonging to the Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes.
 - Among the economic groups, the most vulnerable groups are the rural agricultural labour households and the urban casual labourers.
 - About 51 out of 100 people belonging to the Scheduled Tribes are not able to meet their basic needs.
 - Similarly, 50 per cent of the casual workers in urban areas are below the poverty line.
4. **Answer:** Although there has been a substantial reduction in global poverty, it is marked with great regional differences:
- Poverty declined substantially in China and south-east Asian countries as a result of rapid economic growth and massive investment in human resource development.
 - In the south Asian countries, the decline has not been as rapid. Despite decline in the percentage of poor, the number of poor has declined from 475 million in 1981 to 428 million in 2001.
 - In Sub-Saharan Africa, poverty in fact rose from 41 per cent in 1981 to 46 per cent in 2001.
 - In Latin America, the ratio of poverty remained the same.
 - Poverty has also resurfaced in some of the former socialist countries like Russia.
5. **Answer:** The main causes of widespread poverty are:
- The low level of economic development under the British colonial administration was one of the main causes of poverty. The policies of the colonial government ruined traditional handicrafts and discouraged the development of industries like textiles.
 - High growth rate of population also contributed towards rise in poverty levels. It made the growth rate of per capita income very low.
 - With the growth in irrigation and the Green Revolution, many job opportunities were created in the agricultural sector. But the effects were limited to some parts of India.
- iv. Unable to find proper jobs in cities, many people started working as rickshaw pullers, vendors, construction workers, domestic servants, etc., with irregular and small income. These people lived in slums on the outskirts of the cities.
6. **Answer:**
- Over a period of thirty years lasting up to the early eighties, there was little per capita income growth and not much reduction in poverty.
 - Since the eighties, India's economic growth has been one of the fastest in the world.
 - The growth rate jumped from an average of about 3.5 per cent a year in the 1970s to about 6 per cent.
 - Higher growth rates have helped significantly in the reduction of poverty. So, there is a strong link between economic growth and poverty reduction. However, the poor may not be able to take direct advantage from the opportunities created by economic growth.
7. **Answer:**
- The Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act was passed in September 2005. The act provides 100 days assured employment every year, to every rural household, in 200 districts.
 - The central government will also establish National Employment Guarantee Funds. Similarly, state governments will establish State Employment Guarantee Funds for implementation of the scheme.
 - Under the programme, if an applicant is not provided employment within 15 days he or she will be entitled to a daily unemployment allowance.
- Another scheme is the National Food for Work Programme (NFWP) which was launched in 2004, in 150 most backward districts of the country. The programme is open to all rural people who are in need of wage employment and desire to do manual unskilled work. Under this scheme, food grains are provided free of cost to the state.





Food Security in India | 4

Dimensions of Food Security

Food is essential for a person to live. Food security means availability, accessibility and affordability of food throughout the lifetime of every person. Food availability means food production within the country, food imports and the stocks of previous years stored in government granaries. Accessibility means food is within the reach of every person. Affordability means that a person has enough sources to buy sufficient, safe, and nutritious food.

What is food security?

Food security has the following dimensions

- availability of food means food production within the country, food imports and the previous year's stock stored in government granaries.
- accessibility means food is within reach of every person.
- affordability implies that an individual has enough money to buy sufficient, safe and nutritious food to meet one's dietary needs.

Food security is ensured in a country only if

- enough food is available for all the persons
- all persons have the capacity to buy food of acceptable quality
- there is no barrier on access to food.

New Dimension to Food Security

According to Amartya Sen, the access to food through what he called entitlement—a combination of what one can produce and exchange in the market along with state or other socially provided supplies.

Effects of Calamity

During a natural calamity, the total production level decreases, thereby it creates a shortage of food. This leads to a price increase and people will not be able to buy food. Thus, a situation of starvation may lead to famine in those affected areas.

Famine means widespread deaths occur because of starvation and epidemics caused by forced use of contaminated water or decaying food and loss of body resistance because of weakening from starvation. For example, the famine of Bengal in 1943.



Food Security

There are many groups of people with no land—traditional artisans and petty self-employed—who suffer from food and nutrition insecurity in India. The working group in the urban areas is employed in ill-paid occupations and a casual labour market.

- Reasons for food insecurity: The social composition
 - SCs, STs and other OBCs who have either poor land-base or low productivity.
 - Because of natural disasters, people migrate to different areas in search of work.
- Food insecure people
 - A large proportion of pregnant, nursing mothers and children under the age of 5 years.
 - Backward states, tribal and remote areas, regions prone to natural disasters.

Hunger

There are two types of hunger. These are as follows

(i) Chronic Hunger

It is a consequence of a diet regularly deficient in quantity and quality this is caused due to lack of income to buy food for survival. Chronic hunger has reduced in rural areas from 2.3% of households in 1983 to 0.7% in 1999 – 2000. In urban areas, it has reduced from 0.8% to 0.3% during the same period.

(ii) Seasonal Hunger

It is related to seasonal cycles of food growing and harvesting. It affects landless* agricultural labourers in rural areas the most. In urban areas, casual construction workers suffer from this during the time when they do not get work. The proportion of households experiencing seasonal hunger in rural areas has reduced significantly from 16.2% in 1983 to 2.6% in 1999-2000. In urban areas, it has reduced from 5.6% to only 0.6% during the reference period.

The eradication of hunger and reducing the risks of future hunger is required to attain food security. Hunger has chronic and seasonal dimensions. Chronic hunger is a consequence of inadequate food in terms of quantity and quality. Seasonal hunger is related to cycles of growing and harvesting food.

Indian agriculture adopted a new strategy which resulted in the Green Revolution particularly in the production of wheat and rice. In July 1968, the Prime Minister of India Indira Gandhi released a special stamp titled 'Wheat Revolution'.

Food Security in India

With the advent of the Green Revolution in the early 1970s, India has become self-sufficient in food grains. The Government ensured the availability of food grains in adverse weather and a well-designed food security system such as buffer stock and public distribution system.

Buffer Stock

Buffer stock is the stock of food grains such as wheat and rice procured by the Government through the Food Corporation of India (FCI). FCI purchases grains from the farmers in surplus states and they are paid a minimum support price. These grains are distributed among the poor section in the deficit areas at a price (issue price) lower than the market price.

Programmes For Food Security in India

In mid-1970s, National Sample Survey Organisation (NSSO) reported the high incidence of poverty level. Due to this, three important food intervention programmes were introduced.

They are

- Public Distribution System (PDS) for food grains
- Integrated Child Development Services (ICDS)
- Food-For Work (FfW) programme.



Public Distribution System (PDS) Through government regulated ration shops, the food procured by the FCI is distributed among the poorer sections of the society. This is called the Public Distribution System (PDS). Ration shops are now present in most localities, villages, towns and cities. There are about 5.5 lakh ration shops all over the country. Ration shops are also known as fair price shops. They keep stock of food grains, sugar, kerosene oil for cooking. These items are sold to people at a price lower than the market price. Any family with a ration card can buy a stipulated amount of these items (e.g. 35 kg of grains, 5 liters of kerosene, 5 kg of sugar, etc) every month from the nearby ration shop. The ration cards are of three kinds, colour-coded for easy recognition

- Antyodaya card for the poorest of the poor.
- BPL card for families below the poverty line.
- APL card for all others.

Public Distribution System

In a public distribution system, food procured by FCI is distributed among the poor people through government-regulated shops. Three kinds of ration cards are distributed among the people to avail food grains, sugar and kerosene oil for cooking at a lower price from these fair price shops. Antyodaya cards are provided to the poorest of the poor, below poverty line (BPL) cards for those below the poverty line and above poverty line (APL) cards for all the others.

Because of the high incidence of poverty, three important programmes were implemented in the mid-1970s. They are the public distribution system in existence earlier but strengthened thereafter for food grains, Integrated Child Development Services (ICDS) introduced in 1975 and the Food-for-Work (FFW) programme in 1977-78.



Current Status of the Public Distribution System

In 1992, the Revamped Public Distribution System (RPDS) was introduced in 1700 blocks in the country. The Targeted Public Distribution System (TPDS) was introduced to adopt the principle of targeting the poor in all areas. In 2000, two special programmes were launched- Antyodaya Anna Yojana (AAY) and the Annapurna Scheme (APS). They focused on the special target groups of the poorest of the poor and indigent senior citizens, respectively.

- AAY: One crore of the poorest among the BPL families are covered under this scheme. Twenty-five kilograms of food grains were made available to each eligible family at a subsidised rate of Rs 2 per kg for wheat and Rs 3 per kg for rice. It has been further expanded to two crore families covered under this scheme.
 - Subsidy is a payment which the Government makes to a producer to supplement the market price of a commodity.
 - In July 2002, the stock of wheat and rice with FCI was 63 million tonnes; this was much more than the minimum buffer norms of 24.3 million tonnes.
 - The storage of massive food grains is very undesirable and responsible for high-carrying costs. Freezing the minimum support price (MSP) for few years needs to be considered.

- Rising MSP has raised the maintenance cost of procuring food grains by the Government. Rising transport and storage costs of the FCI are other contributing factors for the increase in MSP.
- Increase in MSP has induced farmers to divert land from the production of coarse grains to the production of wheat and rice.
- Another major area of concern is the ineffectiveness of PDS which is clear from the fact that the average consumption of PDS grain at the all-India level is only 1 kg per person per month. As a result, the poor have to depend on markets rather than ration shops for the need of food.
- PDS dealers were involved in malpractices such as diverting food grains to the open market for a better margin.

Role of Cooperatives in Food Security

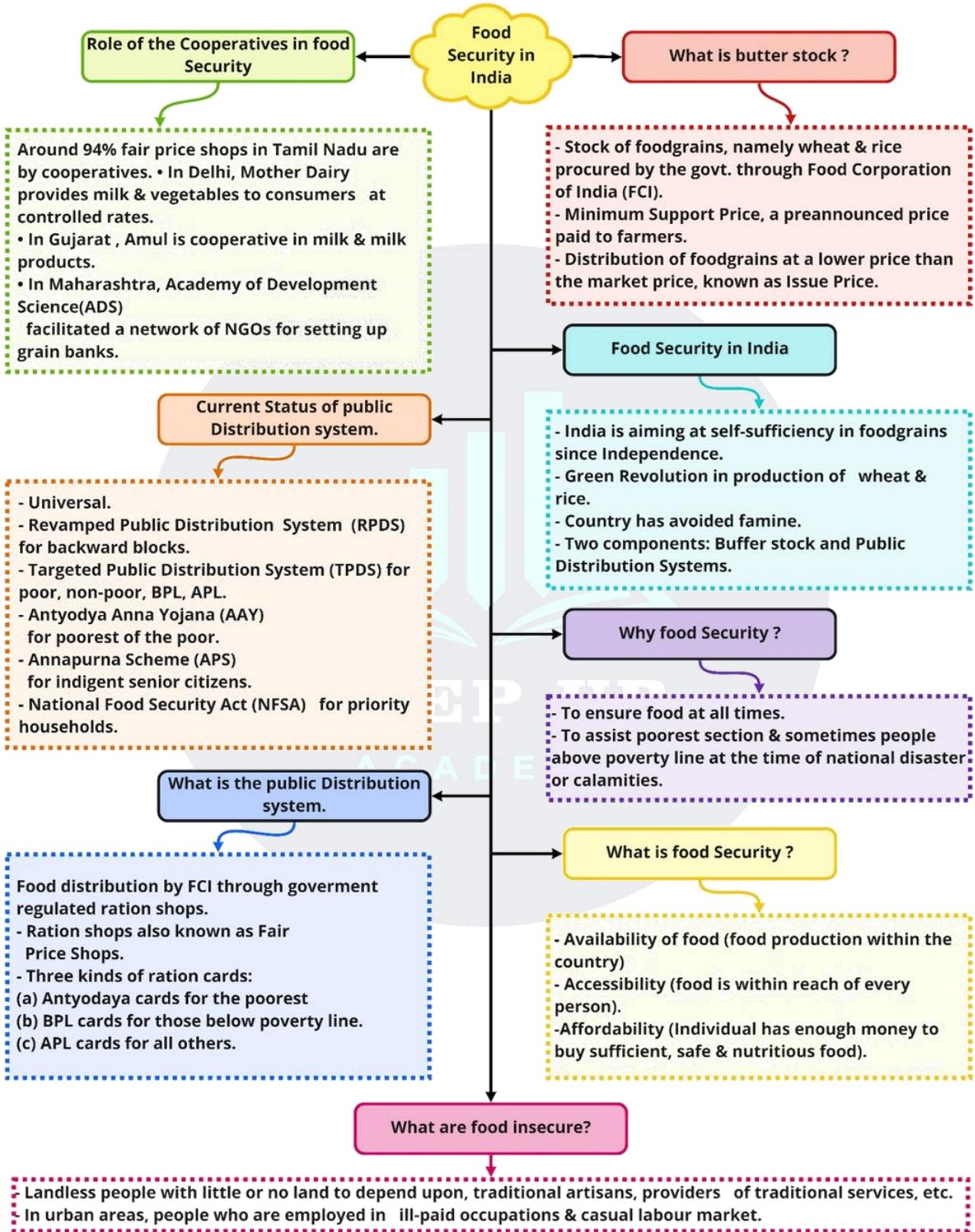
Cooperative societies set up shops to sell low-priced goods to poor people. These cooperatives play an important role in food security in India.

- Of all fair price shops running in Tamil Nadu, nearly 94% are being run by cooperatives.
- In Delhi, Mother Dairy is making strides in the provision of milk and vegetables to consumers at a controlled rate decided by the Government.
- In milk and milk products, Amul from Gujarat is another cooperative society.
- The Academy of Development Science (ADS) has facilitated a network of NGOs for setting up grain banks in different regions of Maharashtra.

In India, the cooperatives are also playing an important role in food security especially in the southern and western parts of the country. The cooperative societies set up shops to sell low priced goods to poor people. Some of the examples of cooperative societies are Mother Dairy in Delhi, Amul from Gujarat, Academy of Development Science (ADS) in Maharashtra.



Class : 9th Social Studies (Economics)
Chapter-4: Food Security in India



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

- Chronic hunger is a consequence of diets persistently inadequate:
 - in term of quality only
 - in term of quantity only
 - in term of quantity and quality
 - none of the above
- Seasonal hunger is a type of hunger when a person:
 - is unable to get food for the entire year
 - is able to get food for the entire year
 - is able to get work for the entire year
 - is unable to get work for the entire year
- Since independence, India is aiming at self-sufficiency in:
 - food security
 - food grains
 - work force
 - none of these
- The highest rate of growth in foodgrain was achieved in:
 - Punjab and Bihar
 - Haryana and Orissa
 - Punjab and Haryana
 - Punjab
- There are lakh ration shops all over the country:
 - 4.4
 - 4.5
 - 4.6
 - 4.7
- Fair Price Shops keep stock of:
 - only food grains
 - food grains and sugar
 - food grain, sugar and kerosene oil
 - none of the above
- Food security means:
 - availability of food to all people at all times.
 - availability and accessibility of food as all people at all times.
 - availability, accessibility and affordability of food to all people at all times.
 - none of the above.
- The famine of Bengal occurred is:
 - 1941
 - 1942
 - 1943
 - 1944
- Starvation deaths are also reported in Baran district of:
 - West Bengal
 - Bihar
 - Orissa
 - Rajasthan
- Food security is needed in a country:
 - to ensure food at all times
 - to ensure food to the rich
 - to ensure food at sometimes
 - none of the above
- The food insecure people are disproportionately large:
 - in all the states of India
 - in the states of Bihar and Orissa
 - in some region of the country
 - none of the above.
- Hunger is another aspect indicating:
 - food security
 - food insecurity
 - to meet their demands
 - none of the above

Very Short Questions:

- What does 'Food Security' mean?
- On what factors does food security depend on?
- How does the situation of starvation arise?
- Which was the most devastating famine to have occurred in India?
- What kind of people in rural areas are food insecure?
- Which other parts of society are prone to food insecurity?
- How people affected by natural disasters are food insecure?
- Does hunger cause food insecurity?



9. Which states achieved the highest rate of growth in food grain production during Green Revolution?
10. Which states continued to lag behind in food production despite Green Revolution?

Short Questions:

1. Explain the three dimensions of food security.
2. How is food security ensured in a country?
3. What kind of people faces food insecurity?
4. How is food security affected during a calamity?
5. How do famines lead to widespread deaths?
6. In which areas of India even today famine has caused starvation deaths?
7. What type of people in urban areas are food insecure?
8. Is it true that a high incidence of malnutrition prevails among women?

Long Questions:

1. What are the dimensions of 'food security'?
2. Why do we need 'food security'?
3. How is food security affected during a calamity?
4. What is a 'famine'? Which states in India are affected by famines?
5. Who is the most affected food insecure people in India?
6. How are food insecure people disproportionately large in some regions of the country?
7. Cite evidences which explain that India is self-sufficient in food grain production.

Answer Key

MCQ Answers:

1. **Answer:** (c) in term of quantity and quality
2. **Answer:** (c) is able to get work for the entire year
3. **Answer:** (b) food grains
4. **Answer:** (c) Punjab and Haryana
5. **Answer:** (c) 4.6
6. **Answer:** (c) food grain, sugar and kerosene oil
7. **Answer:** (c) availability, accessibility and affordability of food to all people at all times.
8. **Answer:** (c) 1943
9. **Answer:** (d) Rajasthan
10. **Answer:** (a) to ensure food at all times
11. **Answer:** (c) in some region of the country
12. **Answer:** (b) food insecurity

Very Short Answers:

1. **Answer:** Food security means availability, accessibility and affordability of food to all people at all times.
2. **Answer:** Food security depends on the Public Distribution System (PDS) and government vigilance and action at times when this security is threatened.

9. **Answer:** Punjab and Haryana achieved the highest rate of growth in the production of wheat.
10. **Answer:** Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Bihar, Odisha and the northeastern states lagged behind in food production, despite Green Revolution.

Short Answers-

- Answer:** Availability of food means food production within the country, accessibility means food within reach of every person and affordability is that an individual has enough money to buy sufficient safe food.
- Answer:** Food security is ensured in a country only if enough food is available for all persons, all persons have the capacity to buy food of acceptable quality and there is no barrier on access to food.
- Answer:** The poorest section of the society might be food insecure most of the times while persons above the poverty line might also be food insecure when the country faces a national disaster/calamity like drought, flood, tsunami, widespread failure of crops causing famine, etc.
- Answer:** Due to a national calamity say, drought, total production of food grain decreases. It creates a shortage of food in the affected areas. Due to shortage of food the prices go up. At the high prices, many people cannot afford to buy food.
- Answer:** A famine is characterised by widespread deaths due to starvation and epidemics caused by forced use of contaminated water or decaying food and loss of body resistance due to weakening from starvation.
- Answer:** Even today there are places like Kalahandi district and Kshipur tehsil in Raigarh district of Odisha where Some starvation deaths have been reported due to famine like conditions. Starvation deaths are also reported in Baran district of Rajasthan and Palamau district of Jharkhand.
- Answer:** In the urban areas, the food insecure families are those whose working members are generally employed in ill-paid occupations and casual labour market. These workers are largely engaged in seasonal activities and are paid very low wages that just ensure basic survival.

8. **Answer:** This is a matter of serious concern as it is true. It puts even the unborn baby at the risk of malnutrition. A large proportion of pregnant and nursing mothers and children under the age of 5 years constitute an important segment of food insecure population.
9. **Answer:** The food insecure people are disproportionately large in some regions of the country, such as economically backward states with high incidence of poverty, tribal and remote areas, regions more prone to natural disasters, etc.
10. **Answer:** The states of Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Jharkhand, Odisha, West Bengal, Chhattisgarh, parts of Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra account for the largest number of food insecure people in the country.

Long Answers-

- Answer: The dimensions of food security are:**
 - Availability of food:** It is the food production within the country including food imports and previous year stock of food in government granaries.
 - Accessibility:** This means food within the reach of every person.
 - Affordability:** This means whether the individual has enough money to buy sufficient and nutritious food.
- Answer: Food security is needed because:**
 - The poorest section of the society might be food insecure most of the times.
 - People above the poverty line might also be food insecure when the country faces a national disaster or calamity like an earthquake, drought, flood, tsunami, etc.
 - There can also be a widespread failure of crops causing famines, etc.
- Answer:**
 - Due to a natural calamity, total production of food grains decreases.
 - It creates a shortage of food in the affected area.
 - Due to shortage of food, the prices go up.
 - At higher prices, some people cannot afford to buy food.



- v. If such a calamity occurs in a widespread area, it may cause a situation of starvation.
- vi. A massive situation of starvation might turn into a famine.
4. **Answer:** A famine is characterised by widespread deaths due to starvation and epidemics caused by forced use of contaminated water or decaying food and loss of body resistance due to weakening from starvation:
- The most devastating famine that occurred in India was the Famine of Bengal in 1943. This famine killed 30 lakh people in the province of Bengal.
 - Even today, there are places like Kalahandi and Kashipur in Orissa, where famine-like conditions have been existing for many years and starvation deaths have also been reported.
 - Starvation deaths are also reported in Baran district of Rajasthan, Palamau district of Jharkhand and many other remote areas during the recent years.
5. **Answer: Worst affected people in rural areas are:**
- Landless people with little or no land to depend on.
 - The traditional artisans.
 - Providers of traditional services like Pandits performing religious ceremonies.
 - Petty, self-employed workers.
 - Poor and the destitute including beggars.

Worst affected people in urban areas are:

- Those families are food insecure whose working members are generally employed in ill-paid occupations.
 - Casual labour in the market.
 - These workers are mostly engaged in seasonal activities and are paid very low wages that just ensure their bare survival.
6. **Answer:**
- There are some states which are economically backward states with high incidence of poverty.
 - These are the tribal and remote areas, and regions more prone to natural disasters, etc.
 - In fact, the states of UP, Bihar, Jharkhand, Odisha, West Bengal, Chhattisgarh, parts of Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra account for the largest number of food insecure people in the country.
7. **Answer:** India has become self-sufficient in food grain production during the last thirty years.
- This is because of a variety of crops grown all over the country.
 - The availability of food grains even in adverse weather conditions or otherwise, has further been ensured with a carefully designed food security system by the government.
 - This system has two components:
 - Buffer stocks and
 - Public distribution system.



GEOGRAPHY

India – Size and Location

1

India has a long and a remarkable history. It is a country which has abundant natural resources. After independence, India has made tremendous progress in the fields of agriculture and technology. India is one of the oldest civilisations and have a remarkable history. After Independence from British rule, it achieved multi-faceted socio-economic progress. Also made a remarkable progress in the field of agriculture, industry, technology and overall economic development.

India – Location and Size



Map showing the location of India in the

- If you look at the above map, you would find that India lies to the north of the 0° latitude, i.e., Equator. She thus entirely lie in the northern hemisphere. Its mainland extends from latitude $8^{\circ}4'N$ to latitude $37^{\circ}6'N$. Its longitudinal extent is from $68^{\circ}7'E$ to $97^{\circ}25'E$.
- India also lies to the east of the 0° longitude, the Prime Meridian. She thus lies in the eastern hemisphere.
- India is divided into almost two equal parts by the Tropic of Cancer. It passes through eight Indian states—Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand, West Bengal, Tripura and Mizoram.
- India is a part of the Asian continent. It is the seventh largest country in the world and the third largest country in Asia.
- It has two main groups of islands—the Andaman and Nicobar Islands in the Bay of Bengal and the Lakshadweep Islands in the Arabian Sea.
- India occupies about 2.4% of the total geographical area of the world.
- The young fold Himalayan Mountains form the boundary of India in the northwest, north and northeast.
- India is a peninsula which tapers to the south dividing the Indian Ocean into the Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal.



- India has a vast longitudinal extent. There is a difference of two hours when one travels from Gujarat to Arunachal Pradesh.
- To maintain one standard time, the time along the Standard Meridian of India passing through Uttar Pradesh is taken as the standard time for the whole country.

Its Size

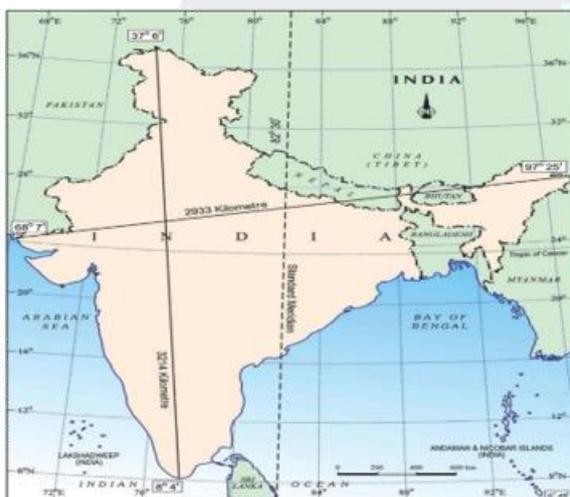
- Total Area of India is 3.28 million square km which is 2.4 percent of the total area of the world.
- It is seventh largest country in the world in terms of landmass.
- It has land boundary of about 15,200 km and the total length of the coast line of the mainland including Andaman and Nicobar and Lakshadweep islands is 7,516.6 km.
- In the northwest, north and north east of India, young folds mountains bounds it.
- South of about 22° north latitude, India narrows and finally extends towards the Indian Ocean. It also divides it into two seas, the Arabian Sea on the west and the Bay of Bengal on its east.
- The latitudinal and longitudinal extent of the mainland is about 30°.
- India's east-west extent appears to be smaller than the north-south extent.
- The time along the Standard Meridian (82°30' E) passing through Mirzapur in UP is taken as the Indian Standard Time for whole country.
- The time gap between Arunachal Pradesh present in the east and Gujarat present in the west is about 2 hours. The latitudinal extent influences the duration of day and night, as one moves from south to north.



The Tropic of Cancer passes through the middle of the country through eight Indian states. She thus experiences tropical type of climate.

India and the World

- India is almost located centrally between the east and the west of Asia. It lies in the southern part of the Asian continent.
- The oceanic routes which link Europe in the West with the East Asian countries give an important strategically central location to India which helped establish oceanic trade links with the other countries in the past.
- The Deccan Peninsula which extends into the Indian Ocean has helped India in maintaining close relations with Africa, West Asia and Europe from its western coast and East Asia and Southeast Asia from its eastern coast.
- The Indian Ocean is named after India because India occupies an important strategic position in the ocean.
- India had trade relations with other parts of the world through land routes which were used long before the oceanic routes were used.
- Its mountain passes provided land routes to various travellers during the ancient and mediaeval times.
- The land and sea routes made the existence of trade and cultural exchanges of India possible with the other countries. While the Indian decimal number system travelled far and wide, India was influenced by Greek architecture and sculpture during the ancient period and the West Asian style of architecture since the early mediaeval period.



Time along the Standard Meridian of India ($82^{\circ}30'$) passing through Mirzapur in Uttar Pradesh taken as

The Neighbours of India

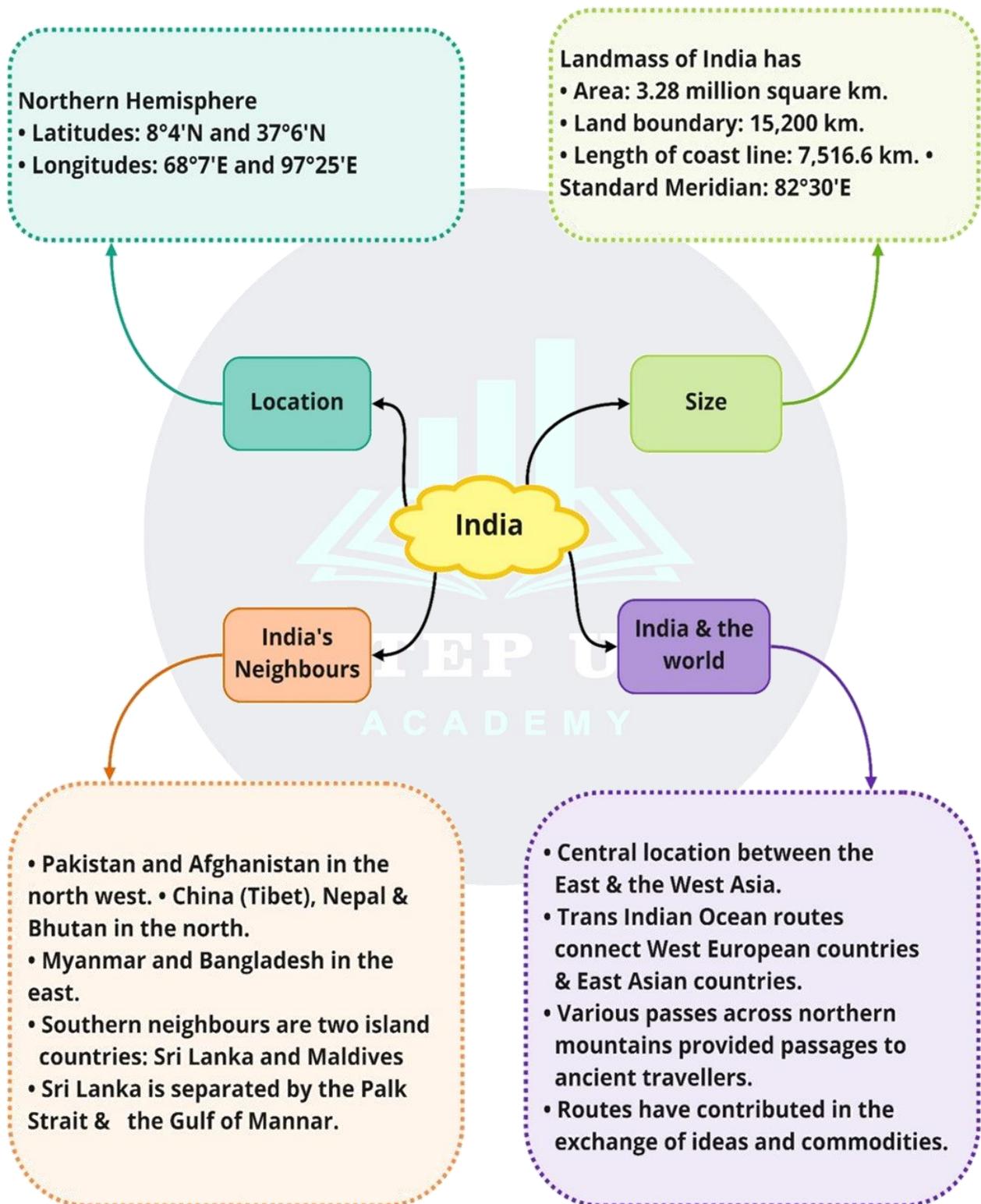
- India has 29 states and 7 Union Territories. Area wise, Rajasthan is the largest and Goa is the smallest state.
- India is strategically located in the south of Asia. It is divided into 29 states and seven union territories. While Rajasthan is the largest state, Goa is the smallest state.
- India shares its boundaries with Afghanistan and Pakistan in the northwest, China, Nepal and Bhutan in the north and Myanmar and Bangladesh in the east. In the south, Sri Lanka and Maldives are its neighbours. While Sri Lanka is separated from India by a narrow channel of sea formed by the Palk Strait and the Gulf of Mannar, the islands of Maldives are located to the south of the Lakshadweep Islands.



Political Map of India



Class : 9th Geography
Chapter-1 : India





Map showing India's neighbours



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

- The area of India is about-
 - 3.82 million sq. kilometres
 - 3.28 million sq. kilometres
 - 3.16 million sq. kilometres
 - 3.61 million sq. kilometres
- India has a land boundary of about-
 - 15,860 km.
 - 15,250 km.
 - 15,680 km.
 - 15,200 km.
- How much times is India bigger than France?
 - 6 times
 - 16 times
 - 4 times
 - 9 times
- Standard Meridian of India passes through-
 - Uttaranchal
 - Punjab
 - Mirzapur
 - Alipur
- India has Union Territories-
 - 28
 - 7
 - 6
 - 14
- ocean will have to be crossed by a ship going from Singapore to Mogadishu?
 - Indian Ocean
 - Pacific Ocean
 - Arctic Ocean
 - Antarctic Ocean
- Which of these countries is located towards the east of India?
 - Nepal
 - Sri Lanka
 - Bangladesh
 - China
- The longitudinal extent of India is km.
 - 3000
 - 3200
 - 3020
 - 3060
- The Tropic of Cancer does not pass through-
 - Rajasthan
 - Chhattisgarh
 - Orissa
 - Tripura
- The capital of Mizoram is-
 - Imphal
 - Kohima
 - Agartala
 - Aizwal
- The easternmost longitude of India is-
 - 97° 25' E
 - 68° 7' E
 - 77° 6' E
 - 82° 32' E
- Uttaranchal, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, West Bengal and Sikkim have common frontiers with-
 - China
 - Bhutan
 - Nepal
 - Myanmar
- If you intend to visit the Island Kavaratti during your Summer Vacations, which one of the following Union Territory of India will you be going to-
 - Pondicherry
 - Lakshadweep
 - Andaman and Nicobar
 - Diu and Daman
- My pen friend hails from a country which does not share land boundary with India, identify the country-
 - Bhutan
 - Tajikistan
 - Myanmar
 - Nepal



15. Which one of the following is the smallest state in Indian
- Sikkim
 - Tripura
 - Goa
 - Uttaranchal

Very Short Questions:

- In which hemisphere does India lie?
- What is the latitudinal extent of India?
- What is the longitudinal extent of India?
- Name the parallel of latitude which divides India roughly into two equal halves.
- Name the two seas located around India.
- What is the southernmost point of the Union of India?
- In which year did 'Indira Point' submerge under water due to tsunami?
- What is the total area of the Indian landmass?
- What is the size of India among the countries of the world?
- What is the total land frontier of India?

Short Questions:

- Write the size and extent of India.?
- Explain why $82^{\circ}30'$ E an odd value has been chosen as the standard meridian of India.
- Why is the difference between the durations of day and night hardly felt at Kanyakumari but not so in Kashmir?
- What is a subcontinent? Name the countries that constitute the Indian subcontinent. How is India different from other countries of Asia?
- Justify the naming of Indian Ocean after India.
- What do you know about India and her neighbours? [HOTS]
- India's land routes have been important since ancient times. Explain.

Long Questions:

- Why are Ahmedabad and Kolkata able to see the noon sun exactly overhead twice a year but not Delhi?
- India occupies an important strategic position in south Asia. Discuss. [HOTS]

- Describe how the geographical features of India have fostered unity and homogeneity in the Indian society.
- Locate and Label the Indian States and Capital on the outline map of India.
- On the political map given locate and label the following.
 - Tropic of cancer
 - Standard meridian with degrees.
 - Union Territories- Andaman and Nicobar, Lakshadweep, Chandigarh, Daman and Diu.

Assertion Reason Questions:

- In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) followed by a statement of Reason (R) is given. Choose the correct option out of the choices given below each question.

Assertion (A) : The Southernmost point of the Indian Union, 'Indira Point, got submerged under the sea water in 2004.

Reason (R) : In 2004 Indian Islands and coastal areas were hit by a huge Tsunami.

- Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- A is true, but R is false.
- A is false, but R is true.

- In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) followed by a statement of Reason (R) is given. Choose the correct option out of the choices given below each question.

Assertion (A) : India is bounded by young fold mountains in the North-West, North and North-East.

Reason (R) : The Himalayas lie on the Northern part of India.

- Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- A is true, but R is false.
- A is false, but R is true.

Case Study Based Question:

1. Read the source and answer the questions that follow.

India is a vast country. Lying entirely in the Northern Hemisphere the main land extends between latitudes $8^{\circ}4' N$ and $37^{\circ}6' N$ and longitudes $68^{\circ}7' E$ and $97^{\circ}25' E$. The Tropic of Cancer ($23^{\circ}30' N$) divides the country into almost two equal parts.

To the South-East and South-West of the mainland, lie the Andaman and Nicobar Islands and the Lakshadweep islands in Bay of Bengal and Arabian Sea respectively. The Southernmost point of the Indian Union- 'Indira Point' got submerged under the sea water in 2004 during the Tsunami.

The land mass of India has an area of 3.28 million square km. India's total area accounts for about 2.4 per cent of the total geographical area of the world.

India is the seventh largest country of the world.

- (1) What makes India unique in Asia?
- A) Its food
 - B) Its economy
 - C) Its location
 - D) Its culture
- (2) Why is the Tropic of Cancer significant for India?
- A) It is a plateau
 - B) It is the highest peak of the South India
 - C) It is a salt water lake
 - D) Due to this India's climate has characteristics of tropical as well as subtropical climates.
- (3) Indira Point is located in which islands group of India?
- A) The Lakshadweep islands group
 - B) The Aminidivi islands group
 - C) The Andaman and Nicobar islands group
 - D) None of the above

- (4) India comes after which country in terms of area?

- A) Russia
- B) China
- C) Canada
- D) All of these

2. Read the source and answer the questions that follow.

India has a land boundary of about 15,200 km and the total length of the coastline of the mainland, including Andaman and Nicobar and Lakshadweep, is 7,516.6 km. India is bounded by the young fold mountains in the North-West, North and North-East. South of about 22° North latitude, it begins to taper, and extends towards the Indian Ocean, dividing it into two seas, the Arabian Sea on the West and the Bay of Bengal on its East.

- (1) The length of Indian coastline, excluding the Andaman and Nicobar and the Lakshadweep islands group is

- A) 6100Km
- B) 7516.6Km
- C) 7000Km
- D) 5100Km

- (2) India is bounded by which of the following mountains in the North?

- A) The Javadi hills
- B) The Nilgiris
- C) The Himalayas
- D) None of these

- (3) The Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal are part of which of the following oceans?

- A) The Pacific ocean
- B) The Atlantic ocean
- C) The Antarctic ocean
- D) The Indian ocean

- (4) The Arabian Sea forms a part of the principal sea route between and

- A) India, Australia
- B) India, China
- C) India, Europe
- D) India, the USA



Answer Key

MCQ

- (b) 3.28 million sq. kilometres
- (d) 15,200 km.
- (a) 6 times
- (c) Mirzapur
- (b) 7
- (a) Indian Ocean
- (c) Bangladesh
- (a) 3000
- (c) Orissa
- (d) Aizwal
- (a) 97° 25' E
- (b) Bhutan
- (b) Andaman and Nicobar
- (b) Tajikistan
- (c) Goa

Very Short Answer:

- India lies in the Northern hemisphere.
- The latitudinal extent of India is between 8°4' N (southernmost) and 37°6' N (northernmost) latitude.
- The longitudinal extent of India is 68°7' E (westernmost) to 97°25' E (easternmost) longitude.
- The parallel of latitude which roughly divide India into two equal halves is the Tropic of Cancer (23° 30' N).
- The two seas located around India are the Arabian Sea in the west and the Bay of Bengal in the east.
- Southernmost point of the Union of India is Indira Point.
- In 2004 'Indira Point' got submerged under the sea water.
- The landmass of India has an area of 3.28 million square km. It is 2.4% of the total area of the world.
- India is the seventh largest country in the world.
- The total land frontier of India is 15,200 km.

Short Answer:

Ans: 1.

- India is the 7th largest country in the world. It has an area of 3.28 million square km. It accounts for 2.4% of the world's total area.
- India has a land frontier of 15,200 km.
- India has a coastline of 7516.6 km including the Andaman and Nicobar islands and the Lakshadweep islands.

Ans: 2. The odd value has been chosen as the standard meridian because the longitudinal extent of India is 68°7' E to 97°25' E and this meridian passes through the centre of India.

It passes through Mirzapur i.e. the centre of India. Then there is an understanding among the countries of the world that the degrees of the meridian should be divisible by 712 i.e. 82° 30' E. This

enables us to overcome the difference of 2 hours of time between Arunachal Pradesh and Gujarat. The time is Indian Standard Time.

Ans: 3. The difference in the durations of day and night and Kanyakumari and Kashmir are respectively due to their latitudinal locations. Kanyakumari is located closer to the equator and experiences a maximum difference of 45 minutes between day and night. However, Kashmir lies further away from the equator and experience a significant gap between the duration of day and night that can extend to as much as 3-5 hours.

Ans: 4. A subcontinent is a distinctive geographical unit which stands out distinctively from rest of the region because of its large size, varied climates, varied relief etc.

Countries that make up the Indian subcontinent are – India at the centre, Pakistan in the west, Nepal and China (Tibet) in the north, Bhutan and Bangladesh in the east.

India is different from other countries of Asia regarding climate, vegetation and culture.

Ans: 5. India ocean is named after India because:

- (a) India has a long coastline on the Indian Ocean.
- (b) India has a central location between east and west Asia.
- (c) India's southernmost extension, the Deccan Peninsula, protrudes into the Indian Ocean which makes it significant to international trade done through the Indian Ocean.
- (d) India was the favorite destination of the traders of the world.

Ans: 6.

- (a) India occupies an important strategic position in south-east Asia. India has 29 states, 6 Union Territories and one National Capital Territory.
- (b) India shares her land borders with Pakistan and Afghanistan in the north-west, China (Tibet), Nepal and Bhutan in the north, and Myanmar and Bangladesh in the east. Our southern neighbours across the sea consists of two island countries i.e. Sri Lanka and Maldives.
- (c) Sri Lanka is separated from India by Palk Strait and Gulf of Mannar while Maldives islands are situated to the south of the Lakshadweep islands.

Ans: 7.

- (a) India's contacts with the outside world have continued through the ages, but her relationships through the land routes are much older than her maritime contacts.
- (b) The various passes across the mountains in the north have provided passages to the ancient travellers. These routes (Kyber and Bolan pass) across the mountains have contributed in the exchange of ideas and commodities since ancient times.
- (c) The ideas of Upanishads and the Ramayana, the stories of Panchatantra, the Indian numerals, the decimal system could reach many parts of the world through the land routes. The spices and muslin cloth along with other commodities were taken from India to other countries. The Greek sculpture and the architectural style of

dome and minarets from west Asia can be seen in many parts of our country. This is the result of the exchange of commodities and ideas movement of people.

Long Answer:

Ans: 1. The sun's apparent movement towards north and south of the equator is within two tropics.

- (a) All the places located within the tropics have overhead sun twice a year.
- (b) Both Ahmedabad and Kolkata lie to the south of the Tropic of Cancer. That is why these two stations see the noon sun overhead twice a year.
- (c) Delhi is located at 29°N latitude much to the north of Tropic of Cancer.
- (d) The sun's rays are near overhead in sub-tropical zone. It will never see noon sun overhead, at anytime of the year.

Ans: 2.

- (a) The Indian landmass has a central location between the east and the west Asia. India is a southward extension of the Asian continent.
- (b) The trans Indian Ocean routes which connect the countries of Europe in the west and the countries of east Asia provide a strategic central location to India.
- (c) The part that is attached to the Asian continent connects India through the land routes and mountain passes to the various countries lying to its north, west and east.
- (d) The Deccan Peninsula protrudes into the Indian Ocean, thus helping India to establish close contact with west Asia, Africa and Europe from the western coast and southeast and east Asia from the eastern coast.

Ans: 3. India has a distinct physical and cultural identity: India's unity and homogeneity have been enabled by its physical diversity i.e., physical features.

- (a) The lofty mountains in the north which run east-west for thousands of kilometres. They provide a natural wall against all possible intrusions. It gives India an intact structure.



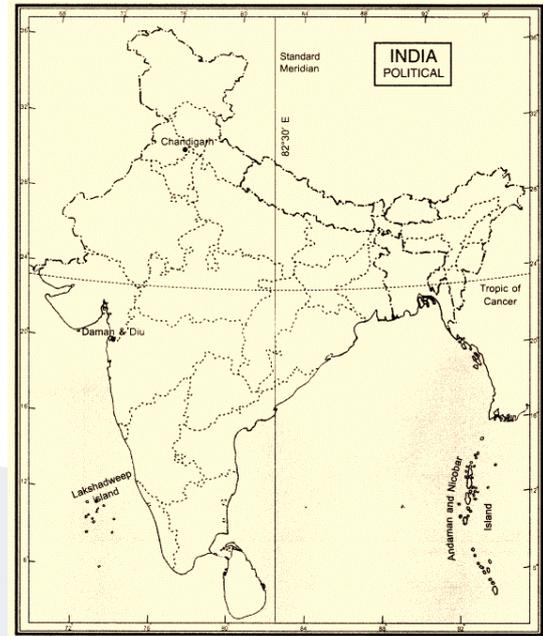
- (b) The southern part of India is surrounded by the seas and oceans on the sides. These physical features have also ensured that the people from outside could enter India only through well defended routes through sea or passes in the mountains.
- (c) Standard meridian 82°30" has been taken as local time all over India providing uniformity.
- (d) Rivers and their tributaries provide irrigation facility throughout the country bring uniform development.
- (e) Monsoons foster unity. Many festivals are associated with it. Apart from that agricultural and domestic needs are also met by monsoons.

Thus, by adopting new norms and values and accepting as their own, unity and homogeneity of India has been promoted.

Ans: 4.



Ans: 5



Assertion Reason Answer:

1. A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
2. A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

Case Study Answer:

1. **Answer:**
 - (1) C) Its location
 - (2) D) Due to this India's climate has characteristics of tropical as well as subtropical climates.
 - (3) C) The Andaman and Nicobar islands group
 - (4) D) All of these
2. **Answer:**
 - (1) A) 6100Km
 - (2) C) The Himalayas
 - (3) D) The Indian ocean
 - (4) C) India, Europe



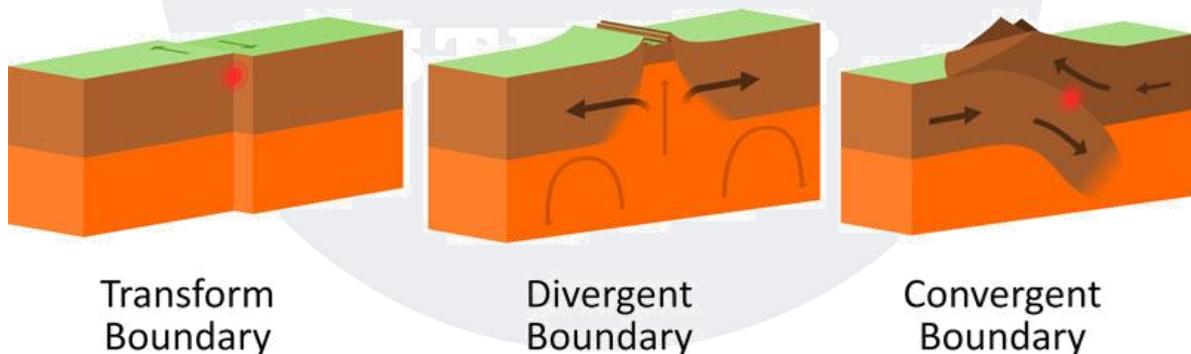
Physical Features of India

2

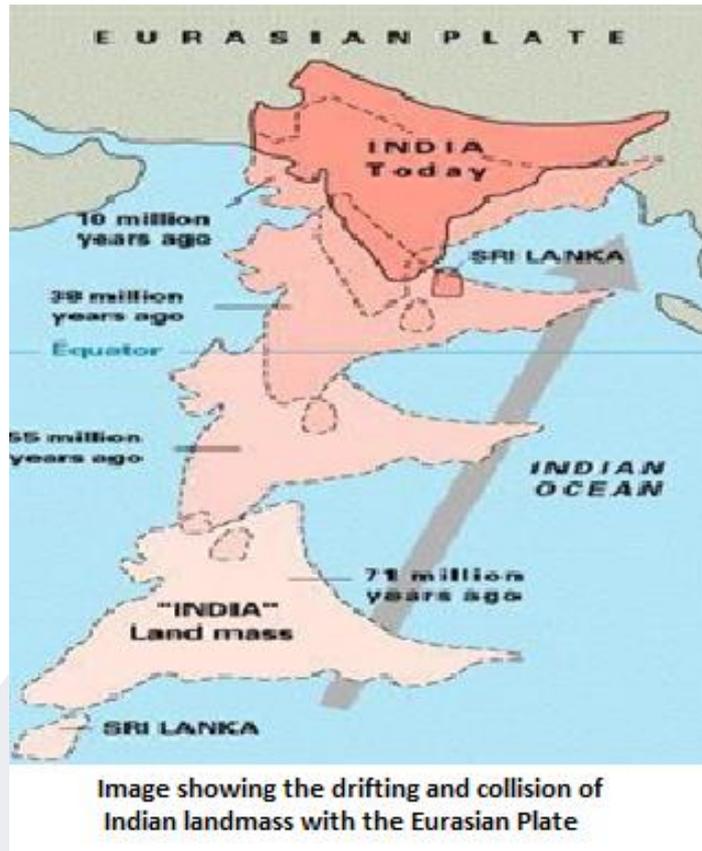
We find various types of landform features in India because its geographical extent is very vast. While the eastern part of our country is uneven, rugged, and hilly, the Ganga– Brahmaputra region has vast stretches of plain lands.

Formation of the Land Forms

- Several factors such as the presence of different types of rocks, geological formations, weathering, erosion and deposition have influenced and affected the land features of India.
- Geologists have forwarded various theories regarding the formation of the physical features of the Earth.
- One of the most probable theories is the ‘Theory of Plate Tectonics’. This theory postulates that the crust of the Earth has been formed out of seven major and some minor plates.
- The movement of the plates beneath the surface of the Earth creates tension, resulting in folding, faulting and volcanic activities.
- Plate movements are broadly categorised into three different types. When the plates come towards each other, they form **convergent boundaries**. When the plates move away from each other, they form **divergent boundaries**. **Transform boundaries** are formed when the plates horizontally move past each other.



- All these movements of the plates have gradually changed the size and the position of the continents over millions of years.
- The peninsular part of India, the oldest landmass, was part of the **Gondwanaland**. Previously, the Gondwanaland included Africa, South America, Australia, Antarctica, and India. It was one single landmass.
- Because of the impact of convectional currents, the crust was split into many pieces. The Indo–Australian plate got separated from the Gondwanaland and drifted towards the north.
- As it drifted towards the north, it collided with the Eurasian plate. As a result of this collision, the sedimentary rocks which were settled in the large-scale depression in the Earth’s crust called Tethys were folded and formed the mountain system of western Asia and the Himalayas.



- The upliftment of the mountains out of the Tethys Sea and the sinking of the northern part of the peninsular plateau led to the formation of a large basin.
- When the rivers flowed from the mountains in the north to the peninsular plateau in the south, the depression was filled because of depositional activities of the rivers. This led to the formation of the northern plains of India which gradually became rich in alluvial deposits.
- While the peninsular plateau of India composed of igneous and metamorphic rocks is one of the ancient landmasses on the surface of the Earth, the Himalayan Mountains are young fold mountains. They have high peaks, deep valleys with fast-flowing rivers.

Major Physiographical Divisions of India

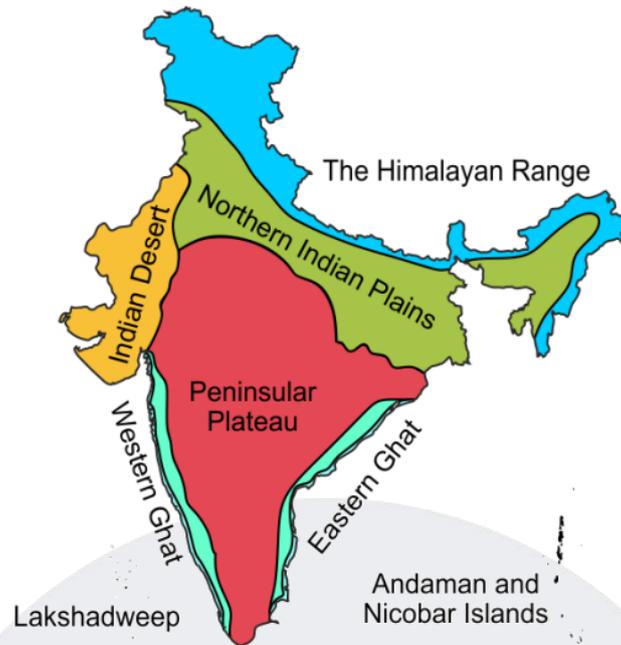
The major physiographical divisions of India are

- The Himalayan Mountains
- The Northern Plains
- The Peninsular Plateau
- The Indian Desert
- The Coastal Plains
- The Islands

The Himalayan Mountains

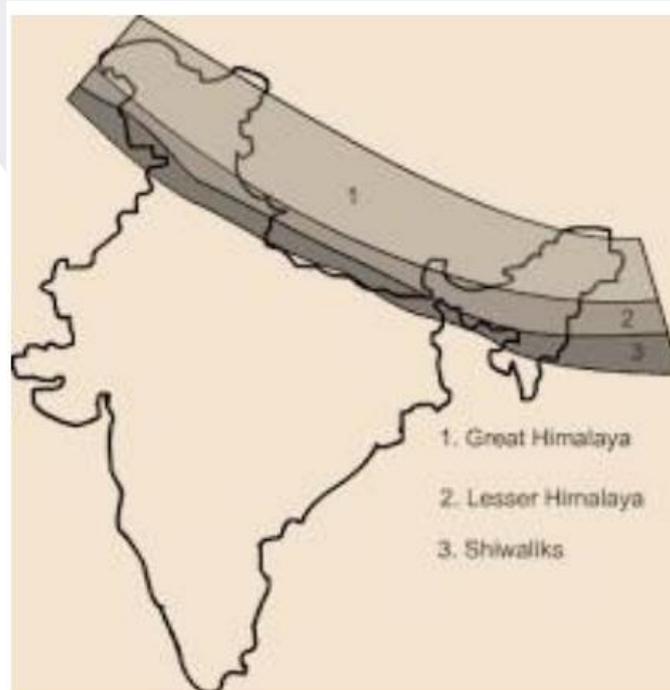
The Himalayan Mountains are young fold mountains which run in the west to east direction. They run over about 2,400 km.

- The width of the mountains varies from 2,400km in Kashmir to 150km in Arunachal Pradesh.
- The Himalayas are divided into three parallel ranges. They are:



Map showing the major physiographic divisions of india

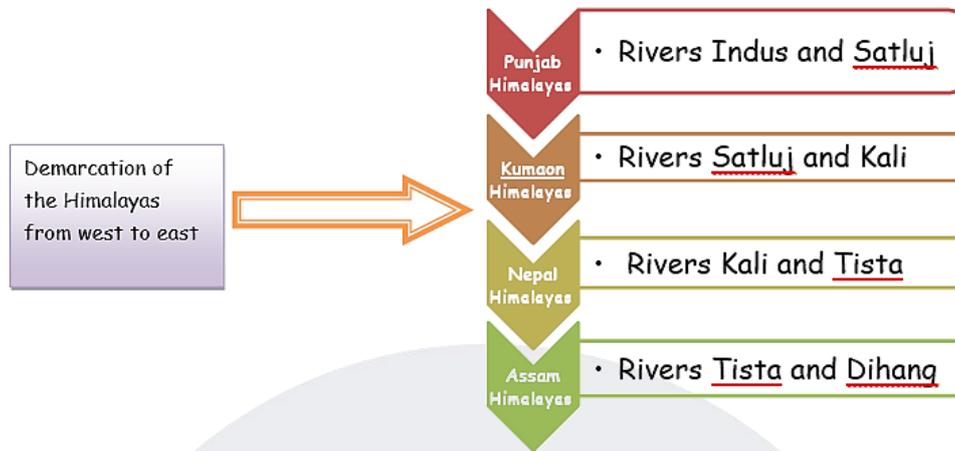
- **The Himadri:** It is the northernmost range of the Himalayas. This range is also known as the Great or the Inner Himalayas. This range has some of the highest peaks with an average height of 6,000 meters. The core part of this Himalayan range is made of granite. As it is always covered with snow, many glaciers originate in this range.
- **The Himachal:** It is also known as Himachal or the lesser Himalayas. This range lies to the south of the Himadri. The height of this mountain range varies from 3,700 to 4,500 meters. The Pir Panjal Range is the longest range. The Mahabharat and Dhauladhar ranges are also important ranges. This range has the famous valleys of Kashmir, Kangra and Kullu located in Himachal Pradesh. All the famous hill stations such as Mussoorie, Shimla, Nainital and Manali are located in the Himachal range.



The Himalayas are divided into three parallel ranges



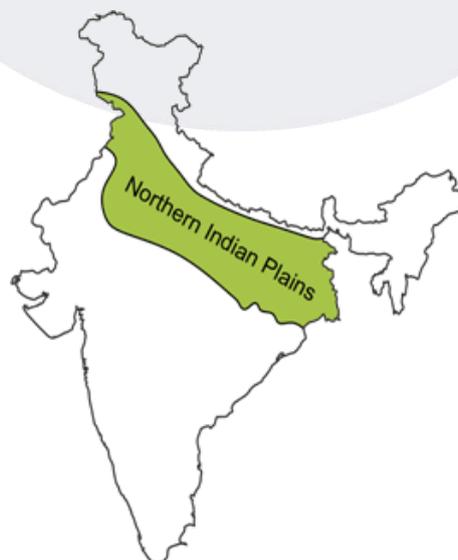
- **The Siwaliks:** These are the outermost range of the Himalayas. Their altitude varies between 900 and 1100 meters. The Siwaliks are formed as a result of depositions brought down by rivers from the northernmost Himalayan range. Dehradun, Kotli Dun and Patil Dun are some longitudinal valleys which lie between the lesser Himalayas and the Siwaliks.



The Himalayas spread in the eastern most parts of the country form the Purvanchal Range. It is mostly composed of sedimentary rocks. The Purvanchal Range comprises the Patkai Hills, Naga Hills, Manipur Hills and Mizo Hills.

The Northern Indian Plains

- The northern plains have been formed by three major river systems—the Indus, the Ganga and the Brahmaputra. This plain has been formed of alluvial soil.
- The Northern Plains are divided into three parts. The western part of the Northern Plains is known as the **Punjab Plains**. The larger part of this plain lies in Pakistan. It is drained by the river Indus, and its tributaries are the Ravi, Beas, Sutlej, Jhelum and Chenab.
- The **Ganga Plain** is spread over the states of Haryana, Delhi, UP, Bihar and some parts of Jharkhand and West Bengal. Assam is part of the **Brahmaputra plains**.
- The Northern Plains present various relief features. They can be divided into four regions based on the variations in relief features:
- When rivers come down from the mountains, they deposit pebbles in a narrow belt lying parallel to the Siwaliks. This is called the **Bhabar belt**. All rivers disappear into this belt.



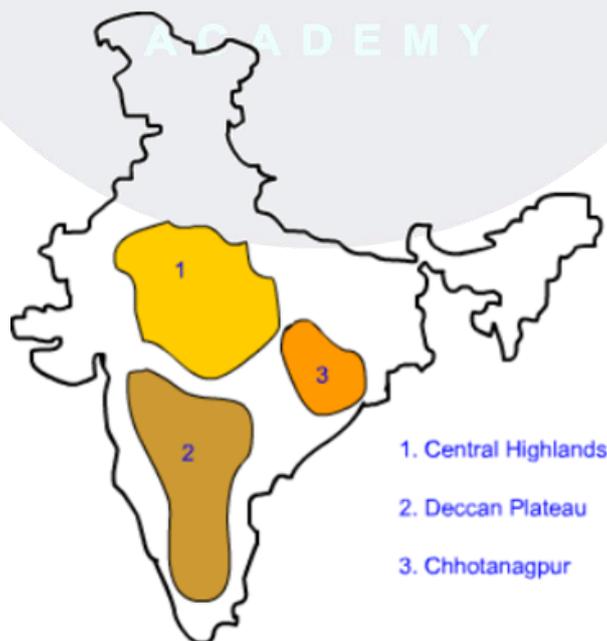
Map showing the Northern Indian Plains

- To the south of the belt, the rivers and streams appear again and create the **Terai** region, which is wet, swampy and marshy. It was once a thickly forested region. But the forests have been cleared to expand agricultural lands.
- A large part of the Northern Plains is formed of the older alluvial soil and presents a terrace- like feature. This is known as **bhangar**. Its soil consists of granules known as 'kankar'.
- The newer deposits are known as 'khadar'. These are so fertile that intensive cultivation is practiced here.

Khadar Soil	Bangar Soil
New alluvial soil found near the rivers	Old alluvial soil located away from rivers
It is renewed every year	It is not renewed every year
It has fine particles	It has high concentration of 'kankar' nodules
It is extremely fertile	It is less fertile than the 'khadar' soil

The Peninsular Plateau

- The Peninsular Plateau of India is made of igneous and metamorphic rocks. The plateau is divided into two main divisions—the Central Highlands and the Deccan Plateau.
- The portion of the Peninsular Plateau which is located to the north of the river Narmada covering a huge part of the Malwa Plateau is known as the Central Highlands.
- To the northwest of the Central Highlands lies the Aravalli Range and to the south lies the Vindhya's Range.
- The east extension of the Central Highlands is known as the Bundelkhand and Baghelkhand.
- The Chota Nagpur Plateau on further east of the Central Highlands is drained by the river Damodar.
- To the south of River Narmada lies the Deccan Plateau. It is higher towards the west and slopes down gently in the east.
- The Western Ghats mark the western edge and the Eastern Ghats mark the eastern edge of the Deccan Plateau. The Western Ghats are higher than the Eastern Ghats. The latter extends up to Nigiri Hills in the south.
- The highest peaks of the Western Ghats are the Anai Mudi (or Anamudi) and Doddabetta. Mahendragiri is the highest peak of the Eastern Ghats.



The plateau is divided into two main divisions—the Central Highlands and the Deccan Plateau.



The Deccan Traps of the Deccan Plateau are made of black soil which is suitable for cotton cultivation.

The differences between the Western Ghats and the Eastern Ghats are

The Western Ghats	The Eastern Ghats
The Western Ghats lie on the western margin of the Deccan Plateau.	The Eastern Ghats lie on the eastern margin of the Deccan Plateau.
The Western Ghats are higher in elevation. Their average elevation is from 900 to 1600 metres.	The Eastern Ghats are lower in elevation. Their average elevation is 600 metres.
They have a continuous chain of mountains and can be crossed through passes only.	The mountain chains are not continuous and are denuded by the rivers which flow into the Bay of Bengal.
No major river has cut across them.	They have been cut across by major rivers such as Godavari, Mahanadi, Krishna and Kaveri.

The Indian Desert

- The Great Indian Desert or the Thar Desert is located in western Rajasthan.
- It is a sandy plain receiving an annual rainfall as low as 150 mm. The vegetation cover in the region is extremely scarce.
- Some small streams appear during the rainy season, but they quickly disappear into the sand.
- Luni is the only large river in this region.
- Barchan, or crescent-shaped dunes, are a prominent feature of the desert.

The Coastal Plains

- India has a long coastline. The western coast is located between the Western Ghats and the Arabian Sea. It can be categorised into three sections:
 - **Konkan** (Mumbai–Goa): It is the northern part of the western coast.
 - **Kannad Plain**: It is the central part of the western coast.
 - **Malabar Coast**: The southern stretch of the western coast is known as the Malabar Coast.
- Along the Bay of Bengal, the plains are wide and levelled. While the northern part is known as the Northern Circars, the southern part is known as the Coromandel Coast.
- Mahanadi, Krishna, Godavari and Kaveri are some rivers which form their deltas on this coast.
- Lake Chilika is an important lake located in the eastern coast.

The Islands

- India has two groups of islands. Lakshadweep Islands are located in the Arabian Sea close to the Malabar Coast of Kerala.
- These are a small group of coral islands. Kavaratti Island is the administrative capital of Lakshadweep. The Pitli Island is uninhabited and has a bird sanctuary.
- Most of the islands in Lakshadweep are composed of small corals. Coral polyps are micro organisms which live in shallow, mud free and warm waters. They secrete calcium carbonate which together with the skeletons of the corals form coral deposits in the form of three main reefs: Barrier reef, Fringing Reefs and Atolls.

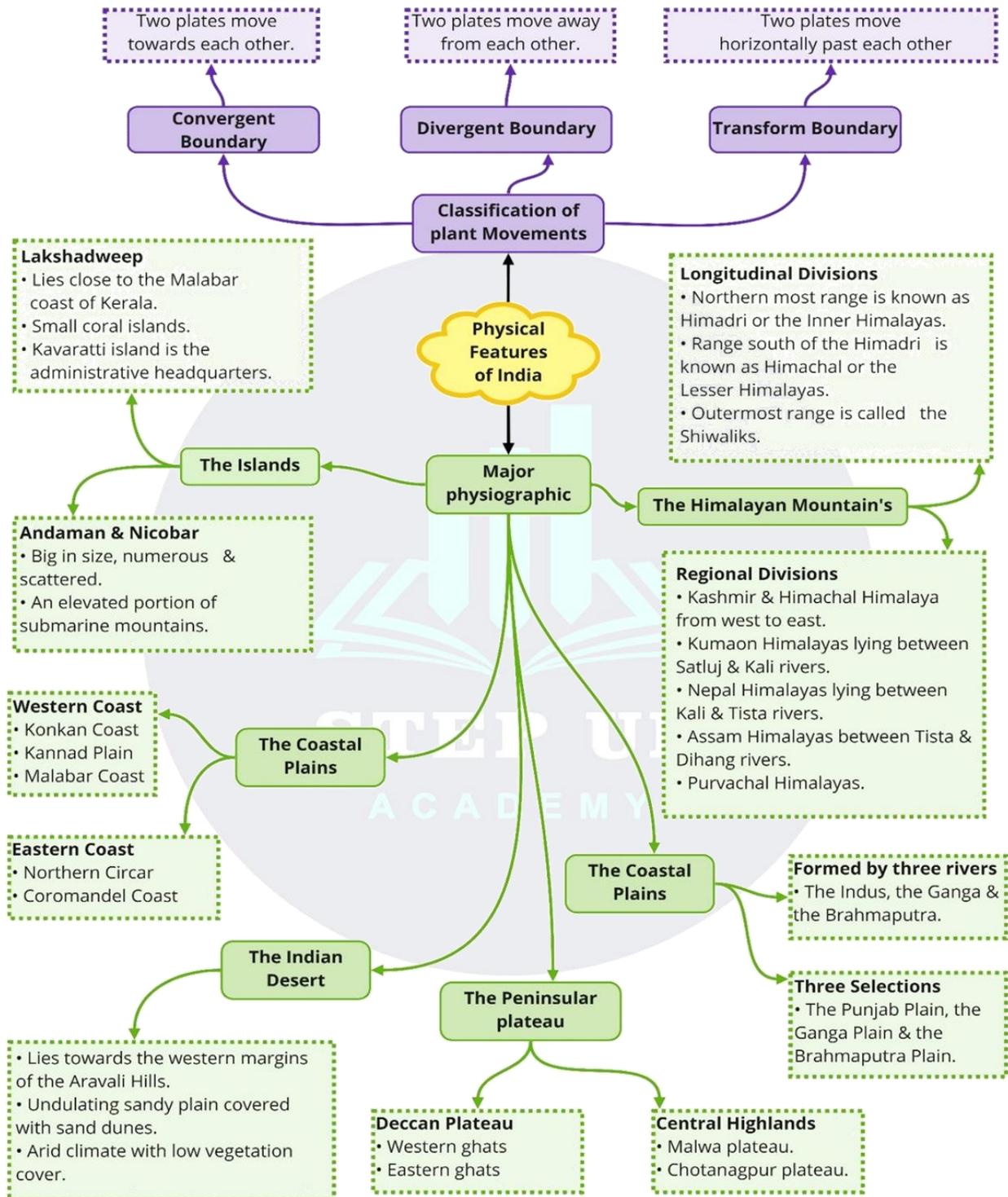
- The Great Barrier Reef of Australia is a good example of the barrier reefs.
- The Andaman and Nicobar Islands are located in the Bay of Bengal and are the portion of elevated submarine mountains. They are bigger in size and are more numerous and scattered.
- India's only active volcano is found on Barren Island in Andaman and Nicobar group of Islands.
- Because these islands lie close to the Equator, the climate remains hot and wet throughout the year and the islands have dense forests.



Figure showing barrier reef



Class : 9th Geography
Chapter-2 : Physical Features of India



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

- Lakshadweep Islands are a group of Islands.
(a) 36
(b) 32
(c) 39
(d) 38
- Mountain ranges in the eastern part of India forming its boundary with Myanmar are collectively called-
(a) Himachal
(b) Purvanchal
(c) Uttaranchal
(d) None of the above
- The western Coastal strip, south of Goa is referred to as-
(a) Coromandel
(b) Malabar
(c) Konkan
(d) Northern Circar
- Shipkila, Bhor, Nathula and Pal are-
(a) Peaks
(b) Passes
(c) Ranges
(d) None of the above
- Guru Shikhar is the highest peak of the-
(a) Aravallis
(b) Vindhya
(c) Satpura
(d) Western Himalayas
- Northern Plains are composed of
(a) Black Soil
(b) Kankar
(c) Alluvium
(d) Igneous rocks
- lies between Mahanadi and Krishna.
(a) Godavari
(b) Kaveri
(c) Tapti
(d) Kosi
- Gulf of Khambat lies in the
(a) Indian Ocean
(b) Bay of Bengal
(c) Arabian Sea
(d) None of the above
- range is between the Narmada and the Tapti rivers.
(a) Satpura
(b) Ajanta
(c) Vindhya
(d) Aravalli
- The peaks of 'Himadri' range have an average height of metres.
(a) 3,000
(b) 6,000
(c) 5,000
(d) 8,000
- The average width of the Himadri range is km.
(a) 40
(b) 30
(c) 30
(d) 60
- The minimum height of the Shiwaliks is metres.
(a) 800
(b) 1,100
(c) 700
(d) 900
- The maximum height of the 'Himadri' range is metres.
(a) 3,700
(b) 4,500
(c) 3,900
(d) 4,200
- The northern plain is about to km broad.
(a) 240 to 320
(b) 260 to 320
(c) 230 to 340
(d) 240 to 360



15. The plains of India are very fertile and densely populated.
- Southern
 - Northern
 - Western
 - Eastern

Very Short Questions:

- Physical Features of India
- Give the reason for variation of soil colour at different places.
- Name the processes which have created and modified the relief to its present state.
- What is the Theory of Plate Tectonics?
- What happens when two tectonic plates collide with each other?
- Which are the three types of plate boundaries/movements? [HOTS]
- Mention any six tectonic plates of the earth's crust.
- What is the implication of plate movements?
- Where do most of volcanoes and earthquakes happen?
- Name the oldest part of the Indian landmass.

Short Questions:

- What are the three types of plate movements on the earth?
- Give a brief description of the Himalayan mountains.
- Explain in brief the famous passes of the Himalayas.
- List some major Mountain Peaks of the Himalayas.
- Give an account of the four divisions of Himalayas from west to east along with Purvachal hills.
- Mention divisions of Northern Plains marked by rivers.
- Write some important features of Ganga Plains.

Long Questions:

- Describe the three parallel ranges of the Himalayas.
- Mention the significance of Himalayas. [HOTS]
- Classify the Northern plains on the basis of the variations in the relief features.

- Mention the significance of Northern Plains of India.
- How do the physical divisions of India complement each other?

Assertion Reason Questions:

- In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) followed by a statement of Reason (R) is given. Choose the correct option out of the choices given below each question.

Assertion (A) : Purvanchal is located on the Eastern Part of India.

Reason (R) : It is a submountain range of the Himalayas in the North-East India.

- Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- A is true, but R is false.
- A is false, but R is true.

- In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) followed by a statement of Reason (R) is given. Choose the correct option out of the choices given below each question.

Assertion (A) : The Northern plains are agriculturally very productive part of India.

Reason (R) : The Northern plains have fertile soil cover, adequate water supply, favourable climate and terrain.

- Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- A is true, but R is false.
- A is false, but R is true.

Case Study Based Question:

- Read the source and answer the following questions.

The Himalayas, geologically young and structurally fold mountains stretch over the Northern borders of India. These mountain ranges run in a West-East direction from the Indus to the Brahmaputra. The Himalayas represent the loftiest and one of the most rugged mountains barriers of the world. They form an arc, which covers a distance of about 2400 km.

Their width varies from 400 km in Kashmir to 150 km in Arunachal Pradesh. The altitudinal variations are greater in the Eastern half than those in the Western half. The Himalayas consists of three parallel ranges in its longitudinal extent. A number of valleys lie between these ranges. The Northern-most range is known as the Great or Inner Himalayas or the Himadri. It is the most continuous range consisting of the loftiest peaks with an average height of 6,000 metres. It contains all prominent Himalayan peaks.

- (1) Which of the following is the unstable landmass of India?
 - A) The Peninsular Plateau
 - B) The Great Indian Desert
 - C) The Himalayas
 - D) None of the above
- (2) Which of the following is the source of the Ganges river?
 - A) The Peninsular Plateau
 - B) The Western Ghats
 - C) The Himalayas
 - D) The Eastern Ghats
- (3) Path Dun is a part of..... range of the Himalayas.
 - A) Himachal
 - B) Himadri
 - C) Purvanchal
 - D) Shiwalik
- (4) Why are the Himalayas considered as a youthful topography?
 - A) The Himalayas have high mountain peaks.
 - B) The Himalayas have deep valleys.
 - C) The Himalayas have fast flowing rivers.
 - D) All of the above

2. Read the source and answer the following questions.

The Northern Plain is broadly divided into three sections. The Western part of the Northern Plain is referred to as the Punjab Plains. Formed by the Indus and its tributaries, the larger part of this plain lies in Pakistan. The Indus and its tributaries - the Jhelum, the Chenab, the Ravi, the Beas and the Satluj originate in the Himalaya. This section of the plain is dominated by the doabs. Doab' is made up of two words - 'do' meaning two and 'ab' meaning water. Similarly

'Punjab' is also made up two words - 'Punj' meaning five and 'ab' meaning water.

The Ganga plain extends between Ghaggar and Teesta rivers. It is spread over the states of North India, Haryana, Delhi, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, partly Jharkhand and West Bengal to its East, particularly in Assam lies the Brahmaputra plain. The Northern plains are generally described as flat land with no variations in its relief. It is not true. There vast plains also have diverse relief features. According to the variations in relief features, the Northern plains can be divided into four regions. The rivers, after descending from the mountains deposit pebbles in a narrow belt of about 8 to 16 km in width lying parallel to the slopes of the Shiwaliks. It is known as bhabar. All the streams disappear in this bhabar belt. South of this belt, the streams and rivers re-emerge and create a wet, swampy and marshy region known as Terai. This was a thickly forested region full of wildlife. The forests have been cleared to create agricultural land and to settle migrants from Pakistan after partition.

- (1) The fertility of the Northern plain is the result of:
 - A) Action of glaciers
 - B) Adequate rainfall
 - C) Its level land
 - D) Depositional work of the rivers
- (2) Which of the landmass of India is densely populated?
 - A) The Himalayas
 - B) The Peninsular Plateau
 - C) The Northern Plains
 - D) None of the above
- (3) Find the incorrect option.
 - A) Western part of Northern plain-Punjab plain
 - B) Punjab plain-Deals
 - C) Jhelum river-Tributary of Ganga river
 - D) Ganga plain-Between Ghaggar and Taesta rivers
- (4) Why is rivers disappear in the bhabar belt?
 - A) It is thickly forested land
 - B) It is a porous region due to deposition of huge number of pebbles and rock debris.
 - C) It is a swampy region.
 - D) None of the above



Answer Key

MCQ:

1. (a) 36
2. (b) Purvanchal
3. (c) Konkan
4. (b) Passes
5. (c) Satpura
6. (b) Kankar
7. (a) Godavari
8. (c) Arabian Sea
9. (a) Satpura
10. (c) 5,000
11. (a) 40
12. (b) 1,100
13. (b) 4,500
14. (d) 240 to 360
15. (b) Northern

Very Short Answer:

1. Hard rock like marble has been used for making the Taj Mahal and soft rock like soap stone is used for making talcum powder.
2. The reason for variation of soil colour is that the soil is formed out of different types of rocks.
3. The processes are weathering, erosion and deposition.
4. The Theory of Plate Tectonics states that the earth's crust has been formed out of seven major and some minor plates. The movement of these plates results in folding, faulting and volcanic activity.
5. When two plates collide with each other, it can lead to folding, faulting and volcanic activity.
6. The three types of plate boundaries includes convergent, divergent and transform boundary.
7. The six tectonic plates of the earth's crust are Eurasian plate, North American plate, South American plate, African plate, Indo-Australian plate and Pacific and Antarctic plate.
8. The plate movements have changed the size and position of the continents over million years. These movements have also influenced the evolution of present landforms.

9. Most of them are happened at plate margins but some also occur within the plates.
10. The peninsular plateau is the oldest landmass of India.

Short Answer:

1. The three types of plate movements are the following.
 - (a) **Converging Boundary:** When the plates come towards each other, they form convergent boundaries. 'The plates collide, crumble or even slide under the other. It may also be known as folding movements. For example, Himalayas mountains were formed by convergence of IndoAustralian plate against Eurasian plate.
 - (b) **Divergent Boundary:** These are formed when the plates move away from each other, they form divergent boundary. They are also called faulting movements. For example, the North American Plate diverge from the Eurasian Plate.
 - (c) **Transform Boundary:** When some plates move past each other form transform boundary, i e.g. San Andreas fault. The western half of California is moving north because it is part of the Pacific Plate and Eastern half of California is moving south because it is part of North America.
2. The three types of plate movements are the following.
 - (a) **Converging Boundary:** **When the plates come** towards each other, they form convergent boundaries. 'The plates collide, crumble or even slide under the other. It may also be known as folding movements. For example, Himalayas mountains were formed by convergence of IndoAustralian plate against Eurasian plate.
 - (b) **Divergent Boundary:** These are formed when the plates move away from each other, they form divergent boundary. They are also called faulting movements. For example, the North American Plate diverge from the Eurasian Plate.

- (c) **Transform Boundary:** When some plates move past each other form transform boundary, i e.g. San Andreas fault. The western half of California is moving north because it is part of the Pacific Plate and Eastern half of California is moving south because it is part of North America.
3. A pass is a natural pathway in between high mountains. The Himalayan mountains are so formidable that it is not possible to cross them. There are some passes in the Himalayas which provide route-way across them. Some of the important passes are:
- Shipki La located in Satluj valley in Himachal Pradesh along Tibet border.
 - Lipu Lekh pass near Tibet border in Uttarakhand providing route to Mt. Kailash and Mansarowar in Tibet.
 - In the east, there is Nathu La pass in Sikkim and China border providing passage from India to Lhasa and Bomdi la pass La Arunachal-China border.
4. The Greater Himalayas or Himadri has the tallest peaks of the world. Many peaks are more than 8000 metres above sea level and remain snow bound throughout the year. Some of them are as follows:
- Mount Everest or Sagarmatha is 8848 m high located in Nepal is the world's highest peak.
 - Kanchenjunga (8598 m) is the second highest peak in the Himalayas. It is in Sikkim in India.
 - Nanga Parbat (8126 m) lies in Kashmir and Nanda Devi (7817 m) in Uttarakhand are the other two peaks.
 - Namcha Barwa (7756 m) an important peak on the border of Arunachal Pradesh and Tibet.
5. The four divisions of Himalayas from west to east are:
- Punjab Himalayas:** They lie between Indus and Satluj rivers. They are also known locally as Kashmir and Himachal Himalayas from west to east.
 - Kumaon Himalayas:** These Himalayas lie between Satluj and Kali rivers.
 - Nepal Himalayas:** These Himalayas lie between Kali and Tista rivers.
 - Assam Himalayas:** These Himalayas lie between Tista and Dihang rivers.
- Purvachal Hills:** These are the north-eastern extension of Himalayas. Beyond the Dihang gorge, the Himalayas bend sharply to the South and spread along the north-eastern boundary of India.
- They are mainly composed of strong sandstones. The important hills are the Patkai, the Naga, the Manipur and the Mizo hills.
6. The Northern Plains of India are fertile alluvial plains. The division of Northern plains marked by river are:
- Indus Plains:** Indus plain formed by River Indus and its tributaries e.g. Jhelum, Chenab, Ravi, Beas and Satluj.
 - Ganga Plains:** The plain formed by River Ganga and its tributaries such as Yamuna, Ghaghara, Gandak, Kosi etc. It extends between Ghaggar and Teesta rivers. It covers the states of Haryana, Delhi, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Jharkhand and West Bengal.
 - Brahmaputra Plains:** The plains lies in the east mainly in Assam. These are very narrow plains drained by Brahmaputra and its tributaries
7. Some important features of Ganga Plains are:
- The Ganga Plain lies in Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Haryana, Delhi and West Bengal. The deltaic part of the plain is in West Bengal and Bangladesh. This part of the plain is formed by Ganga and its Himalayan tributaries (Yamuna, Ghaghara, Gandak) and Peninsular tributaries (Chambal, Betwa, Ken and Son).
 - The plain slopes towards east and southeast and also has high fertile soils.
 - These plains extended between Ghaggar and Teesta rivers.

Long Answer:

1. The three parallel ranges of the Himalayas are:
- Himadri (Greater or Inner Himalayas):** It is the most continuous range of the Himalayas. It has loftiest peaks with an average height of 6000 metres. For example, Mount Everest 8848 metres, Kanchenjunga 8598 metres. The folds of this part are asymmetrical in nature. It is perennially snow bound and gives rise to a number of



perennial rivers e.g. Ganga rises from Gangotri glacier.

(b) **Himachal (Lesser Himalayas):** These ranges lie south of Himadri and forms the most rugged ranges. These ranges are mainly composed of highly compressed and altered rocks. The average height of the lesser Himalayas is between 3700 and 4500 metres. The important ranges are the Pir Panjal, the Dhauladhar and the Mahabharat. This range consists of the famous valley of Kashmir, the Kangra and the Kullu Valley. This range is also famous for its hill stations like Mussoorie, Nainital, Ranikhet, Shimla. This range is also famous for its fruit orchards.

(c) **Shivaliks (Outer Himalayas):** These ranges extend over a width of 10-50 km and height between 900 and 1100 metres. These ranges are made up of unconsolidated mud and rocks brought down by the Himalayan rivers. These ranges are more prone to landslides and earthquakes. They are more prominent in the western part of India. The longitudinal valleys lying between lesser Himalayas and the Shivaliks are called 'Duns' like Dehra dun, Kotli Dun and Path Dun etc.

2. The significance of Himalayas are as follows:

- The Himalayas act as a climatic divide. They do not allow the cold winds from Central Asia to come into India nor do they allow the monsoons to escape into Central Asia.
- They are storehouse of forest wealth and wildlife.
- They give rise to perennial rivers e.g. River Ganga.
- They have a number of places of tourist attraction i.e. hill stations (Shimla, Nainital, Srinagar etc).
- They are also famous for the river valleys, e.g. Kashmir valley drained by Jhelum river and fruit orchards.
- They also are well known for the glaciers like Siachen, the highest battlefield.

3. The Northern Plains are alluvial plains formed by deposition of sediments brought down by rivers from the mountains. On the basis of the variation

in relief of the northern plains it can be divided into four regions.

(a) **Bhabar:** The rivers, after descending down from the mountains, deposit pebbles in a narrow belt of 8-16 km lying parallel to the slopes of the Shiwaliks. This is known as bhabar. The streams disappear in this belt.

(b) **Terai:** Below the Bhabar belt, the streams and rivers re-emerge and create a wet, swampy and marshy region called terai. It was a thickly forested area rich in wildlife. But now the area is cleared for cultivation.

(c) **Bhangar:** It is the largest part of the northern plains made up of older alluvium. This region lie above the flood plains of the rivers and present a terrace-like feature. The soil is not fertile here, it contains calcareous deposits called kankar.

(d) **Khadar:** The newer, younger deposits of the flood plains found in the lower river valley and at the mouth of the river. These are very fertile and get renewed every year by annual floods. They are suitable for intensive cultivation.

4. The significance of Northern Plains are:

(a) The Northern Plains of India are drained by Rivers Indus, Ganga and Brahmaputra along with their tributaries. Thus, these plains are very fertile and are rich source of food grains in India so known as granaries of the world.

(b) The plains are densely populated. A number of religious places are also there, e.g., Varanasi, Rishikesh, Haridwar etc.

(c) These is presence of a number of perennial rivers, e.g. Ganga, Yamuna etc. provide water for irrigation.

(d) They have a dense network of transport such as railways and roadways.

(e) They provide the base for early civilisations.

5. Each physiographic region is unique in itself, but inspite of their differences they are interdependent on each other. They complement one another, in the following sense:

(a) The Northern mountains are a rich source of water and forest resources.

(b) The Northern Plains with fertile soil are the granaries for the whole country.

- (c) The Peninsular plateau is the storehouse of mineral wealth, so it is a base of manufacturing industries.
- (d) The coastal plains provide sites for fishing and port activities.
- (e) The island groups have a unique diversity in flora and fauna.

Conclusion: None of these regions can exist without the other. Therefore, there is a geographical unity between these different regions. In other words there is a kind of unity in diversity that exists in India.

Assertion Reason Answer:

- 1. A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- 2. A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

Case Study Answer:

1. **Answer:**

- (1) C) The Himalayas
- (2) C) The Himalayas
- (3) D) Shiwalik
- (4) D) All of the above

2. **Answer:**

- (1) D) Depositional work of the rivers
- (2) C) The Northern Plains
- (3) C) Jhelum river-Tributary of Ganga river
- (4) B) It is a porous region due to deposition of huge number of pebbles and rock debris.





Drainage | 3

An area drained by the streams or tributaries of a single river is known as a **drainage basin**. A river along with its tributary is known as a **river system**. When a mountain or an upland separates two drainage basins, it is known as a **water divide**.

Drainage System in India

Relief features play an important part in controlling the drainage system in India. Indian rivers are divided into two major groups—the Himalayan rivers and the Peninsular rivers.

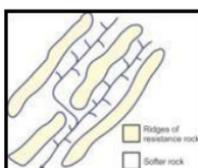
Differences between the Himalayan rivers and the Peninsular rivers are

The Himalayan Rivers	The Peninsular Rivers
Most of the Himalayan rivers are perennial such as the Ganga and the Brahmaputra.	Most of the Peninsular Rivers are not perennial.
The rivers are deep and have large courses.	The rivers have shorter and shallower courses as compared to the Himalayan rivers.
Most of the Himalayan rivers originate in the snow-capped Himalayan mountains.	Most of the Peninsular rivers originate in the Western Ghats.
The Himalayan rivers are long.	The Peninsular rivers are comparatively smaller.

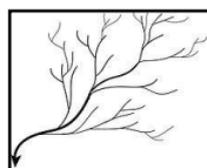
Drainage Patterns Formed by Rivers

The main drainage patterns formed by rivers are

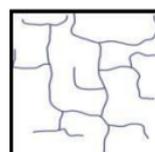
- Dendritic:** This drainage system is formed when the river channel follows the slope of the terrain. Because many tributaries join the main river, this drainage system appears like the branches of trees.
- Trellis:** The trellis pattern is developed when many tributaries join the main river at right angles and the hard and the soft rock exist parallel to each other.
- Rectangular:** It develops on the strongly jointed rocky terrain which are resistant to erosion. Such rocks have joints at right angles which can be eroded. The joints are cracked open by erosion, and hence, the streams of rivers develop along these joints.
- Radial:** When the streams of a river flow in different directions from a central peak or a dome-like structure, the radial drainage pattern is developed.



Trellis pattern



Dendritic pattern



Rectangular pattern



Radial pattern

The Himalayan Rivers

The main Himalayan Rivers are the Indus, Ganga, and Brahmaputra.

The Indus River System

- The river Indus originates near Lake Mansarovar in Tibet. It enters India in the Ladakh district of Jammu and Kashmir.
- With a total length of about 2900 km, the river Indus is one of the longest rivers in the world.
- It has many tributaries such as Zaskar, Nubra, Shyok and Hunza which join it in the Kashmir region.
- The Satluj, Beas, Ravi, Chenab and Jhelum join and flow into the River Indus in Pakistan.
- About one-third of the river Indus flows through Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh and Punjab. The rest of the river flows through Pakistan.
- The Indus then flows southwards and drains into the Arabian Sea.

The Ganga River System

- The river Ganga originates from the Gangotri Glacier in the Himalayas. It is joined by Alaknanda at Devprayag in Uttarakhand. It is at Haridwar that the river Ganga emerges from the mountains on to the plains.
- Some tributaries of the river Ganga are the Yamuna, Ghaghara, Gandak and Kosi.
- Yamuna is a major tributary of Ganga. It originates from the Yamunotri Glacier in the Himalayas and meets the River Ganga at Allahabad.
- Rivers such as the Kosi, Gandak and Ghagra rise in the Himalayas in Nepal. They cause floods in the northern plains almost every year. They enrich the soil and make the region agriculturally very productive during the process.
- Chambal, Betwa and Son are some tributaries of the river Ganga which rise in the peninsular uplands.
- The river Ganga flows till Farakka in West Bengal and divides here. Its distributary Bhagirathi- Hooghly flows through the deltaic plains into the Bay of Bengal.
- The main River Ganga flows into Bangladesh where it joins the river Brahmaputra. It is also known as Meghna further downstream. These rivers form the Sundarban delta, home to the royal Bengal tiger.

The Brahmaputra River System

- The river Brahmaputra rises east of the Mansarovar Lake in Tibet. Most of its course lies outside India.
- The River Brahmaputra at Namcha Barwa takes a 'U' turn and enters Arunachal Pradesh through a gorge. It is joined by many tributaries such as the Dibang and Lohit to form the River Brahmaputra in Assam, where it is also known as Dihang.
- In India, the river passes through a region of high rainfall, and thus, the volume of water and silt increases.
- The river Brahmaputra makes many riverine islands in Assam. Majuli is the largest riverine island formed by the Brahmaputra. The river shifts its channel frequently.
- During the rainy season every year, the river Brahmaputra floods its bank and causes huge loss of lives and property.

The Peninsular Rivers

The Western Ghats acts as a main water divide in Peninsular India. Some important peninsular rivers are the Godavari, Mahanadi, Krishna and Kaveri. These rivers make deltas at their mouths. While most rivers drain into the Bay of Bengal, the Narmada and the Tapti drain into the Arabian Sea forming estuaries.



The Narmada Basin

- The river Narmada originates in the Amarkantak Hills in Madhya Pradesh.
- The river creates many scenic locations on its way into the Arabian Sea. The 'Marble Rock' and the Dhuandhar Falls are some picturesque locations.
- The Narmada basin covers parts of Gujarat and Madhya Pradesh.
- The tributaries of Narmada are very short.

The Tapti Basin

- It originates in the Satpura ranges in the Betul district of Madhya Pradesh.
- It is much shorter in length compared to River Narmada. It flows through Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat and Maharashtra.

The Godavari Basin

- The River Godavari is the largest of all peninsular rivers. It originates from the slopes of the Western Ghats in the Nasik district of Maharashtra.
- Its length is about 1500 km, and it drains into the Bay of Bengal. Because of its length, it is also known as Dakshin Ganga.
- About half of the river's basin lies in Maharashtra. The river also flows through Madhya Pradesh, Odisha and Andhra Pradesh. Some of its tributaries are the Purna, Wardha, Manjra and Penganga.

The Mahanadi Basin

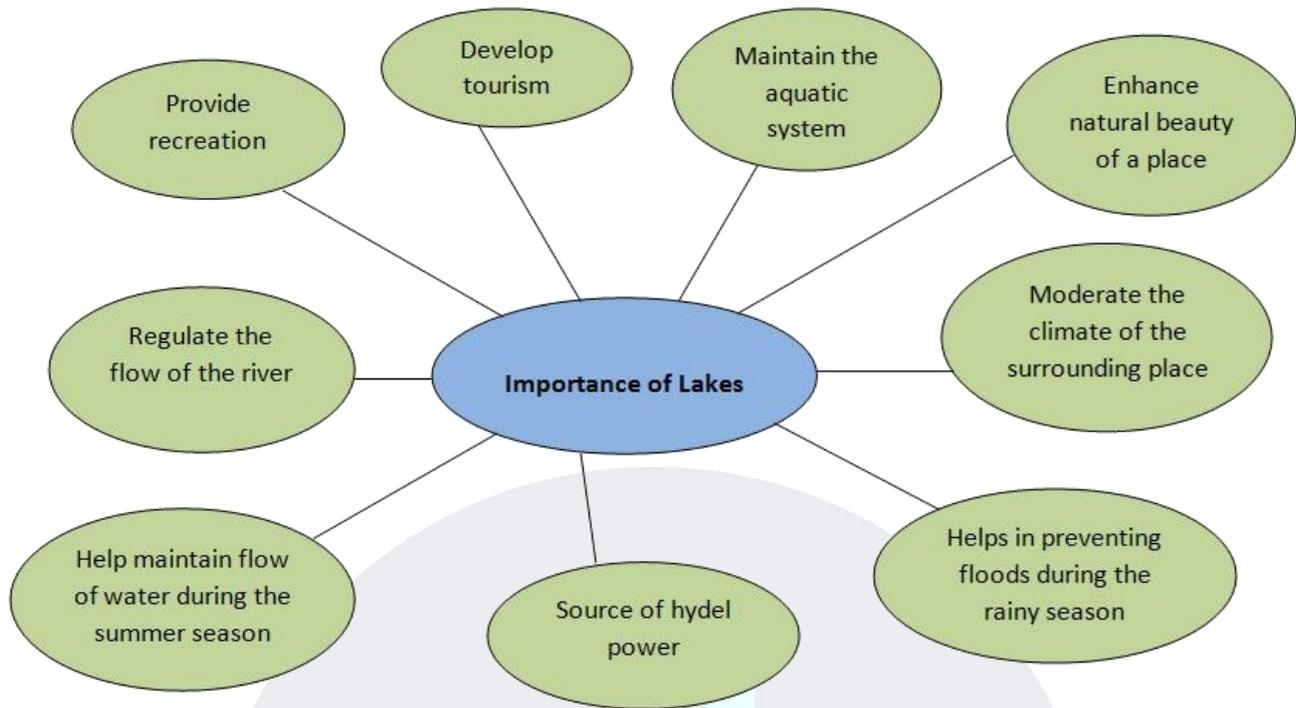
- It originates in the highlands of Chhattisgarh. The river drains into the Bay of Bengal.
- The river mainly drains Odisha, Chhattisgarh, Maharashtra and Jharkhand.

The Krishna Basin

- It rises from a spring near Mahabaleshwar and drains into the Bay of Bengal.
- Some of its tributaries are the Musi, Koyana, Bhima and Ghatprabha.
- It drains Maharashtra, Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh.

Lakes

- The Dal Lake is a famous lake in Kashmir.
- Lakes originate
- During the rainy season
- As a result of the action of glaciers and ice sheets
- As a result of the action of winds and rivers, and human activities
- An oxbow lake is produced when water forms a large meander from the mainstream creating a free-standing body of water.
- Lake Sambhar in Rajasthan is a saltwater lake. Its waters are used to manufacture salt.
- Many freshwater lakes found in the Himalayan region are of glacial origin.
- The Wular Lake in Jammu and Kashmir is the largest freshwater lake in India. The Dal, Bhimtal, Nainital and Loktak are some important freshwater lakes in India.
- Guru Gobind Sagar Lake in Punjab has been formed as a result of the damming of a river.



Role of Rivers in the Economy

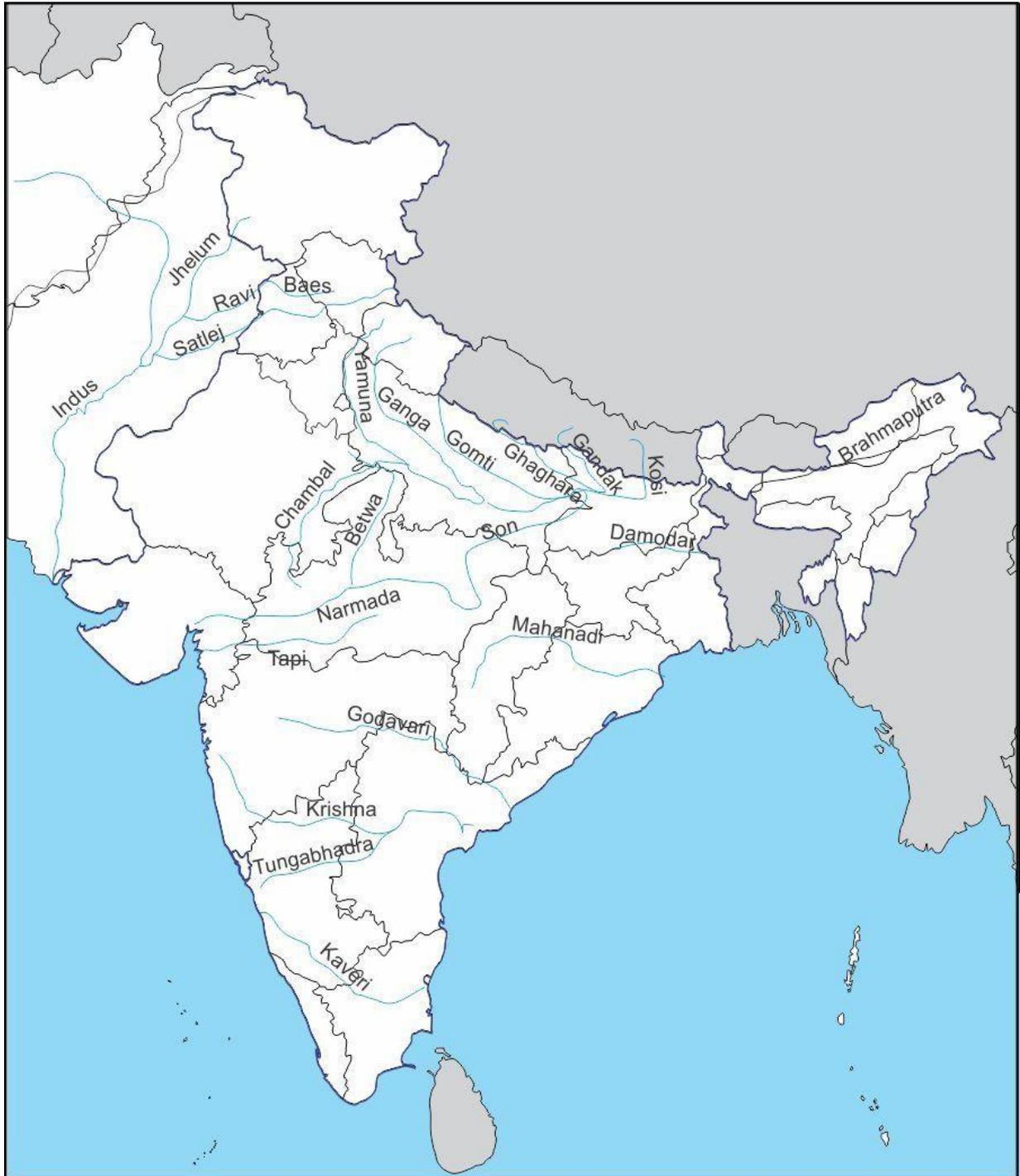
- Rivers have been of extreme importance throughout human history. Many civilisations developed on the banks of rivers.
- River water is used for domestic and industrial consumption.
- River water is used for irrigation and navigation.
- River water is used for the generation of electricity.

River Pollution

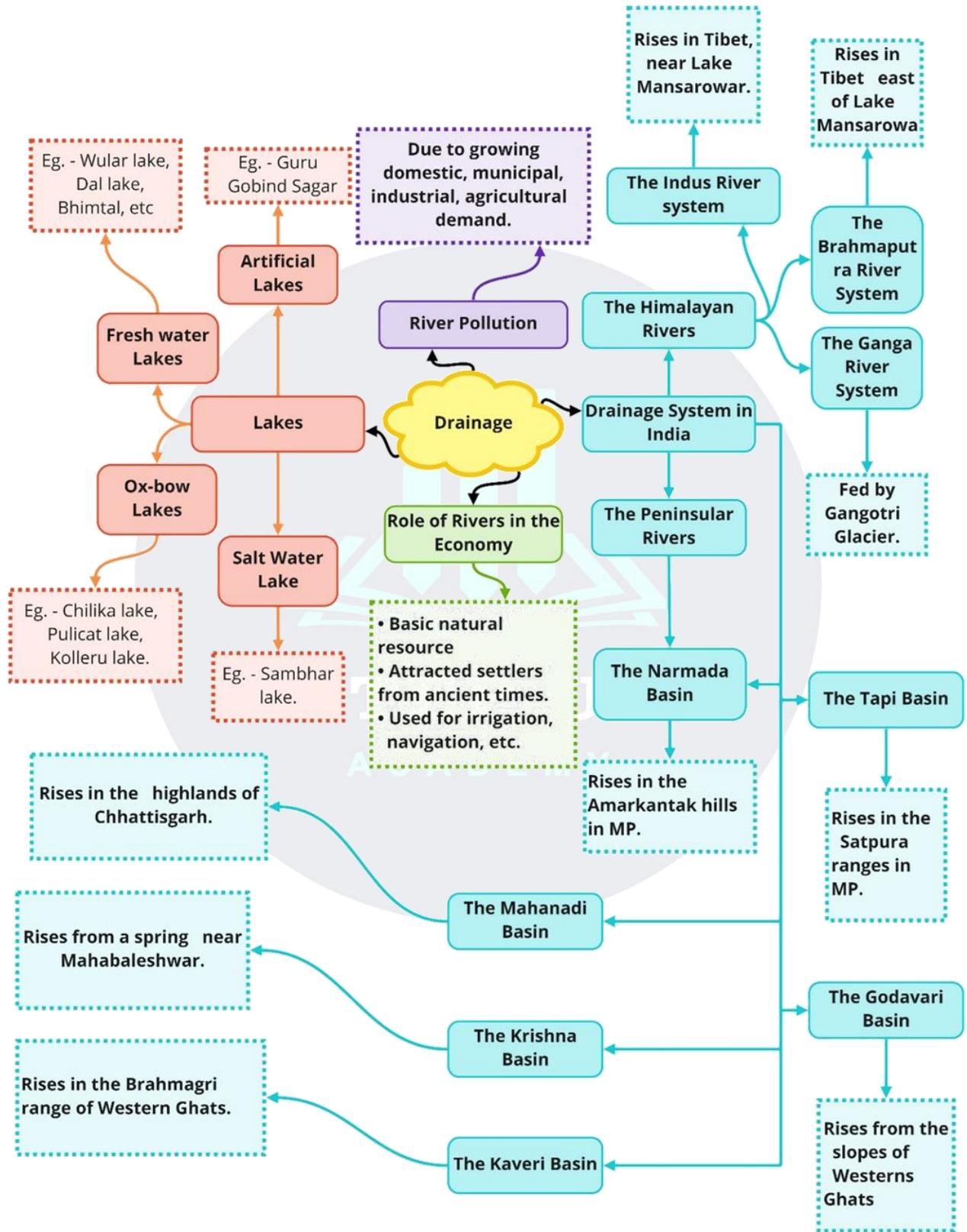
- Domestic, municipal, and industrial wastes pollute river waters.
- Untreated sewage wastes and industrial effluents also pollute river water. This not only reduces the quality of water but also the self-cleansing mechanism of river water.
- Increasing urbanisation has also polluted river water.



Map of Major Rivers in India



Class : 9th Geography
Chapter-3 : Drainage





Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

- Which of the following state is not drained by River Ganga:
(a) Bihar
(b) West Bengal
(c) Uttar Pradesh
(d) Punjab
- What are the characteristics of a river?
(i) Rivers are fast moving water bodies (ii) River originate from glacier, springs, lake etc. (iii) Rivers are slow moving mass of the ice and slow. (iv) Rivers are used for irrigation, navigation, generation of hydropower etc.
(a) (i), (ii) and (iii)
(b) (i), (ii) and (iv)
(c) All (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv)
(d) Only (iii)
- The river Narmada originate from:
(a) Amarkantak
(b) Satpura
(c) Ice slope of Western Ghats
(d) Brahamagir
- Which one of the following describes the drainage patterns resembling the branches of a tree:
(a) Radial
(b) Dendritic
(c) Centrifugal
(d) Trellis
- In which of the following states is the Wular lake located:
(a) Rajasthan
(b) Uttar Pradesh
(c) Punjab
(d) Jammu and Kashmir
- Which one of the following lakes is a salt water lake?
(a) Sambhar
(b) Wular
(c) Dal
(d) Gobmd Sagar
- Which one of the following is the longest river of the Peninsular India:
(a) Narmada
(b) Godavari
(c) Krishna
(d) Mahanadi
- Name the place where river indus emerge:
(a) Peshawar
(b) Amarkantak
(c) Attock
(d) Mansarowar
- Ganga enters Bangladesh at:
(a) Farakka
(b) Meghalaya
(c) Assam
(d) All are incorrect
- The length of river Ganga is:
(a) 2525km
(b) 2500km
(c) 2575km
(d) 2615km
- The largest river of peninsular India is:
(a) Tapi
(b) Mahanadi
(c) Godavari
(d) Krishna
- Largest fresh water lake found in India at:
(a) Jammu & Kashmir
(b) Malwa Plateau
(c) Plain areas
(d) Near oceans
- Which of the following two rivers form estuaries:
(a) Krishna and Kaveri
(b) Godavari and Tapi
(c) Narmada and Tapi
(d) Godavari and Tapi

14. What is the meaning of drainage?
- The river system of a particular area
 - The topography of a particular area
 - Both A and B
 - None of these
15. What is the area drained by a single river system called?
- Drainage
 - Drainage basin
 - Water divide
 - None of these

Very Short Questions:

- What is a river/ drainage basin?
- What is a watershed?
- Which river has the largest basin in India?
- In which two major groups Indian rivers are divided into?
- What is a perennial river?
- What is a gorge?
- What do Himalayan rivers do in their upper course?
- List the factors on which the drainage patterns depend. [HOTS]
- How is the dendritic pattern formed by the river?
- How does a rectangular pattern of drainage develop?

Short Questions:

- Explain any three features of Peninsular rivers.
- Why are Peninsular rivers seasonal in nature? State any three reasons.
- Which two rivers form the largest delta? Write any two features of this delta
- Explain the concept of water divide with special reference for Ganga and Indus river systems. Name the major distributary of river Ganga.
- Why are most of the Peninsular river draining into the Bay of Bengal? Give two reasons. Name two rivers draining into the Arabian Sea.
- Describe three important features of the Tapi basin.
- Why are the rivers of Western Coast very short?

Long Questions:

- What is a river pattern? Name any four patterns formed by the rivers.
- Write main features of River Indus under the following headings:
- Give main characteristic features of the Ganga river system
- Give characteristic features of the Ganga-Brahmaputra delta
- Give the main characteristic features of mighty Brahmaputra river.

Assertion Reason Questions:

- In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as:

Assertion (A): The Ganga is joined by many tributaries from the Himalayas, a few of them being major rivers, such as the Yamuna, the Ghaghara, the Gandak and the Kosi.

Reason(R): The Ghaghara, the Gandak and the Kosi rise in the Nepal Himalaya.

- Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (A) is false, but (R) is true.

- In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as:

Assertion (A): Most of the Himalayan rivers are perennial.

Reason (R): They have water throughout the year. These rivers receive water from rain as well as from melted snow from the lofty mountains.

- Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- (A) is false, but (R) is true.

Case Study Based Question:

- Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:



The Indus River System The river Indus rises in Tibet, near Lake Mansarovar. Flowing west, it enters India in the Ladakh. It forms a picturesque gorge in this part. Several tributaries, the Zaskar, the Nubra, the Shyok and the Hunza, join it in the Kashmir region. The Indus flows through Baltistan and Gilgit and emerges from the mountains at Attock. The Satluj, the Beas, the Ravi, the Chenab and the Jhelum join together to enter the Indus near Mithankot in Pakistan. Beyond this, the Indus flows southwards eventually reaching the Arabian Sea, east of Karachi. The Indus plain has a very gentle slope. With a total length of 2900 kms, the Indus is one of the longest rivers of the world. A little over a third of the Indus basin is located in India: Ladakh, Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh and Punjab and the rest is in Pakistan.

- (1) Where does the river Indus rise?
 - (A) Bangladesh
 - (B) Nepal
 - (C) Tibet
 - (D) China
 - (2) Where does it form a picturesque gorge?
 - (A) Ladakh
 - (B) Jammu & Kashmir
 - (C) Nepal
 - (D) Karachi
 - (3) The Indus plain has a very _____ slope.
 - (A) Smooth
 - (B) Gentle
 - (C) Rough
 - (D) Harsh
 - (4) Indus is _____ long in length.
 - (A) 2,400 km
 - (B) 2,900 km
 - (C) 2,500 km
 - (D) 2,700 km
2. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

The main water divide in Peninsular India is formed by the Western Ghats, which runs from north to south close to the western coast. Most of the major rivers of the Peninsula, such as the Mahanadi, the Godavari, the Krishna and the Kaveri flow eastwards and drain into the Bay of Bengal. These rivers make deltas at their mouths. There are numerous small streams flowing west of the Western Ghats. The Narmada and the Tapi are the only long rivers, which flow west and make estuaries. The drainage basins of the peninsular rivers are comparatively smaller in size.

 - (1) The main water divide in Peninsular India is formed by the Western Ghats, which runs from _____ close to the Western Coast.
 - (A) South to East
 - (B) North to South
 - (C) East to West
 - (D) North to West
 - (2) The major rivers of the peninsula flow:
 - (A) Westwards
 - (B) Southwards
 - (C) Eastwards
 - (D) Northwards
 - (3) These rivers make deltas at their _____.
 - (A) Source
 - (B) Mouth
 - (C) Banks
 - (D) None of the above
 - (4) The _____ are the only long rivers, which flow West and make estuaries.
 - (A) Narmada and Tapi
 - (B) Krishna and Kaveri
 - (C) Ganga and Yamuna
 - (D) Mahanadi and Kaveri

Answer Key

MCQ:

1. (d) Punjab
2. (b) (i), (ii) and (iv)
3. (a) Amarkantak
4. (d) Trellis
5. (d) Jammu and Kashmir
6. (a) Sambhar
7. (b) Godavari
8. (c) Attock
9. (a) Farakka
10. (a) 2525 km
11. (c) Godavari
12. (a) Jammu & Kashmir
13. (c) Narmada and Tapi
14. (a) The river system of a particular area
15. (b) Drainage basin

Very Short Answer:

1. A river/drainage basin is an area drained by a single river system.
2. An upland/highland area that separates two drainage basin systems.
3. River Ganga has the largest basin in India.
4. The Indian rivers are divided into:
 - (a) The Himalayan rivers
 - (b) The Peninsular rivers
5. Perennial rivers have water throughout the year. These rivers get water from rain and snow e.g. River Ganga.
6. A gorge is a deep narrow channel created by a flowing river.
7. The Himalayan rivers perform intensive erosional activity in their upper course and carry huge loads of silt and sand.
8. The slope of the land, the rock structure as well as the climatic conditions of the area are some factors on which the drainage pattern depends.
9. The dendritic pattern is formed by the river channel, when the river follows the slope of the land. The stream with its tributaries develops a pattern that resembles the branches of a tree so named as dendritic.
10. Rectangular pattern of drainage develops on a strongly jointed rocky' terrain.

Short Answer:

1. The three features of the Peninsular rivers are:
 - (a) A large number of peninsular rivers are seasonal as they are dependent on rainfall.
 - (b) They have short and shallow courses.
 - (c) Most of the peninsular rivers originate from the Western Ghats and flow into the Bay of Bengal.
 - (d) The drainage basin of Peninsular rivers are small in size.
2. The three reasons are as follows:
 - (a) The Peninsular rivers are dependent on rainfall unlike the Himalayan rivers are snowfed.
 - (b) The hills of the peninsular plateau are not snow-bound unlike Himalayas.
 - (c) These rivers follow smaller course and have small basins which influence water volume.
 - (d) The catchment areas (the area where the river gets maximum water either by rain/snow) of peninsular rivers are small in comparison to Himalayan rivers.
3. River Ganga and River Brahmaputra from the largest delta i.e. the Sundarban delta.
The two features of this delta are:
 - (a) It is the largest and fastest growing delta in the world.
 - (b) It gets its name as Sundarban from the Sundari tree. It is the home of the Royal Bengal tiger.
4.
 - (a) A water divide is a highland area/an upland/mountain which separates two drainage basins.
 - (b) Ambala is located on the water divide between the Indus and the Ganga river system.
 - (c) The distributary of River Ganga are Hooghly.
5. I. Most of the Peninsular rivers drain into the Bay of Bengal because of the following reasons:



- (a) The Eastern Ghats are lower than the Western Ghats and are also discontinuous thus making it easier for the rivers to reach the Bay of Bengal.
- (b) The Deccan Plateau has a gentle slope towards the east, thus the rivers drain towards the east.
- II. Two rivers draining into the Arabian Sea are the Narmada and the Tapi.
6. The important features of Tapi basin are:
- (a) The Tapi river rises in the Satpura ranges in the Betul district of Madhya Pradesh.
- (b) It also flows through a rift valley parallel to the Narmada but much shorter in length.
- (c) Its basin covers parts of Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat and Maharashtra.
7. The rivers of West Coast of India are very short because:
- (a) The coastal plains between Western Ghats and the Arabian Sea are very narrow.
- (b) The course of these rivers are short as they do not have much water and drain small area of the states.
- (c) These rivers are seasonal in nature.
- Examples of these rivers are Sabarmati that drains parts of Rajasthan and Gujarat; Mahi – Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan, Gujarat; Periyar – Kerala, Bharathpuzha – Kerala.
- (c) **Rectangular Pattern:** This drainage pattern develops on a strongly jointed rocks terrain.
- (d) **Radial Pattern:** The drainage pattern develops when streams flow in different directions from a central peak or dome-like structure.
2. The main features of River Indus as an important river of the Himalayas are:
- (a) **Source:** Indus river rises in Tibet, near lake Mansarowar. While flowing towards west it enters India in the Ladakh district of Jammu and Kashmir by forming a picturesque gorge.
- (b) **Tributaries:** Several tributaries like the Zaskar, the Nubra, the Shyok and the Hunza join it in the Kashmir region. Other major tributaries are the Satluj, the Beas, the Ravi, the Chenab and the Jhelum join together and form Indus at Mithankot in Pakistan.
- (c) **Areas drained by river Indus:** The Indus flows southwards eventually reaching the Arabian Sea east of Karachi areas. This is where Indus river end but not the total area drained.
- (d) **Extent of the Indus Plain:** The Indus plain has a gentle slope. It covers the states of Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh and Punjab.
- (e) **Indus Water Treaty (1960):** According to the regulations of this treaty, India can use only 20% of the total water carried by Indus river system. The water is used for irrigation in Punjab, Haryana and southern and western parts of Rajasthan.

Long Answer:

1. The streams within the drainage basin form certain patterns depending on
- (a) the slope of the land
- (b) underlying rock structure of the area
- (c) the climate of the area.
- The different drainage patterns are:
- (a) **Dendritic Pattern:** It develops where the river channel follows the slope of the land. When the stream and its tributaries drainage pattern resembles the branches of a tree, so it is called dendritic.
- (b) **Trellis Pattern:** This pattern develops when a river is joined by its tributaries at approximately right angles. It also develops when the hard and soft rocks exist parallel to each other.
3. The main characteristic features of the Ganga river system are:
- (a) The Ganga rises in Gangotri Glacier in Uttarakhand. Its headstream Bhagirathi joined by the Alaknanda at Devprayag in Uttarakhand.
- (b) At Haridwar, the river Ganga comes out from the mountains to the plains.
- (c) Its tributaries like the Yamuna, the Gandak, the Ghaghara, the Kosi flood parts of northern plains every year, causing widespread damage to life and property but the flood enriches the soil naturally. The soil is most suitable for intensive cultivation.

- (d) The main tributaries that join Ganga river from peninsular India are the Chambal, the Betwa and the Son.
- (e) The Ganga continues to flow eastwards after addition of water by its tributaries till Farakka in West Bengal. It then enters Bangladesh and joined Brahmaputra and known as stream Meghna which flows into the Bay of Bengal. Here, it forms the Sundarban delta, which is the largest delta of the world.
4. The characteristic features of the Ganga-Brahmaputra delta are:
- (a) The Ganga-Brahmaputra delta is also known as Ganga delta or Sundarban delta.
- (b) It is situated in Bangladesh (southern parts) and in the state of West Bengal (India).
- (c) It is the world's largest and fastest growing delta.
- (d) The mainstream of Ganga river flows southwards into Bangladesh and is joined by the Brahmaputra river resulting in the formation of a delta.
- (e) Sundarban delta derived its name from Sundari trees which does not rot in stagnant water.
- (f) It is also the home of Royal Bengal tigers.
5. The main characteristics features of Brahmaputra river are:
- (a) Its source lies in Tibet, east of Mansarowar lake very close to the sources of the Indus and the Satluj. It is slightly longer than the Indus and most of its course lies outside India.
- (b) The river carries less silt and smaller volume of water in Tibet as it is a cold and dry area,
- (c) Brahmaputra river passes through a region of high rainfall in India. Hence, the river carries large volume of water and considerable amount of silt.
- (d) The Brahmaputra has a braided channel in its entire length in Assam and forms many riverine islands. For example, Majuli island is the largest inhabited riverine island in the world.
- (e) Unlike other rivers of north India, river Brahmaputra is marked by huge deposits of silt on its bed causing the river bed to rise. The river also shifts its channel frequently. Every year during the rainy season the river overflows its banks causing widespread devastation due to floods in Assam and Bangladesh.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
2. A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

Case Study Answer:

1. **Answer:**
 - (1) C) Tibet
 - (2) A) Ladakh
 - (3) B) Gentle
 - (4) B) 2,900 km
2. **Answer:**
 - (1) B) North to South
 - (2) C) Eastwards
 - (3) B) Mouth
 - (4) A) Narmada and Tapi





Climate | 4

Weather is the state of the atmosphere over an area at a given point of time. Climate, on the other hand, refers to the total of weather conditions and variations occurring over a large area over a long period of time. Wind, rainfall, temperature, and atmospheric pressure are some important elements of climate and weather. Two main differences between weather and climate:

Weather	Climate
Weather is a day-to-day state of the atmosphere of an area at any given point of time.	Climate is the total of weather conditions of a given place over a longer period of time.
Weather changes on a daily basis.	Climate of a given place remains constant for over 30 to 40 years.

The Climate of India

India has a 'monsoon' type of climate. It experiences several kinds of regional climatic variations. While there is hardly 20cm of rainfall annually in the western parts of Rajasthan and Gujarat, Assam and Arunachal Pradesh receive more than 250cm of rainfall. During winters, the night temperature may fall below -45°C , while on the same night, Thiruvananthapuram may experience a temperature of 45°C . These variations have resulted in different lifestyles of the people.

Factors Affecting the Climate of India

Factors which affect the climate of India are **Latitude**

- Tropic of Cancer, a latitude, passes through India at $23^{\circ}26'N$ to the north of the equator. It passes through eight Indian states running from the Rann of Kutch of Gujarat to Mizoram in the east.
- The Tropic of Cancer divides the country into two halves. The areas in India which lie to the north of the Tropic of Cancer lie in the sub-tropical regions, while the areas to the south of the tropic lie in the tropical regions.
- The temperature remains high throughout the tropical regions.

Altitude: The temperature declines as we travel to places above the sea level. Thus, the temperature decreases with an increase in altitude.

- There is a decrease of 1°C for every 166 m rise in height. This is the reason that hill stations in India are cooler than the plain regions.

Air Pressure and Surface Winds

- India lies in the region of northeasterly winds. However, as these winds blow over land, they carry very little moisture and cause no rainfall.
- During winters, high pressure areas are created to the north of the Himalayas. Cold winds blow from this region to the low-pressure areas to the south over the oceans.
- During summers, as low-pressure areas develop over Central Asia, there is complete reversal of the direction of the winds. Winds move from a high-pressure area over the Southern Indian Ocean. As these winds blow over the warm ocean, they gather moisture and bring rainfall to the country.

- The climate of India is also influenced by jet streams. The western cyclonic disturbances in the north and northwestern parts of the country are brought about by the sub-tropical westerly jetstreams.

Jet streams are a narrow belt of high-altitude westerly winds in the troposphere. Their speed varies from about 110 km/h in summers and to about 184 km/h during winters. The cyclonic disturbances which are experienced in the northern and northwestern parts of the country are brought in by the westerly flow.

The Indian Monsoon

India has a monsoon type of climate as its climate is strongly influenced by the monsoon winds. It is important to keep certain facts in mind before studying the monsoon season in India. These are

- a. The differences in heating and cooling of land and water results in the creation of low pressure on the Indian mainland. The seas at the same time experience high pressure conditions.
- b. **Inter Tropical Convergent Zone (ITCZ)** is a broad trough of low pressure in the equatorial latitudes.
- c. The presence of high-pressure area east of Madagascar over the Indian Ocean affects the Indian monsoon.
- d. The movement of the westerly jet stream to the north of the Himalayas and the tropical easterly jet stream over the Indian Peninsula also affect the rainfall in India.

It has been seen that apart from other factors, the changes in the pressure conditions over the southern oceans also affect the monsoons. Generally, when the tropical eastern South Pacific Ocean experiences high pressure, the tropical eastern Indian Ocean experiences low pressure. However, it has been noticed that there has been a reversal in the pressure conditions. While the eastern South Pacific Ocean has low pressure conditions, the eastern Indian Ocean has relatively high-pressure conditions. This periodic change in pressure conditions is known as the **Southern Oscillation** or **SO**.

The Onset of the Monsoons and their Withdrawal

- In India, the duration of the monsoon is generally from the months of June to mid-September. When the monsoon arrives, the intensity of the rainfall increases which continues for several days; this is known as the '**burst**' of the monsoon.
- By the first week of June, the monsoon arrives in Kerala. It is then divided into two branches—the Bay of Bengal branch and the Arabian Sea branch.
- The Arabian Sea branch reaches Mumbai in the second week of June. The Bay of Bengal branch also arrives in Assam in the first week of June. The mountains in the region lead to the deflection of the monsoon winds over the North Indian Plains.
- By mid-June, the monsoon strikes the central parts of the country and the Saurashtra and Kutch regions.
- Uttar Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana and eastern Rajasthan receive rainfall by the first week of July.
- The monsoon winds begin to withdraw from the northwestern parts of India by early September. It withdraws from the peninsular region by mid-October, and it completely withdraws from the country by the first week of December.

The Seasons

A country with a monsoon type of climate experiences distinct seasons. India experiences the following seasons:

The Cold Weather Season

- The cold weather season in India begins during mid-November in Northern India and stays till February. December and January are the coldest months.
- During the cold season, the days are warm, and the nights are cold. When temperature decreases, frost is commonly experienced in Northern India.
- The cold season in most parts of the country is the dry season as northeast trade winds blow from land to sea.



- Many cyclonic disturbances occur over northern India during this time. These result in rainfall during winters and snowfall in the Himalayan regions. This winter rainfall helps in the cultivation of rabi crops.

The Hot Weather Season

- The hot weather season in India begins from March and continues till May. In May, the temperature rises to 45°C in the northwestern parts of the country.
- Because of high temperature, low air pressure is created in the northern parts of the country.
- One of the striking features of the hot weather season in India is the blowing of local winds known as 'loo'. It is a hot wind which may blow even during the evenings. Direct exposure to these winds may cause fever and anxieties.
- Sometimes, northern India experiences dust storms accompanied by light rainfall during May. This brings down the temperature.
- During this time, torrential downpours are accompanied by hail in West Bengal. These storms are known as Kaal Baisakhi.
- Towards the end of the summer season, rain showers are common in Kerala and Karnataka. They help in the early ripening of mangoes and thus are sometimes also referred to as 'mango showers'.

Advancing Monsoon

- By the first week of June, low pressure conditions get intensified over the North Indian Plains. These conditions attract the southeast trade winds which originate from the Southern oceans.
- These winds blow over the warm oceans and thus bring moisture and rainfall to the country.
- During the early monsoon season, the places located on the windward side of the Western Ghats receive heavy rainfall up to 250 cm.
- The northeastern parts of the country receive heavy rainfall. Mawsynram in Meghalaya receives the highest amount of rainfall in the world.
- As we go from the east to the west, the rainfall decreases. Rajasthan and Gujarat receive scanty rainfall.
- Rain does not fall continuously during the monsoon season. Thus, there are dry spells and wet spells. Monsoons are uncertain and irregular.

Retreating Monsoon

- During October and November, the southwest monsoon winds become weaker and start retreating from the Northern Plains by the beginning of October.
- The retreat is indicated by clear skies and an increase in the temperature in the northern plains. This increase in temperature is termed 'October heat'.
- At this time, the low-pressure conditions shift to the Bay of Bengal, giving rise to cyclonic depressions. These cyclonic depressions often result in the destruction of life and property, generally on the eastern coast and the southern coast.
- Most of the rainfall in the Coromandel Coast is derived from depressions and cyclones.

Distribution of Rainfall

- Rainfall distribution is not the same for every part of the country. While northeastern India and the parts of the western coast receive about 400 cm of rainfall annually, western Rajasthan and the western parts of Gujarat, Punjab and Haryana receive less than 60 cm of rainfall.
- The winds which rise from the Arabian Sea are full of moisture. These winds strike the mountains on the western side resulting in heavy rainfall. By the time these winds reach the Eastern Ghats, they are already dry as they already shed their moisture. Hence, the Western Ghats receive more rainfall than the Eastern Ghats.

- Rainfall is also low in the Eastern Ghats, interior parts of the Deccan Plateau and the Leh region of Jammu and Kashmir.
- The other parts of the country receive moderate rainfall.
- Such a distribution of rainfall causes great climatic variations. While the eastern parts of the country almost get flooded every year, the western parts of the country experience drought like situations.

Monsoon as a Unifying Bond

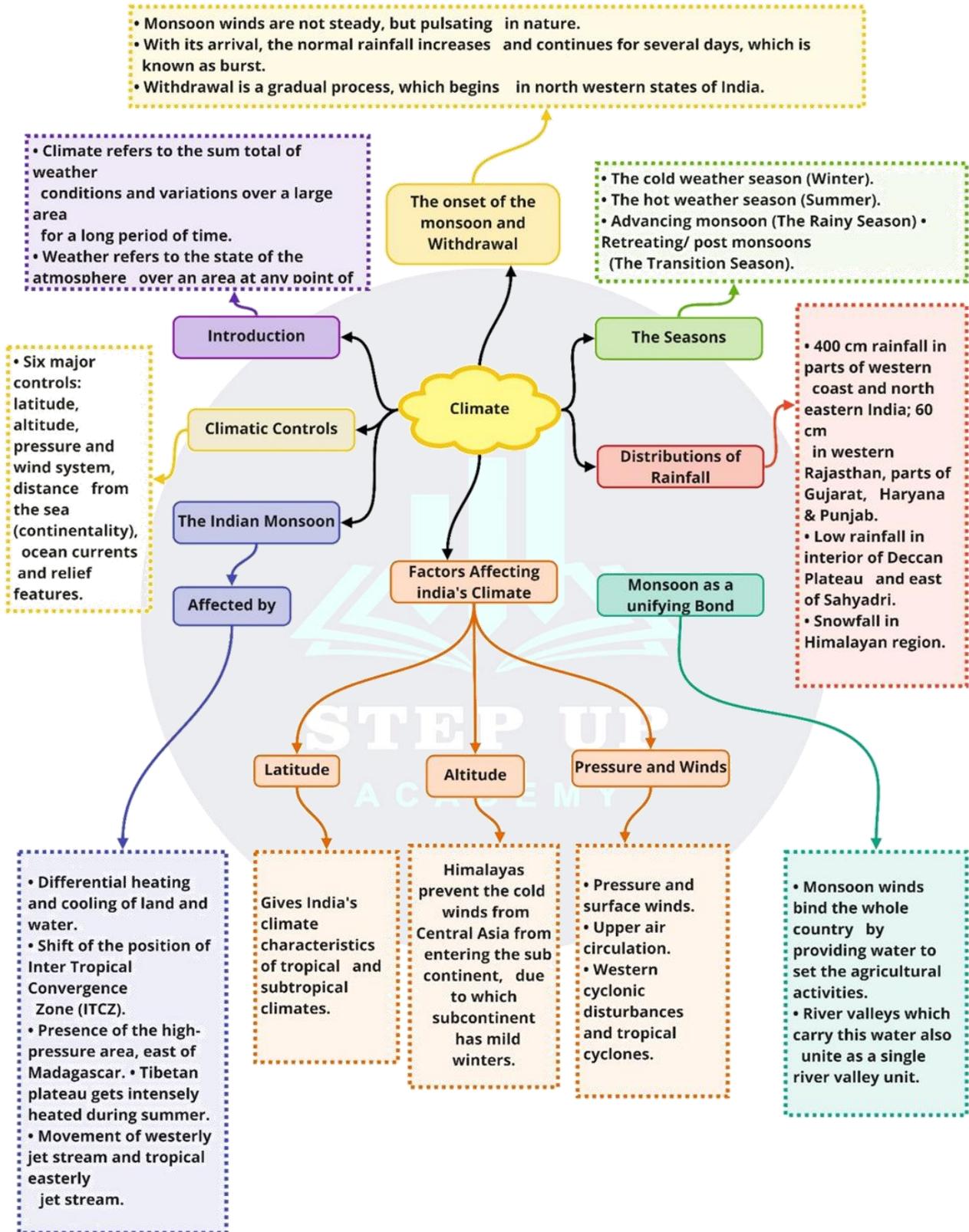
Although the monsoon winds are irregular and uncertain, they unify the entire country. The farmers eagerly wait for the arrival of rainfall. Rainfall provides the water required to set agricultural activities in motion. Its arrival is welcomed with the celebration of festivals, singing and dancing.



Map showing direction of Southwest monsoon winds in India



Class : 9th Geography
Chapter - 4 : Climate



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

- What factors affect the climate of a place in India?
(i) Location (ii) Surface winds (iii) Relief features (iv) Upper air circulation
(a) (i) and (iv)
(b) (i) and (iii)
(c) (i) and (ii)
(d) (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv)
- The word 'Monsoon' has been derived from the Arabic word 'Mausam' which means:
(a) Climatic changes
(b) Seasons
(c) Weather condition
(d) Climatic variation
- What is the average temperature of Chennai during winter?
(a) Between 24° - 25°C
(b) Between 10° - 15°C
(c) Between 20° - 25°C
(d) Between 25° - 30°C
- Which of the following state affected by Kal-Baisakhi:
(i) Assam (ii) West Bengal (iii) Chennai (iv) Orissa
(a) (i) and (iii)
(b) (i) and (iv)
(c) (i) and (ii)
(d) All states (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv)
- Which of the following seasons are recognised in India.
(i) Cold Weather Season (ii) Hot Weather Season (iii) Advancing Monsoon Season (iv) Retreating Monsoon Season
(a) Only (iv)
(b) Only (iii)
(c) Expect (iv), (i), (ii) and (iii)
(d) All season mention in option (i), (ii), (iii) & (iv)
- What is climate?
(a) Sum of total weather conditions and variation over a large area of a long time.
(b) Sum of total weather condition over a particular area.
(c) Temperature condition of a particular region.
(d) None of these
- Which of the following place receive highest rainfall in India as well as in the world?
(a) Silchar
(b) Cherrapunji
(c) Mawsynram
(d) Guwahati
- The wind blowing in the northern plains in summer is called
(a) Loo
(b) Trade winds
(c) Kaal Baisakhi
(d) All a, b and c.
- Which of the following causes rainfall during winter in the north-western part of India.
(a) Cyclonic depression
(b) Western disturbance
(c) Retreating monsoon
(d) South west monsoon
- Monsoon arrives in India approximately in :
(a) Early May
(b) Early June
(c) Early July
(d) Early August
- The most important characteristics of cold weather season in India is:
(a) Warm days and warm nights
(b) Warm days and Cold nights
(c) Cold days and cold nights
(d) Cold days and warm nights



12. From which of the following pressure belts do the north-easterly trade winds originate?
 - (a) Equatorial low-pressure belt
 - (b) Subtropical high-pressure belt of the Northern Hemisphere
 - (c) Subtropical high-pressure belt of the Southern Hemisphere
 - (d) Temperate low-pressure belt of the Northern Hemisphere
13. The Indian subcontinent experiences comparatively milder winters as compared to Central Asia due to which of the following factors?
 - (a) The Tropic of Cancer
 - (b) The surrounding seas
 - (c) The Himalayas
 - (d) Ocean currents
14. Which one of the following is not one of the six major controls of the climate of any place?
 - (a) Latitude
 - (b) Temperature
 - (c) Pressure and wind system
 - (d) Distance from the sea
15. Latitude and altitude of a place determine which of the following climatic elements of a place?
 - (a) Pressure and wind system
 - (b) Temperature
 - (c) Rainfall pattern
 - (d) All the above

Very Short Questions:

1. What is climate?
2. Distinguish between climate and weather.
3. Name the elements of climate and weather.
4. What is the climate of India?
5. What does the word 'Monsoon' mean?
6. What is the variation of temperature in summer in India?
7. What is the variation of temperature in winter in India?
8. What is the variation of annual precipitation in India?
9. In which months is the season of rainfall experienced in India?
10. Why do the coastal areas of India experience less contrast in temperature?

Short Questions:

1. How do the variations in temperature affect the lives of the people in India?
2. What is the jet stream?
3. What is the ITCZ?
4. Explain the Southern Oscillation.
5. How is the El Nino phenomenon connected with the Southern Oscillation?
6. What do you understand by the 'Retreating of the Monsoon'? When does it occur?
7. Describe the main features of the Retreating Monsoon season in India.

Long Questions:

1. Describe the main features of the Retreating Monsoon season in India
2. Describe the path of the monsoon winds, after it strikes the West Bengal coast.
3. Explain the distribution of rain caused by the Monsoons
4. Explain the four features of the Monsoon rains.
5. Describe the regional variations in the climatic conditions of India with the help of suitable examples.

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as:

Assertion (A) : 'Western Disturbances' disturb the calm and quite weather of North and Northwestern India by causing cyclonic rains over the plains and snowfall in the mountains.

Reason (R) : Winter rainfall caused by them locally known as 'Mahawat' is of immense importance for the cultivation of Rabi crops.

- A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
 - B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
 - C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
 - D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.
2. In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as:

Assertion (A) : Arabian Sea branch of South West Monsoons is responsible for good rainfall in the Northern Plains of India.

Reason(R) : The part of South West Monsoons which blows over the Arabian Sea is responsible for high rainfall on the western coast of India.

- A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

Case Study Based Question:

1. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

The cold weather season begins from mid November in northern India and stays till February. December and January are the coldest months in the northern part of India. The temperature decreases from south to the north. The average temperature of Chennai on the eastern coast, is between 24°C - 25° Celsius, while in the northern plains, it ranges between 10°C and 15° Celsius. Days are warm and nights are cold. Frost is common in these winds blow through the Ganga valley from the west and the northwest. The weather is normally marked by clear sky, low temperatures and low humidity and feeble, variable winds.

A characteristic feature of the cold weather season over the northern plains is the inflow of cyclonic disturbances from the west and the northwest. These low- pressure systems, originate over the Mediterranean Sea and western Asia and move into India, along with the westerly flow. They cause the much-needed winter rains over the plains and snowfall in the mountains. Although the total amount of winter rainfall locally known as 'Mahawat' is small, they are of immense importance for the cultivation of 'Rabi' crops.

- (1) In cold weather season of winter, the temperature decreases from ____.
- A) South to the North
 - B) East to the West
 - C) North to the West
 - D) South to the East

- (2) Which one of the following characterizes the cold weather season in India?

- A) Warm days and warm nights
- B) Warm days and cold nights
- C) Cold days and cold nights
- D) Cold days and warm nights

- (3) Some amount of rainfall occurs on the ____ coast from these winds, as they blow sea to land.

- A) Coromandel
- B) Malabar
- C) Kerala
- D) Tamil Nadu

- (4) Winter rainfall called is of immense importance for the cultivation of ____ crops.

- A) Monsoon Showers, Rabi Crops
- B) Mango Showers, Kharif Crops
- C) Mahawat, Rabi Crops
- D) Kaal Baisakhi, Kharif Crops

2. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

There are six major controls of the climate of any place. They are: Latitude, Altitude, Pressure and Wind system, Distance from the sea (continentality), Ocean currents and Relief features.

Due to the curvature of the Earth, the amount of solar energy received varies according to Latitude. As a result, air temperature generally decreases from the equator towards the poles. As one goes from the surface of the earth to higher altitudes, the atmosphere becomes less dense and temperature decreases. The hills are therefore cooler during summers. The pressure and wind system of any area depend on the latitude and altitude of the place. Thus, it influences the temperature and rainfall pattern. The sea exerts a moderating influence on climate: As the distance from the sea increases, its moderating influence decreases and the people experience extreme weather conditions. This condition is known as continentality (i.e., very hot during summers and very cold during winters). Ocean currents along with onshore winds affect the climate of the coastal areas. For example, any coastal area with warm or cold currents flowing past it, will be warmed or cooled if the winds are onshore.



- (1) Due to the _____ of the Earth, the amount of Solar energy received varies according to Latitude.
- A) Circumference
B) Radius
C) Curvature
D) Diameter
- (2) As one goes from the surface of the Earth to higher altitudes, the _____ becomes less dense and temperature decreases.
- A) Atmosphere
C) Hydrosphere
B) Biosphere
D) Lithosphere
- (3) The condition known as _____ when it is very hot during summers and very cold during winters.
- A) Continuity of Climate
B) Climatic Condition
C) Continentality Climate
D) Changing Climate
- (4) Relief feature plays a major role in determining _____.
- A) The temperature of a place
B) The weather of a place
C) The season of a place
D) The climate of a place

Answer Key

MCQ:

- (d) (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv)
- (b) Seasons
- (a) Between 24° – 25°C
- (c) (i) and (ii)
- (d) All season mention in option (i), (ii), (iii) & (iv)
- (a) Sum of total weather conditions and variation over a large area of a long time.
- (c) Mawsynram
- (a) Loo
- (b) Western disturbance
- (b) Early June
- (c) Cold days and cold nights
- (b) Subtropical high pressure belt of the Northern Hemisphere
- (c) The Himalayas
- (b) Temperature
- (d) All the above
- Climate refers to the sum total of weather conditions over a large area for a long period of time (30 – 40 years).
- Climate refers to the sum total of weather conditions and variations over a large area for a long period of time (thirty years).
Weather refers to the state of the atmosphere over an area at any point of time.
- Elements of weather and climate are temperature, atmospheric pressure, wind, humidity and precipitation.
- India's climate is described as "Tropical Monsoon Type of Climate".
- The word Monsoon is derived from the Arabic word 'mausim' which literally means season. It refers to the seasonal reversal in the wind direction during a year.
- In summer, the mercury occasionally touches 50°C in some parts of Rajasthan desert, whereas it may be around 20°C in Pahalgam in Jammu and Kashmir.
- In winter, the temperature in Drass in Jammu and Kashmir is as low as - 45°C and Thiruvananthapuram may have 22°C.
- The annual precipitation is over 400 cms in Meghalaya and less than 10 cms in Ladakh and western Rajasthan.
- Most parts of India receive rainfall from June to September.

10. The coastal areas experience less contrast in temperature because of the influence of the sea, e.g. Mumbai experiences an equable climate.

Short Answer:

- They affect the food the people eat.
 - The clothes the people wear
 - The kind of houses they live in.
- These are a narrow belt of high altitude westerly winds in the troposphere.
 - Their speed varies from about 110 km/h in summer to about 184 km/h in winter.
 - Of the jet streams that have been identified, the most constant are the mid-latitude and the sub-tropical jet stream.
- The Inter Tropical Convergence Zone is a low pressure trough lying 5° North and South of the Equator.
 - The North East and the South East Trade winds meet here.
 - The ITCZ moves north or south of the Equator with the apparent movement of the sun
- Normally when the tropical eastern South Pacific Ocean experiences high pressure, the tropical eastern Indian Ocean experiences low pressure.
 - Sometimes there is a reversal in the pressure conditions.
 - This periodic change in pressure conditions is known as the Southern Oscillation or S.O. If the pressure differences are negative it would mean late monsoons.
- Normally a cold current flows along the Peruvian Coast.
 - Every two to five years a warm ocean current takes the place of the cold Peruvian current.
 - The changes in the pressure conditions are connected to the El Nino, so this phenomenon is referred to as ENSO (El Nino Southern Oscillations).
- Withdrawal of the monsoon from the country is known as the retreating of the monsoon.
 - The withdrawal is a gradual process. In September the monsoon withdraws from

the north western states and by October from the northern half of the peninsular.

- The monsoon finally withdraws from the country by early December.

7. The main features of the Retreating Monsoon season in India are:

- During October-November the monsoon trough becomes weaker. It is gradually replaced by a high pressure system. The south-west monsoon winds starts withdrawing gradually. By beginning of October the monsoon withdraws completely from northern plains.
- The months of October and November are a period of change from hot rainy season to dry winter conditions. The land is moist, the sky is clear and the temperature rises. Nights are cool and pleasant. Owing to high temperature and humidity, the heat becomes oppressive during daytime and it is called 'October heat'.
- The low pressure conditions get transferred over the Bay of Bengal by the beginning of November. This shift is associated with the occurrence of cyclonic depression, which develops over the Andaman Sea. These cyclones cross the eastern coast and cause heavy rainfall. They are destructive and the deltas of the Godavari, Krishna and Kaveri are often struck by them.

Long Answer:

- Pressure:** In winter the pressure is high over the land and low over the sea. Therefore cold winds blow from land to the sea. In summer the winds blow from sea to land where the pressure is low.
 - Distance from the Sea:** Places near the sea have a moderate climate due to the influence of land and sea breezes. Places far away in the interior have a continental or extreme climate.
 - Ocean Currents:** Ocean currents affect the coastal regions. Cold currents reduce the temperature of the regions they blow along. Warm currents increase the temperature of coastal regions.
 - Relief:** Mountains lying at right angles to the winds cause heavy rainfall whereas



mountains lying parallel to the winds do not cause rain. Windward slopes of mountains cause heavier rain than the leeward slope or the rain shadow area.

- (e) **Latitude:** Due to the spherical shape of the earth the amount of solar energy received by the earth varies according to the latitude. Temperature decreases from the Equator to the poles.
2. (a) The Bay of Bengal Branch first strikes the coast of Bangladesh and then proceeds towards Assam in the first week of June.
- (b) The high mountains cause the monsoon winds to deflect towards the west over the Ganga plains.
- (c) The rainfall keeps on decreasing as the winds move up the Ganga Valley.
- (d) By mid-June, the Arabian Sea Branch meets the Bay of Bengal Branch.
- (e) The monsoon reaches Delhi by 29th June. Uttar Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana and eastern Rajasthan receives rain by the 1st week of July and Himachal Pradesh by mid-July.
3. (a) Heavy rainfall (over 250 cm) is caused on the windward slopes of the Western Ghats.
- (b) The Deccan plateau and parts of Madhya Pradesh lie in the rain shadow area of the Ghats and get less rain.
- (c) The north eastern part of the country receives very heavy rain (Mawsynram receives the highest rainfall in the world).
- (d) Rain in the Ganga plain decreases from the east to the west.
- (e) Rajasthan and parts of Gujarat get scanty rainfall.
4. (a) The Monsoon is often irregular in its arrival and retreat.
- (b) The rainfall is unevenly distributed. Certain regions lying on the windward slopes of the mountains receive heavy rain while those in the rain shadow area receives less.
- (c) The amount of rain varies annually.

- (d) The rainfall is concentrated within the three months of the year.
- (e) The alternation of dry and wet spells vary in intensity. At one place the rainfall is very heavy causing floods while at another place it might have famines.

5. There are great variations in the climate of India.
- (a) Certain regions receive very heavy rainfall like the North-east and the Western Coastal plains while others like the Thar Desert receive scanty rainfall.
- (b) Places like Ladakh and Kashmir are very cold while others like Rajasthan are very hot.
- (c) Coastal regions have an equable climate while places in the interior have an extreme climate.
- (d) Areas on the windward slopes of the mountains receive heavy rainfall, while leeward and rain shadow areas receives less rain.
- (e) Coastal areas with warm currents flowing past it, will be warmer than those areas which have the cold currents flowing close to it.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
2. A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

Case Study Answer:

1. **Answer:**
 - (1) A) South to the North
 - (2) B) Warm days and cold nights
 - (3) D) Tamil Nadu
 - (4) (C) Mahawat, Rabi Crops
2. **Answer:**
 - (1) C) Curvature
 - (2) A) Atmosphere
 - (3) C) Continentality Climate
 - (4) D) The climate of a place



Natural Vegetation and Wild Life

5

Natural vegetation refers to plants which have not been grown by humans. They have grown independently without any human interference. Natural vegetation may also be called virgin vegetation. While plant life is called flora, animal life is known as fauna.

Factors Affecting Natural Vegetation

Land

Land affects the growth of natural vegetation as different kinds of vegetation grow on mountains, plateaus, plains and in deserts. For example, a variety of grasslands and woodlands develop on mountains and uneven terrains.

Soil

Soil determines the growth of different types of vegetation. While mangrove forests grow on wet and marshy deltaic soils, cactus and thorny bushes grow on sandy soils.

Temperature

Temperature affects the growth of natural vegetation. Temperature affects humidity, precipitation and the type of soil. We find the growth of conical-shaped trees at higher altitudes. At much higher altitudes, the vegetation becomes scarce because of extremely cold conditions.

Photoperiod

Photoperiod refers to the period of sunlight which an object or a tree receives. Sunlight varies at different places at different latitudes, different altitudes and in different seasons. Trees grow faster in summer because of the longer duration of sunlight.

Precipitation

Precipitation affects the growth of natural vegetation. Areas receiving high rainfall, such as the equatorial regions, experience rich growth of vegetation. Vegetation cover is sparse in regions such as hot and cold deserts which receive less than 25cm of rainfall.

An Ecosystem

An **ecosystem** is a community of all living beings in a given area. All living organisms of an ecosystem are interdependent. They interact not only with each other but also with their non-living environment.

Very large ecosystems found at various places with flora and fauna adapting to the environment are known as **biomes**. For example, desert regions have their own biomes which are different from the biomes of the equatorial forests.

The interference of humans in the natural environment for their own benefit may lead to the destruction of an ecosystem. Indiscriminate felling of trees and killing of animals have resulted in an imbalance of the ecosystem.

Differences between the evergreen forests and deciduous forests:

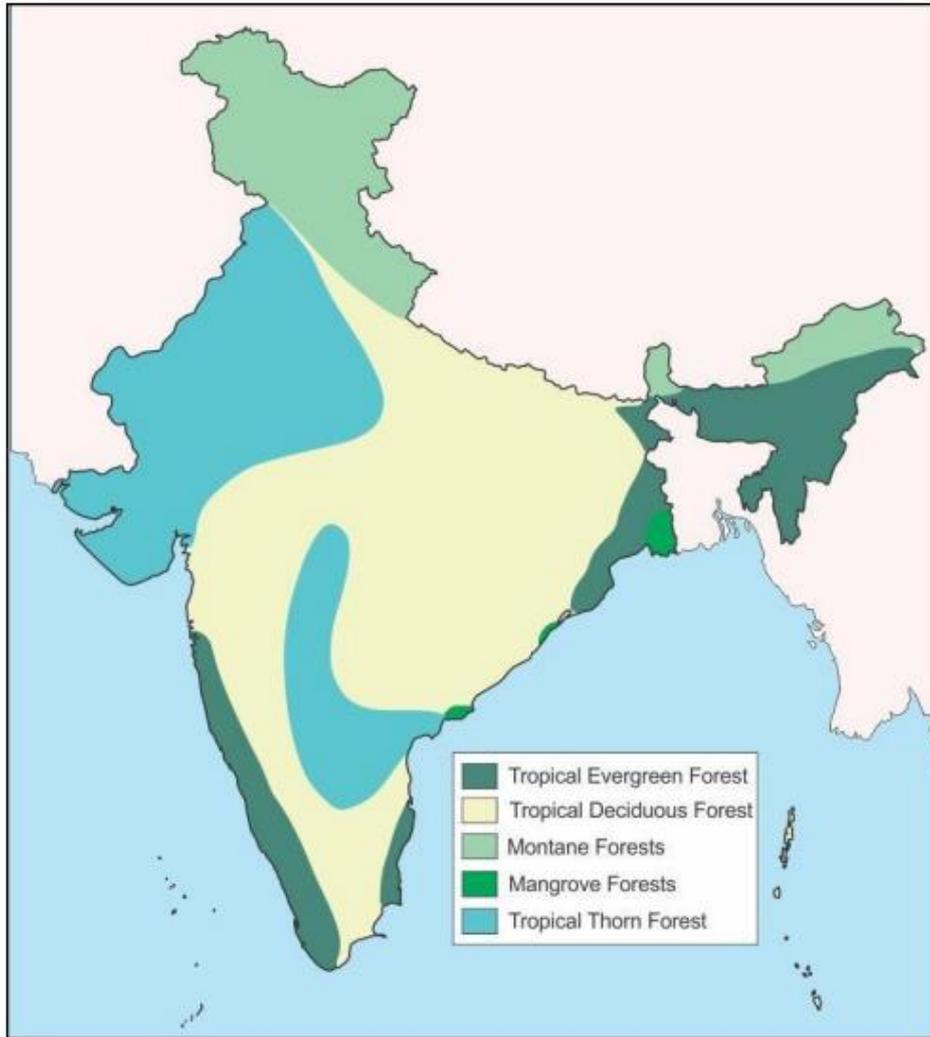
Tropical evergreen forests	Deciduous forests
Tropical evergreen forests are found in regions which receive more than 200 cm of rainfall.	Deciduous forests are found in regions which receive rainfall of 200–70 cm.
The trees do not shed their leaves at the same time as there is no particular season for shedding their leaves.	The trees shed their leaves for about six to eight months during the dry season.
These forests are dense.	These forests are less dense.
These forests are found in the Andaman and Nicobar Islands, Lakshadweep Islands, upper parts of Assam and Tamil Nadu and on the western slopes of the Western Ghats.	These forests are found in the northeastern states, parts of Central India, West Odisha and Chhattisgarh.
Some common species of trees are ebony, mahogany, rosewood and rubber.	Some common species of trees are sandalwood, teak and sal.

The Thorn Forests and Scrub

- This vegetation occurs in regions which receive less than 70 cm of rainfall.
- This kind of vegetation is found in the northwestern parts of India such as the semi-arid regions of Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Uttar Pradesh, and Haryana.
- Main trees are acacias, palms, euphorbia, and cacti.
- These plants are adapted to survive in dry regions. Plants have long roots which go deep into the soil in search of water. Leaves are waxy, small and thick to reduce transpiration.
- Some common animals found in the region are foxes, wolves, rats, tigers, lions, wild asses and camels.

Montane Forests

- Montane forests grow in the mountainous regions. As the temperature decreases with an increase in height, there is a change in the cover of natural vegetation on increasing altitude.
- Between the heights of 1000–2000 meters, wet temperate types of forests are found. Trees have broad leaves such as oak and chestnut.
- Temperate forests are found at 1500–3000 metres. Coniferous trees predominate in this region. Pine, cedar, fir, deodar and spruce are some important trees. These forests are found in the southern slopes of the Himalayan Mountains.
- Temperate grasslands are found at higher altitudes.
- Above 3,600 meters, Alpine vegetation can be found. Silver firs, pines, junipers and birches are some important trees. However, at still higher altitudes, their growth becomes stunted.
- At the highest altitude, mosses and lichens are found.
- Yaks, Tibetan antelopes, Kashmir stags, snow leopards, bears, sheep, goats and the rare red pandas are some common animals which are found in the montane forests.



Map of India showing its natural vegetation

Mangrove Forests

- The mangrove forests are found in the coastal areas which are influenced by tides. The roots of the mangrove trees are submerged in water.
- Mangrove forests are found in the deltaic areas of the Ganga, Mahanadi, Krishna, Godavari and Kaveri rivers.
- In the Ganga Brahmaputra delta, Sundari trees are found. These trees are known for their hard and durable timber.
- Palm, coconut, keora and agar are trees which also grow in the deltaic regions.
- The royal Bengal tiger is a famous animal of the forests. Apart from it, turtles, gharials, crocodiles and snakes are also found.

Wild Life in India

India has a rich wild life. It has more than 89,000 species of animals and more than 1,200 species of birds.

- While elephants are found in the forests of Assam, Karnataka and Kerala, the unique one-horned rhinoceros is found in the swampy and marshy conditions of Assam and West Bengal.
- India is the only country in the world which has both tigers and lions. While the last natural habitat of the Asiatic lions is the Girforests of Gujarat, the royal Bengal tigers are found in the Sundarban delta.
- In the Himalayan regions, many animals such as yaks, snow leopards and wild oxen are found. They have thick fur to survive in the extreme cold climatic conditions.

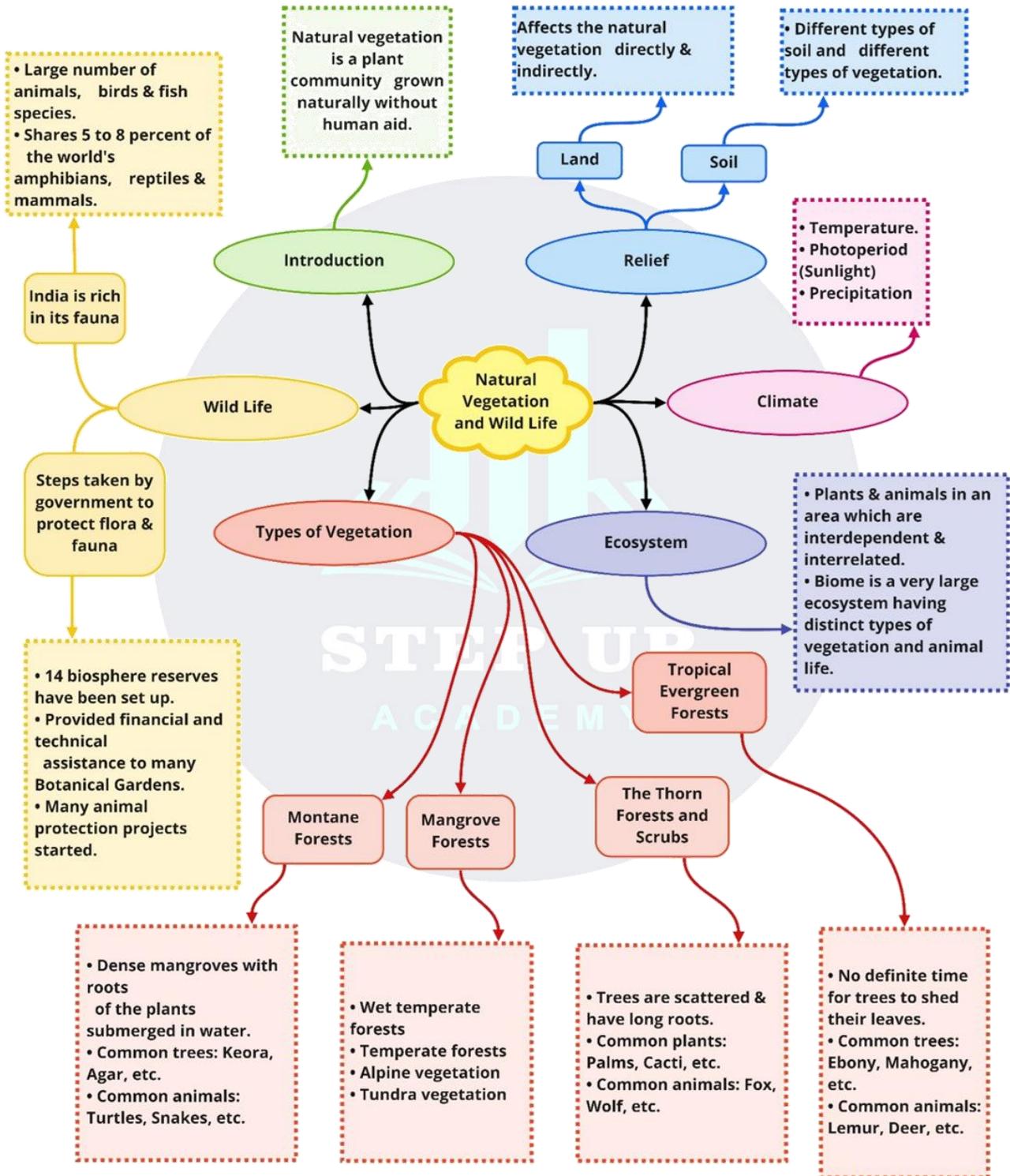
- In the rivers and coastal areas, turtles, crocodiles and gharials are found. In India, more than 2,500 species of fish are found which contribute to nearly 12% of the world stock.
- Varieties of birds are also found in India. Peacocks, ducks, pheasants, parakeets, pigeons, and cranes are some common birds found in India.
- However, many species of animals are endangered. Hunting, poaching and continuous destruction of the forest cover to bring land under cultivation are reasons which have led to the destruction of ecosystems and of wildlife
- The Government of India has taken many steps to preserve the flora and fauna of the country. These are:
- Fourteen biosphere reserves have been set up by the Government to protect the flora and fauna. Biosphere reserves are areas of terrestrial and coastal ecosystems which promote the conservation of plants and animals. Four biosphere reserves—the Sundarbans (West Bengal), Nanda Devi (Uttarakhand), the Gulf of Mannar (Tamil Nadu) and Nilgiris (Kerala, Karnataka and Tamil Nadu) are notable.
- Many botanical gardens have also been set up, and financial and technical assistance is granted to them.
- Many developmental programmes such as Project Rhino and Project Tiger have been introduced.
- India has 490 wildlife sanctuaries and zoological gardens, and 89 national parks to protect its flora and fauna.
- Many awareness programmes have been launched by the Government to make people aware of our fast-depleting plant and animal resources.
- Poaching and hunting have been declared as crimes punishable by law.



One horned rhino are found in Assam.



Class : 9th Geography
Chapter - 5 : Natural Vegetation and Wild Life



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

- The first biosphere of India is:
 - Nilgiri
 - Manas
 - Nanda Devi
 - Sunderban
- Alpine and Tundra vegetation is found at the height of:
 - 6000 meters
 - 9000 meters
 - 4500 meters
 - 4000 meters
- Number of species founded in our country are:
 - 1200
 - 1500
 - 800
 - 600
- The bio-reserve is not included in the world network of biosphere.
 - Dihang-Dibang
 - Manas
 - Nanda Devi
 - Gulf of Mannar
- India has rich heritage of flora and fauna because of:
 - Different types of soil
 - Temperature variation
 - Varying amount of Rainfall
 - Terrain
 - Land forms
 - (i) and (ii)
 - (ii) and (v)
 - Expect (v) all are correct
 - All options are correct.
- Name the natural habitat of Indian lions:
 - Gir forests
 - Tundra Region
 - Thorny bushes and scrubs
 - Evergreen forest
- When was India's first bio-reserve set up?
 - In 1985
 - In 1986
 - In 2001
 - In 1880
- What is the place of India in the world in terms of plant diversity?
 - 10th
 - 8th
 - 9th
 - 6th
- Rubber belongs to which type of given below vegetation:
 - Himalayan
 - Tundra
 - Tidal
 - Tropical Evergreen
- How many national parks are there in India?
 - 86
 - 106
 - 96
 - 74
- Which type of the natural vegetation is found in areas of receiving rainfall between 70 cms to 200 cms.
 - Tropical deciduous Forest
 - Tundra vegetation
 - Himalayan vegetation and forest
 - Thorny forest
- How many species of animals are found in India?
 - 36000
 - 89000
 - 47000
 - 74000
- How many tiger reserves are there in India?
 - 16
 - 12
 - 86
 - 98
- The number of biosphere set up in India are:
 - 12
 - 16
 - 17
 - 36



15. Cinchona trees are found in the areas of rainfall more than
- 100cm
 - 50cm
 - 70cm
 - Less than 50cm

Very Short:

1. What position does India occupy in the world with regards to plant diversity?
2. What position in Asia, does India hold in plant diversity?
3. What is the number of flowering plants in India?
4. What percentage of flowering plants does India contribute to the world's total?
5. What is Natural Vegetation?
6. Give another name for natural vegetation.
7. Why are cultivated crops, fruits and vegetables not considered as natural vegetation?
8. What is the difference between flora and fauna?
9. Why is there a great diversity in flora and fauna?
10. What is the main occupation of people where land is fertile and level?

Short Questions:

1. Give reasons why India's natural vegetation has undergone many changes?
2. Where are mangrove forests found? How are they formed? Which is the most important tree of the Ganga Delta?
3. Name any three medicinal plants of India and mention for what they are used.
4. 'Bird life in India is colorful'. Explain.
5. How many National Parks and Wildlife Sanctuaries have been set up by the government to take care of the natural heritage of India? Why have these been established by the government?
6. A great variety of flora is found in India. Give three geographical factors responsible for this diversification of flora.
7. Write three measures to conserve Ecosystem.

Long Questions:

1. Why are the forests important to man? What has been the result of man's interference with nature?
2. Mention the steps taken by the government to protect the flora and fauna.
3. Describe the features of the Mangrove forests?
4. Give a brief account of the wildlife in India in five points.

STEP UP Answer Key

MCQ:

1. (a) Nilgiri
2. (c) 4500 meters
3. (a) 1200
4. (a) Dihang-Dibang
5. (d) All options are correct.
6. (a) Gir forests
7. (b) In 1986
8. (a) 10th
9. (d) Tropical Evergreen
10. (a) 86
11. (a) Tropical deciduous Forest
12. (b) 89000

13. (a) 16
14. (a) 12
15. (a) 100cm

Very Short Answer:

1. Tenth place.
2. Fourth place.
3. 15,000 flowering plants.
4. 6%
5. Natural vegetation refers to the plants which have grown naturally without human aid and have been left undisturbed by humans for a long time.
6. Virgin vegetation
7. They are grown with the help of man.

8. Flora refers to the plants of a particular region or period. The species of animals are referred to as fauna.
9. Differences in land, soil and climate cause a great diversity in the flora and fauna of a region.
10. Agriculture.

Short Answer:

1. India's natural vegetation has undergone many changes due to the:
 - growing demand for cultivated land
 - development of industries and mining
 - urbanisation and overgrazing of pastures
2. Mangrove forests are found in the coastal areas mainly in the deltas of the rivers. These forests are also known as the tidal forests as they are formed by the tides which bring in mud and silt and accumulate it on the coasts. The most important tree of the Ganga Delta is the Sundari tree which is hard and durable.
3. **Jamun:** The juice has digestive properties. The powder of the seed is used for curing diabetes.
Arjun: The fresh juice of leaves is a cure for earache and regulate blood pressure.
Tulsi Plant: It is used to cure cough and cold.
4. (a) The country has about 2,000 species of birds. Some of the wetlands of India are popular with migratory birds.
(b) Peacocks, pheasants, ducks, parakeets, cranes and pigeons are some of the birds inhabiting the forests and the wetlands of the country.
(c) In places where the desert merges with the sea, like the Rann of Kachchh, flamingoes with their pink plumage, come in large numbers.
5. 103 National Parks and 535 Wildlife Sanctuaries have been set up to take care of the natural heritage of India. These have been established to protect and save the flora and fauna, and maintain the balance of the ecosystem.
6. India has a great variety in flora because of:
 - (a) Varied relief of mountains, plains, plateaus and desert. They have their own different types of flora. In the mountainous regions,

wet temperate forests are found between the height of 1000-2000 m, coniferous forests are found between 1500 and 3000 m. Trees like the pine, deodar, spruce and cedar are found. In regions of less rainfall (less than 70 cm) and in semi-arid regions the vegetation consists of acacias, palms and cacti.

- (b) In areas of heavy rainfall like the Western Ghats, which receive more than 200 cm of rainfall, tropical evergreen forests are found.
- (c) Different types of terrain and soil - like alluvial, black, red, laterite support different types of vegetation e.g., black soil is good for growing cotton.

7. Ecosystem can be conserved by:

- (a) avoiding cutting of trees indiscriminately.
- (b) checking rapid growth of population. Otherwise overcrowding will result in imbalances and the pollution of the environment.
- (c) checking the smoke from the chimneys and vehicles. Waste from farms, factories and cities should be scientifically treated so that we can save our ecosystem and preserve it for the benefit of mankind.

Long Answer:

1. The importance of forests are as follows:

- Forests increase the quality of environment.
- They modify the climate.
- They control the erosion of the soil.
- Control soil erosion.
- Regulate stream flow.
- They support many industries and thus provide a livelihood for the rural population.
- Forests provide humus to the soil and shelter to the wildlife.

The interference of man with nature has resulted in the extinction of many plants and animals.

2. (a) Eighteen biosphere reserves have been set up for the protection of the flora and fauna.
(b) Financial and technical assistance is provided to many Botanical Gardens since 1992.



(c) Many eco-developmental projects have been introduced e.g., Project Tiger, Project Rhino, Project Great Indian Bustard etc.

(d) 103 National Parks and 535 Wildlife Sanctuaries set up to take care of the natural heritage.

(e) Setting up of Zoological gardens.

3. Mangrove forests are found in the coastal regions which are affected by tides.

Dense mangroves are the common varieties of trees.

The roots of the plants are submerged in water and can be seen only during low tide.

The Sundari trees found in the Ganga-Brahmaputra delta provide durable hard timber.

Palm, coconut, keora, agar also grow in some parts of the delta.

Royal Bengal Tiger is the famous animal in these forests.

4. (a) India is rich in its wildlife. It has about 90,000 animal species, about 2000 species of birds and about 2546 species of fish.

(b) Elephants are found in the hot wet forests of Assam, Karnataka and Kerala. One-horned rhinoceros live in swampy and marshy lands of Assam and North-west Bengal.

(c) Rann of Kutch and Thar desert are habitat of wild asses and camels. Lions are found in Gir hills of Gujarat and Tigers in the Sundarbans of West Bengal.

(id) The Himalayas harbour a wide wild variety of animals, e.g., yaks, snow-leopards, bear, Tibetan antelope [bharal (blue sheep), musk-deer, kiang (Tibetan wild ass)], etc.

(e) In rivers, lakes and coastal areas, turtles, crocodiles and gharials are found.



Population | 6

People are regarded as the greatest assets of the country. This is because people by putting in their labour and expertise play an important part in the development of the economy and of society. For example, minerals such as coal and iron ore become important only when they are put to use by humans. The census of India gives us information about the total population and its various other aspects.

Population Size and Distribution

Population Size

- On March 2001, India's population was 1,028 million which is about 16.7% of the world population.
- Uttar Pradesh, with a population of 166 million, is the most populous state of India. The state accounts for 16% of the total population of the country.
- Sikkim has a population of about 0.5 million people, and Lakshadweep has only 60,000 people.
- It is important to note that nearly half of the population of India lives in five states—Uttar Pradesh, Maharashtra, Bihar, West Bengal and Andhra Pradesh.
- Rajasthan, the largest state in India, has only 5.5% of the total population of the country.

Population Density

- Population density refers to the number of persons occupying or living in per unit of area. India is one of the highly densely populated countries.
- In 2001, the population density of India was 324 persons/sq km.
- While the population density was as high as 904 persons/sq km in West Bengal, it was as low as 13 persons/sq km in Arunachal Pradesh.
- States which have rugged land and unfavorable climatic conditions are sparsely populated. On the contrary, flat plains with moderate climate have high density of population.
- While Sikkim and Mizoram are sparsely populated, West Bengal and Bihar are densely populated.
- Assam and parts of Peninsular India are moderately populated. This is due to low rainfall, less fertile soil and the dissected and rocky nature of the terrain.
- In terms of geographical densities, the North Indian Plains and Kerala in the south have high density of population because of the availability of flat land, fertile soil and adequate rainfall.

Population Growth and Processes of Population Change

Population Growth

- Growth of population refers to the change in the population of the country at a given point of time. Such a change can be expressed either in absolute number or in percentage.
- The absolute number or an increase in population is expressed by subtracting the earlier population of the country from the later population.



- The rate of population increase is expressed in percentage of population. When the population grows at a steady pace per year, it is known as annual growth rate. India's population is steadily increasing. It grew from 361 million people in 1951 to 1,028 million in 2001.
- The declining growth rate of the country is a positive indicator of the efforts taken to control births.

Processes of Population Change

Three main processes of change of population are

Birth Rate

Birth rate is the number of live births per thousand persons in a year. If the birth rate is higher than the death rate, then the population of the country is set to increase.

Death Rate

Death rate is the number of deaths per thousand persons in a year. One of the main reasons for the population growth of India is the decline in the death rate.

Migration

- Migration can be the movement of people across regions and territories. Internal migration refers to migration within the country, while international migration refers to migration between countries.
- Internal migration does not change the population of the country but impacts the density of population in a region or a state.
- In India, rural people migrate to urban cities in search of employment opportunities. Migration changes the size of population and the composition of rural and urban populations.

Age Composition

The age composition of the population refers to the number of people in different age groups in a country. The population of a country is divided into three categories. These are

Children (below 15 years)

They are regarded as economically unproductive and have to be provided with education, food and clothing.

Working Age (15–59 years)

People belonging to this age group are considered productive as they form part of the working population of the country.

Aged (above 59 years)

People belonging to this age group are generally retired though sometimes they also can be productive. They may be working voluntarily, but they are not counted among the young energetic force.

Sex Ratio

Sex ratio is the number of females per 1000 males in the population.

Literacy Rates

The census of 2001 outlined that a person aged above 7 years is regarded as literate if he can read and write in any language.

The literacy rate of the country was 64.84% in 2001. It was 75.26% for men and 53.67% for women.

Occupational Structure

- The distribution of population according to different types of occupations is called the occupational structure.
- Occupations in any country are generally divided on the basis of primary activities, secondary activities and tertiary activities.

- **Primary activities** include agriculture, mining, fishing and forestry.
- **Secondary activities** include the processing of minerals, manufacturing industries and construction.
- **Tertiary activities** include the provision of various services such as banking, transport and commerce.
- We find that in underdeveloped and developing nations, people are mostly engaged in primary activities as their main occupations are agriculture and fishing.
- In developed nations, people are engaged in secondary activities as they work mostly in industries.
- If we look at the occupational structure of India, we find that 64% of its population is engaged in agriculture, while 13% to 20% of the people are engaged in secondary and tertiary activities. This shows that India is still a developing nation.

Health

Health is an important component of population composition. In India, because of the improvement in public health, prevention of infectious diseases and modern medical practices have reduced the death rate in the country. However, still many people, especially children, suffer from malnutrition. Safe drinking water and proper sanitation facilities are available to only one-third of the population of the country.

Adolescent Population

- People aged between 10 and 19 years are known as adolescents. They comprise one-fifth of the Indian population.
- They are an important resource for the country. However, many adolescents lack nutritious food.
- The problem becomes acute if the adolescents are girls. Most of them suffer from anaemia.
- It is important to provide adolescents with a proper balanced and nutritious diet.

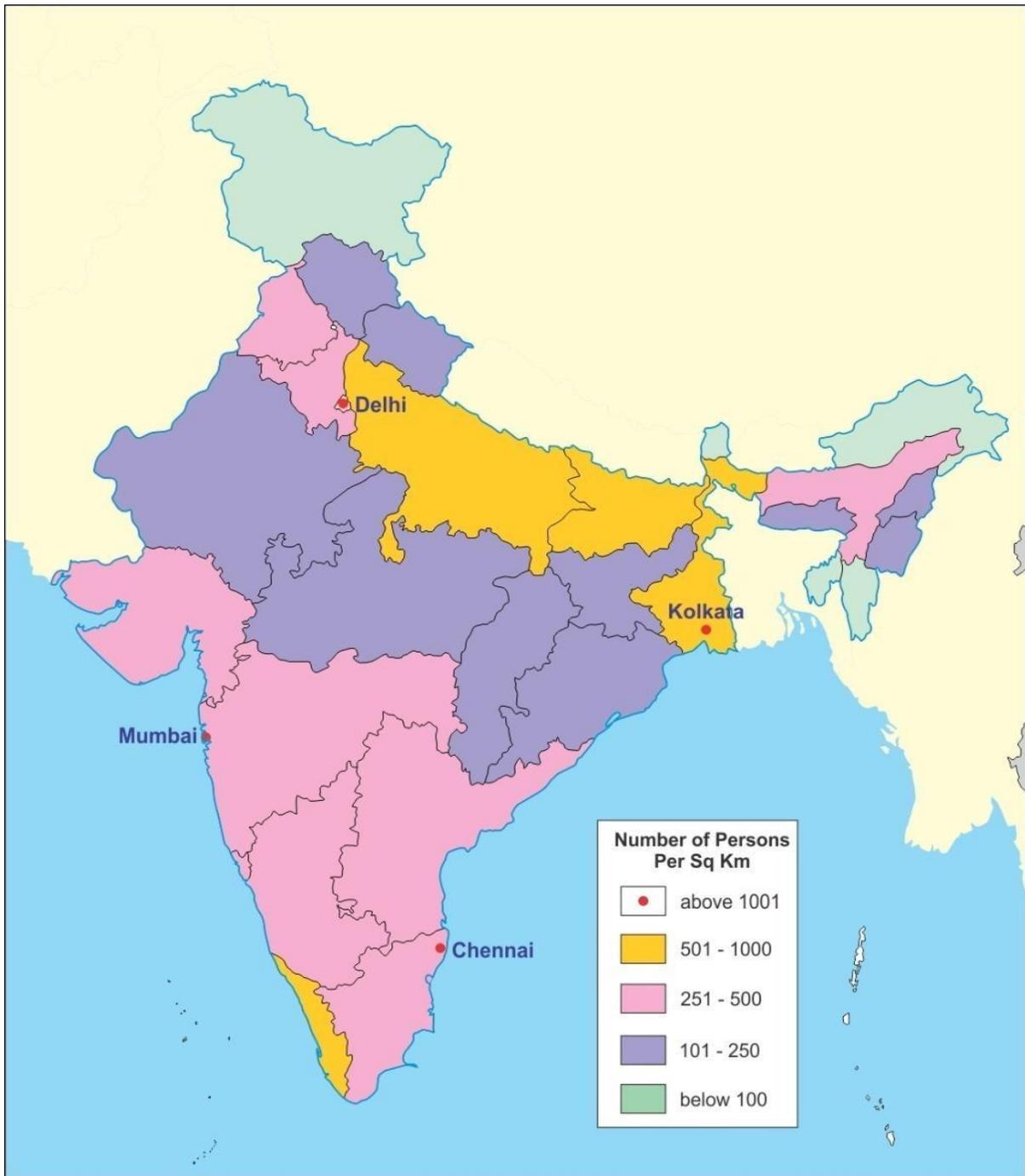
National Population Policy

The Government of India started a comprehensive Family Planning Programme in 1952 in order to improve the health and welfare of the people. The National Population Policy was formulated in 2000 with the following aims:

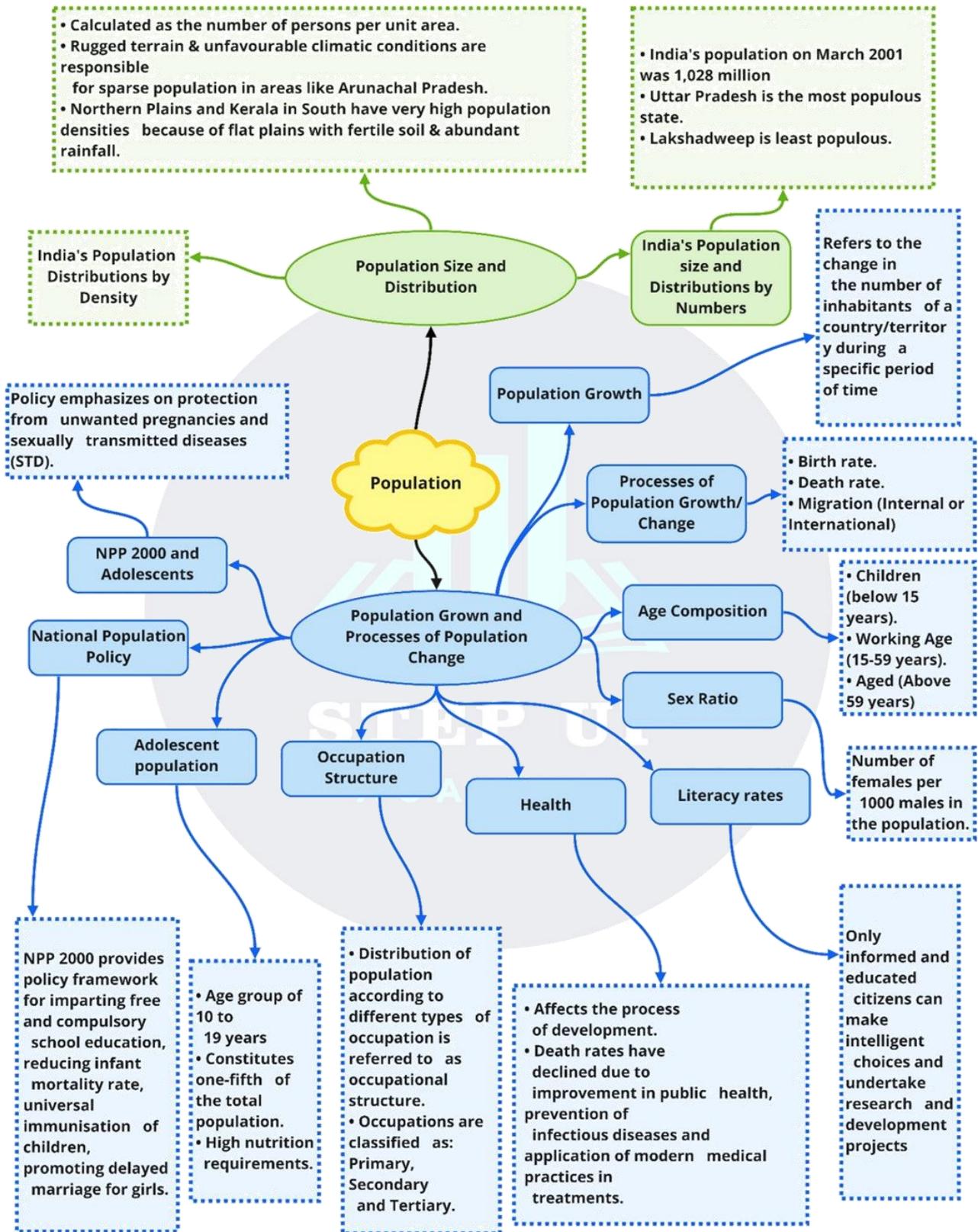
- To formulate policies for imparting free and compulsory education to children up to 14 years of age
- To make policies to reduce infant mortality rates
- To undertake programmes to achieve the universal immunisation of children in India
- To promote delayed marriage for girls
- To stress on the improvement of lives of adolescents by protecting them from unwanted pregnancies and sexually transmitted diseases
- To provide adolescents with proper food supplements



Map showing Population Density in India



Class : 9th Geography
Chapter - 6 : Population





Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

- Which India state has lowest density of population:
(a) Punjab
(b) Chennai
(c) West Bengal
(d) Arunachal Pradesh
- has the highest literacy rate:
(a) Kerala
(b) Tamil Nadu
(c) Bangalore
(d) Uttar Pradesh
- How much portion of population is engaged in secondary activities?
(a) 12%
(b) 10%
(c) 18%
(d) 16%
- What is the literacy rate in Gujarat according to Censuses 2001?
(a) 68.24%
(b) 69.97%
(c) 63.25%
(d) 65.93%
- The greatest literacy rate, among the four given states is of:
(a) Jharkhand
(b) Orissa
(c) Chhattisgarh
(d) Uttar Pradesh
- Country's human resources are called.
(a) Density
(b) Man-power
(c) Census
(d) Age composition
- India is the most populated country in the world.
(a) Fifth
(b) First
(c) Second
(d) Third
- is the state where the density of the population is 100 to 200 persons per sq. km.
(a) Madhya Pradesh
(b) Rajasthan
(c) West Bengal
(d) Uttar Pradesh
- Name the union territory which has highest population density:
(a) Delhi
(b) Chandigarh
(c) Punjab
(d) Port Blair
- Which Indian state has highest density of population:
(a) Rajasthan
(b) Madhya Pradesh
(c) West Bengal
(d) Haryana
- What was India's population in 1951?
(a) 361 million
(b) 265 million
(c) 295 million
(d) 461 million
- What is the literacy rate in India?
(a) 94%
(b) 40%
(c) Nearly 100%
(d) 64-84%
- A large proportion of children in a population is result of:
(a) High birth rate
(b) High life expectancy
(c) High death rate
(d) More married couple
- According to census 2001, a literate person is one who:
(a) Can read and write his/her name
(b) Can write his/her name
(c) is 7 years old and can read, and write any language with understanding
(d) Knows the 3 'Rs'.

15. The magnitude of population refers to:
- The total population of an area
 - The number of person added each year
 - The rate at which the population increases
 - The number of females per thousand males

Very Short:

- Why are people considered an important part of society?
- 'Population is the pivotal element in social studies. How?
- After how many years is the census held?
- What do you mean by size and distribution of population?
- Mention the different components of population quality.
- According to the 2011 census which was the most populous state of India?
- Name the biggest Indian state in terms of area.
- How is the density of population calculated?
- What position does India hold in the world with regard to its population density?
- What was the population density of India in the year 2011?

Short Questions:

- What are the three major issues inculcate through the census?

- Define census. What is the importance of the study of population?
- Describe the distribution of population in India.
- 'What were the causes of uneven population in India?
- How does migration play an important role in population growth? Explain the 'pull' and 'push' factors of migration?
- What has been the impact of urbanisation in India? Mention three features.
- Why is 'Age Composition' considered as one of the most basic characteristics of population? Explain.

Long Questions:

- Why is population very important in a country?
- Define the following terms:
- What is meant by annual growth rate of population? Why is even low annual growth rate of population considered not good for India?
- Describe the classification of occupational structure. How does occupational structure indicate economic development of a country?
- What are the factors affecting health status of people of India? What are the improvements made in the health status of people of India?

STEP UP ACADEMY Answer Key

MCQ:

- (d) Arunachal Pradesh
- (a) Kerala
- (a) 12%
- (b) 69.97%
- (c) Chhattisgarh
- (c) Man-power
- (c) Second
- (a) Madhya Pradesh
- (d) Delhi
- (c) West Bengal
- (a) 361 million
- (d) 64-84%
- (a) High birth rate
- (c) Is 7 years old and can read, and write any language with understanding
- (b) The number of person added each year

Very Short Answer:

- People are considered an important part of society as they develop the economy and the society, make and use resources. People are both producers and consumers of the resources.
- Population is the point of reference from which all other elements are observed and from which they derive meaning and significance.
- After 10 years.

7. The impact of urbanisation in India:

- (a) Rapid urbanisation has led to lack of facilities like housing, sanitation, water, power and education, etc. Slums and other social tensions are created. Crime rate has increased.
- (b) It has put heavy pressure on transport. Heavy rush on roads creates transport problems like traffic jams, accidents, etc. High urbanisation has created congestion and pollution.
- (c) Rural areas are being neglected.

Long Answer:

1.
 - (a) The people are important to develop the economy and society.
 - (b) The people make and use the resources and are themselves resources with varying quality.
 - (c) It is the point of reference from which all other elements observed and from which they derive significance and meaning. 'Resources', 'calamities' and 'disasters' are all meaningful only in relation to human beings.
 - (d) Their numbers, distributions, growth and characteristics or qualities provide the basic background for understanding and appreciating all aspects of the environment.
 - (e) Human beings are producers and consumers of earth's resources. Therefore, it is very important to know how many people are there in a country, where do they live, how and why are their numbers increasing and what are their characteristics.
2.
 - (a) **Population.** The total number of people living in a country at a given point of time.
 - (b) **Census.** Process of collection, compilation and publication of information relating to different aspects of people living in a country at a specific point of time.
 - (c) **Million plus cities/Mega Cities.** Cities with a population of one million and above. There are 53 million plus cities in India, e.g. Delhi, Chennai, Mumbai, Bengaluru.
 - (d) **Urban Agglomeration.** Around the core of each town or city, cluster of urban

settlements have developed which are linked to the economy of the country. They are known as urban agglomeration. They are extension of cities but are not covered by defined municipal limits.

- (e) **Sex Ratio.** Number of females per thousand males in the population.

3. It is the percentage increase in the growth of population per year. The rate or pace of population increase is studied in per cent per year. Rate of increase of 2% per annum means that in a given year, there was an increase of two persons for every 100 persons in the base population. This is referred as annual growth rate. India's population has been steadily increasing from 361 million in 1951 to 1210 million in 2011.

It is essential to realize that India has a very large population. When a low annual rate is applied to a large population, it becomes a very high absolute number. When more than a billion people increase even at a lower rate, the total numbers being added becomes very large.

4. It is generally classified into primary, secondary and tertiary activities.
 - Primary activities include agriculture, animal husbandry, forestry, fishing, mining, quarrying etc.
 - Secondary activities include manufacturing industry, building and construction work etc.
 - Tertiary activities include transport, communications, commerce, administration and other services.
 - Developed nations have a high proportion of people in secondary and tertiary activities because it is more productive and profitable.
 - Developing countries tend to have a higher proportion of their workforce engaged in primary activities because these are not as productive and profitable as the other sectors.
 - In India, about 64% of the population is engaged only in agriculture. The proportion of population dependent on
 - secondary and tertiary sectors is about 13 to 20% respectively.



5. The factors affecting health status of people of India are as follows.

- (a) The per capita calorie consumption is much below the recommended levels in India and malnutrition affects a large percentage of population.
- (b) Safe drinking water and basic sanitation amenities are available to only 1/3rd of the rural population.

The improvements made in the health status of people of India are.

- (a) Death rates have declined from 25 per 1000 population in 1951 to 7.2 per 1000 in 2011.
- (b) Life expectancy at birth has increased from 36.7 years in 1951 to 67.9 years in 2012.
- (c) The substantial improvement is the result of many factors including improvement in public health, prevention of infectious diseases and application of modern medical practices in diagnosis and treatment of ailments.



HISTORY

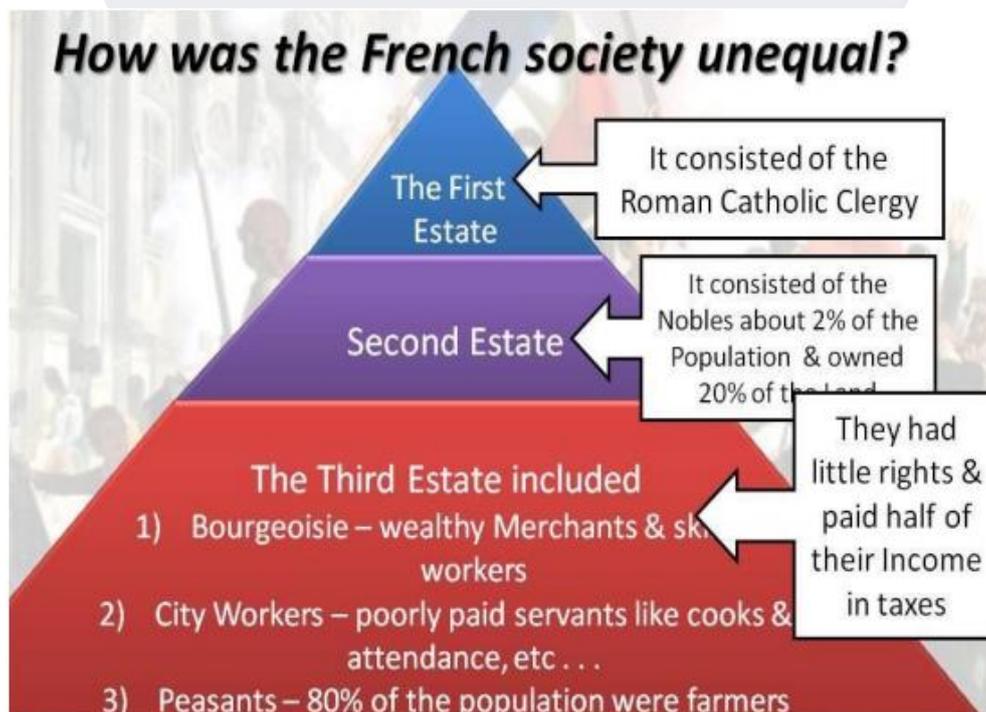
The French Revolution | 1

The French Revolution is regarded as a remarkable event in the history of the world. The storming of the Bastille prison on 14 July 1789 marked the beginning of the French Revolution.

Causes of the French Revolution

Inequalities in French Society

- French society was divided into three estates. The first estate consisted of the clergymen, the second estate consisted of the nobles and the third estate consisted of the common people most of whom were peasants.
- While the peasants comprised about 90% of the French population, only few owned lands. 60% of the land was owned by the members of the first two estates.
- One of the many reasons why the revolution broke out was because only the members of the third estate paid taxes to the state. The members of the first and second estates were exempted from paying any taxes to the king.
- The nobility and the clergy enjoyed many privileges in French society. The nobles extracted feudal dues from the peasants. The latter were also compelled to provide services to the noblemen by working in his fields and house. They also had to serve in the army.
- The church also collected religious taxes from the people known as '**tithes**'. The members of the third estate had to pay direct tax to the state known as '**taille**'. Indirect taxes were imposed on tobacco, salt and many other everyday items. Thus, the third estate was seething with financial difficulties.





The Rise of the Middle Class

- There was the rise and emergence of many social groups in France in the eighteenth century. They were traders, businessmen, lawyers and teachers. The traders and businessmen had acquired wealth through overseas trade.
- The administrative officials, lawyers and teachers were educated and believed that no group should be given special privileges merely on the basis of birth. They believed that the members of the first two estates should also pay taxes to the state.
- The middle class in France was inspired by the writings of social thinkers and philosophers. John Locke and Jean Jacques Rousseau were two such thinkers who rejected the idea of the divine right of the king. Rousseau propounded that the Government should be based on a social contract drawn between the people and the Government.
- These ideas of philosophers were discussed everywhere—in coffee shops and in salons—and spread among the common people. Inspired by these ideas, people began to oppose the special privileges enjoyed by the members of the first and second estates.
- The educated youth in France were inspired by the rights of liberty and equality which were ensued in the American Revolution.
- When the people learned that the king was planning to further increase taxes, they rose in revolt.

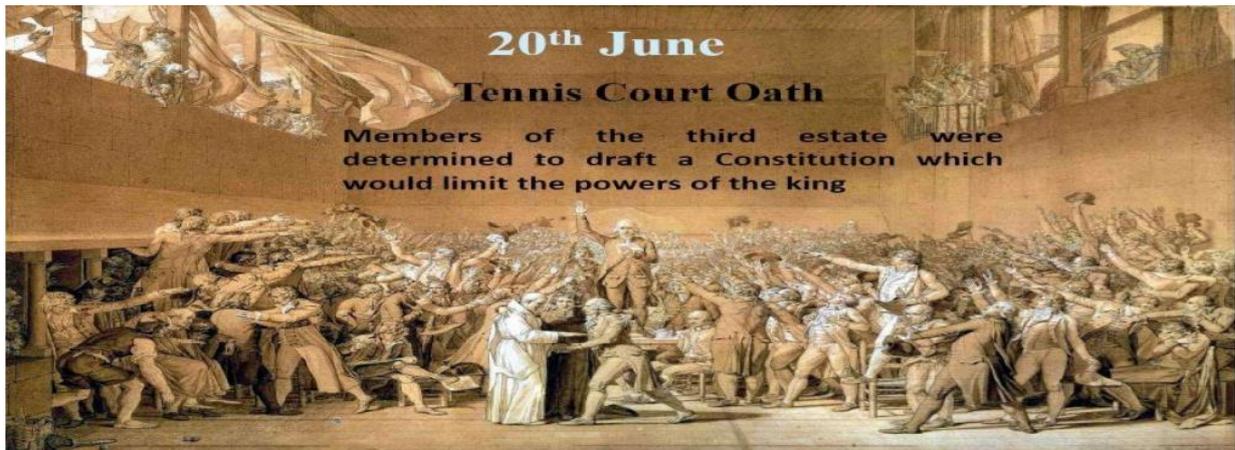
The Revolt Breaks

- Wars had drained the French treasury. The state was under heavy debt and had to pay hefty interests to creditors. To improve the finances of the state, the king decided to increase the taxes levied on people.
- When the king called the meeting of an assembly of the Estates Generals to pass proposals of new taxes, the members of the third estate walked out from the meeting demanding that every person in the Assembly should have one vote contrary to the existing practice of one estate having one vote.
- The members of the third estate assembled in the indoor tennis court on 20 June 1789 determined to draft a constitution which would limit the powers of the king.



Storming the prison of Bastilles

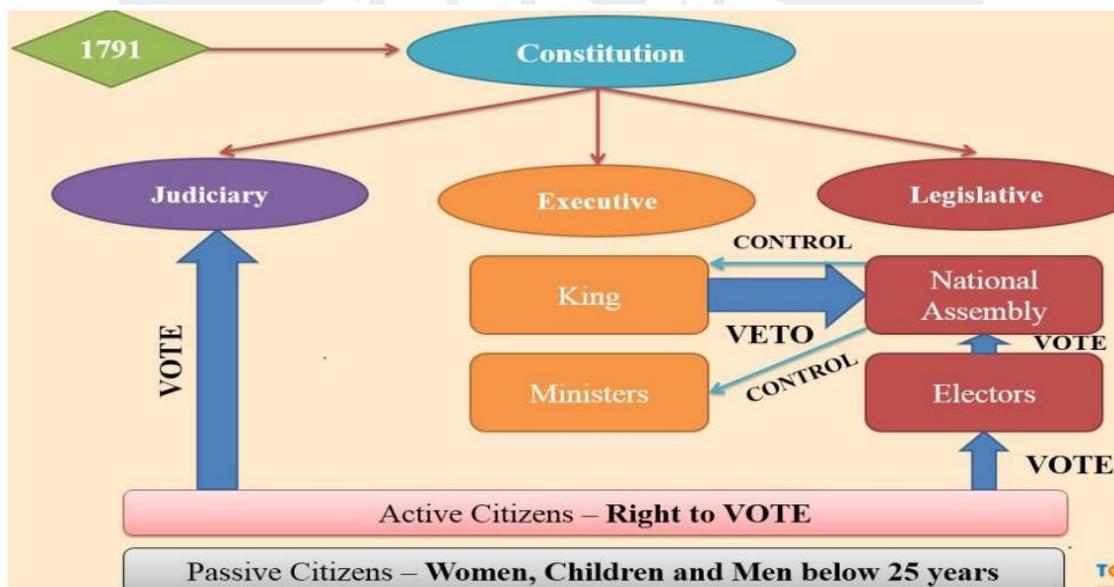
- During this time, the prices of bread rose in France and bakers began to hoard supplies. Agitated by the Unavailability of bread, people including women stormed into shops. When the king ordered his troops to move into Paris, an agitated crowd stormed into the prison of Bastilles and liberated its prisoners.



- As the number of revolts began to grow, the French monarch recognised the French Assembly. His powers could now be checked by the Constitution.

France Becomes a Constitutional Monarchy

- The National Assembly consisting of the members of the third estate drafted the Constitution which limited the powers of the king, and the executive, legislative and judicial powers were assigned to different institutions.
- The National Assembly had the powers to frame laws for the country. The members of the National Assembly were elected by the body of electorates. This body of electorates was elected by citizens who paid taxes to the Government who were termed active citizens. Other men and all women had no voting rights.
- The Constitution of France guaranteed the right to life, freedom of speech, freedom of opinion and equality before law.



Abolition of Monarchy in France

- Because the powers of King Louis XVI were reduced, he asked for help from the Prussian and Austrian monarchies. However, the revolutionaries in France formed a large army and declared a war against Prussia and Austria.



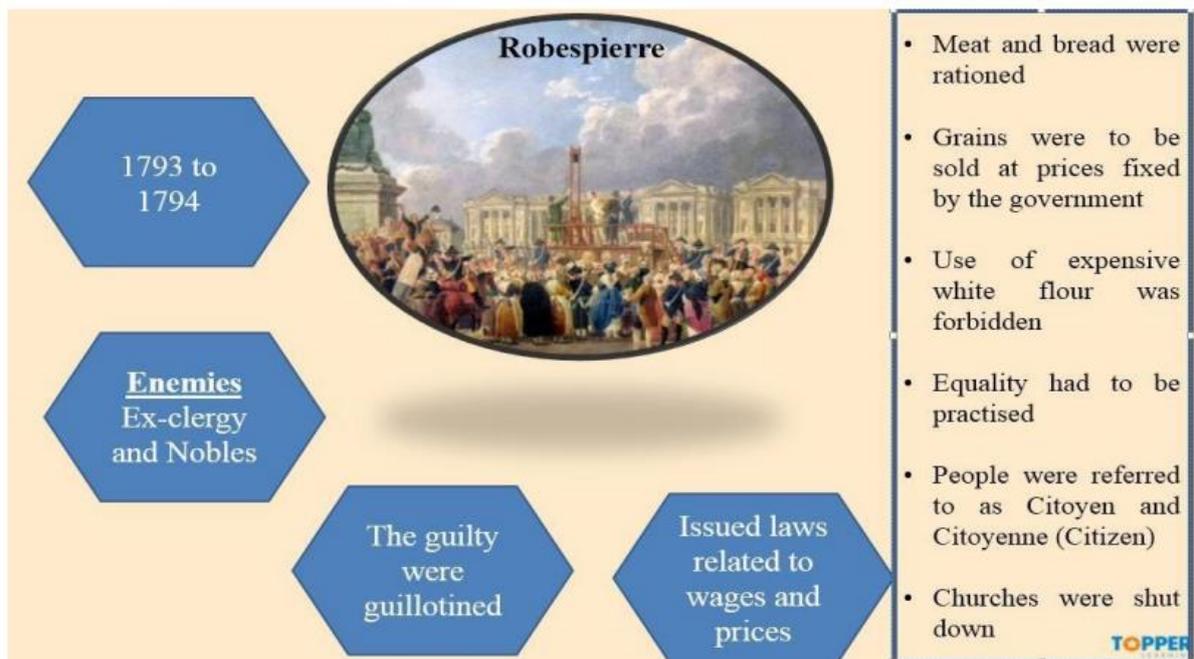
- The Jacobin Club in France was formed by the revolutionary forces of the country. It included small shopkeepers, watch makers, pastry cooks, printers, daily wage earners and servants.
- In 1792, when the supplies of bread reduced, the Jacobins along with people stormed the Tuileries Palace and imprisoned the royal family of France.
- This development led to the changes in the Constitution. Elections were held and everyone more than 21 years of age was given the right to vote. Monarchy was abolished and France became a republic.
- King Louis XVI was executed publicly on 21 January 1793 on the charges of treason. His queen, Mary Antoinette was also executed later.

Reign of Terror

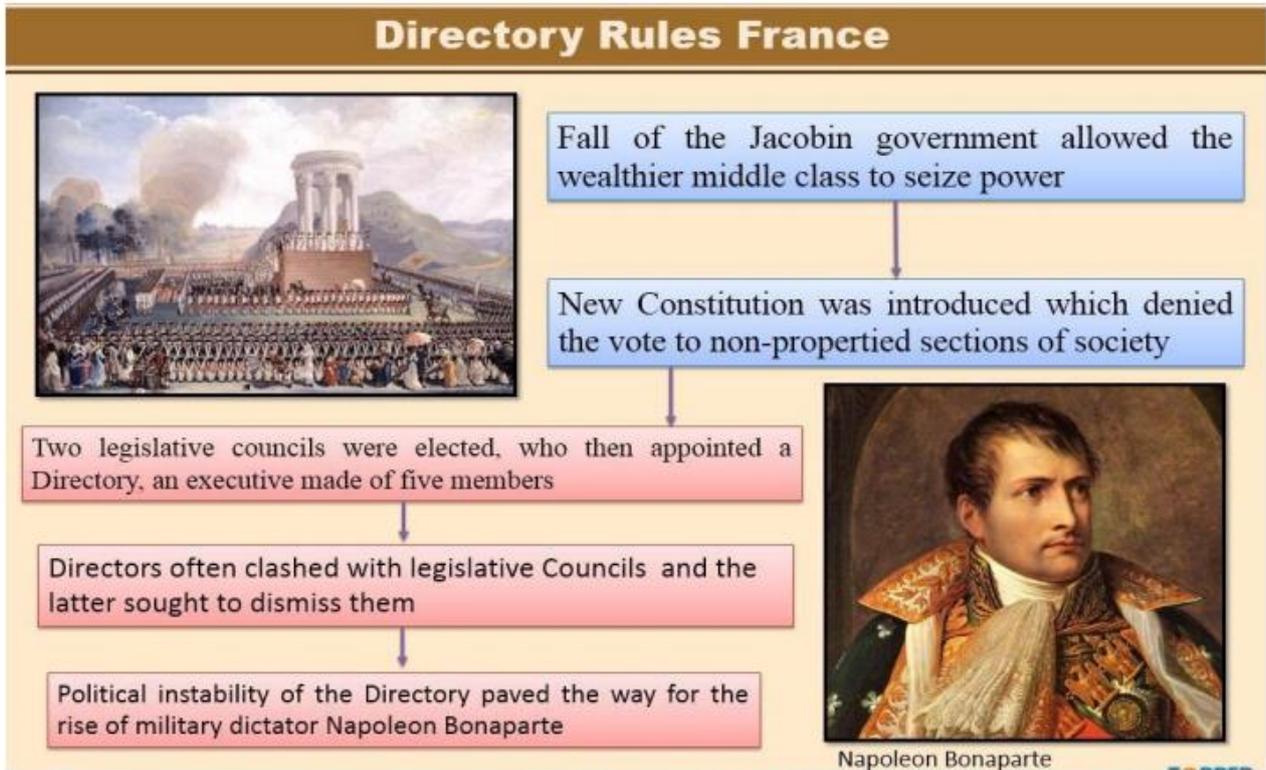
- The period from 1793 to 1794 is called the Reign of Terror. Robespierre, the head of the Jacobin Club, followed the policy of severe control and punishment. Clergymen, nobles and people who were considered enemies to the republic were guillotined. He even ordered the killing of his own party members who did not agree to his methods and ways.
- Robespierre's government put a definite limit on the wages and the prices of essential goods. Meat and bread were rationed. Peasants were also forced to sell grains at a price fixed by the Government. Churches were closed.
- Robespierre followed his policies so strictly that even his supporters turned against him. Finally, he was convicted by a court in July 1794 and was guillotined.
- After the fall the Jacobin Government, the wealthier middle class took the power into their own hands. They introduced a constitution which did not give voting rights to the non-propertied class.



Robespierre



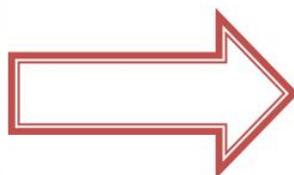
The period from 1793 to 1794 is referred to as the Reign of Terror. Robespierre followed a policy of severe control and punishment. However, Robespierre was himself sent to the guillotine in July 1794



A Directory, an executive council was appointed consisting of five members. This executive council frequently clashed with the legislative councils. This political instability paved a way for the rise of military dictatorship under Napoleon Bonaparte.

Women’s Participation in the Revolution

- Women were active participants in the French Revolution. Women in France were not empowered.
- Most of the women of the third estate had to work to earn their livelihood. They worked as seamstresses, sold flowers and vegetables or worked as domestic servants in the houses of wealthy families.
- Women started their own clubs in order to raise their own voices. A famous women’s club was the Society of Revolutionary Republican Women. This club demanded that women be given the same political rights as men. Women till now had no right to vote.
- In the beginning, many laws were implemented to improve the condition of women in French society. Schooling was made compulsory for all girls. Fathers could no longer marry off their daughters without obtaining their consent. Divorce was made legal, and women began to be trained for various jobs.



Olympe de Gouges was politically active in revolutionary France. She protested against the Constitution and the Declaration of Rights of Man and Citizen because they did not even give basic political rights to women. Thus, in 1791, she wrote a Declaration of the Rights of Woman and Citizen. In 1793, Olympe de Gouges criticised the Jacobin government for forcibly closing down women’s clubs. She was later charged with treason and executed.

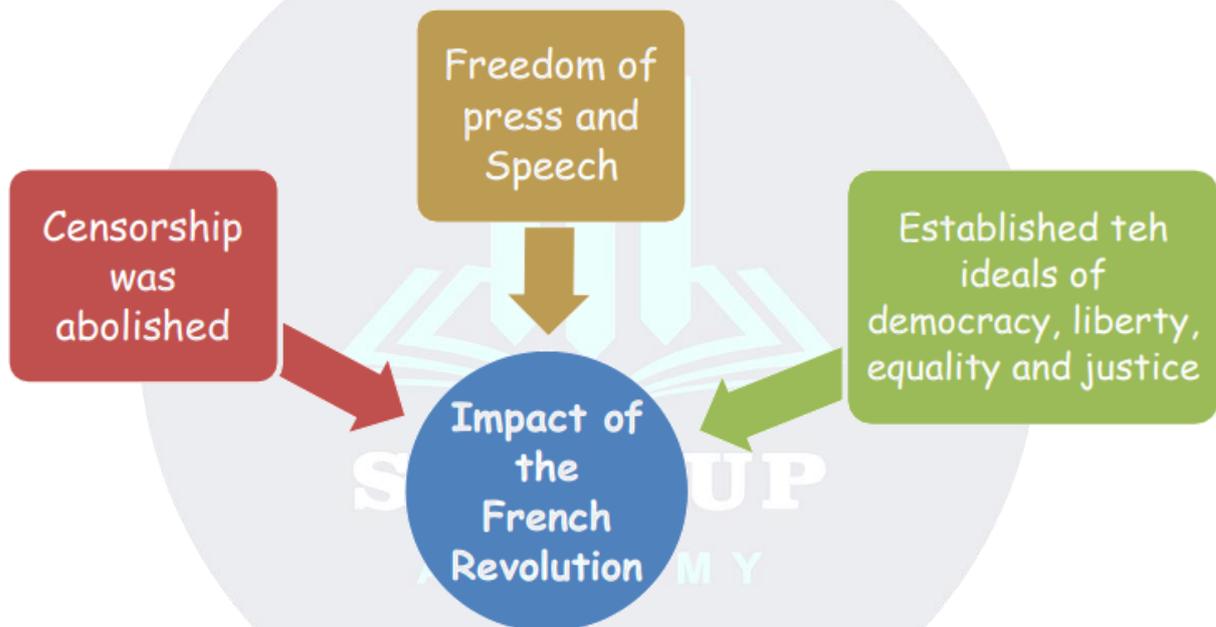


- During the Reign of Terror, many laws were issued which ordered the closing of women's clubs. Many women were tried and guillotined.
- Women's struggle to demand equal voting rights however continued. The French women were finally granted voting rights in 1946.

The Abolition of Slavery

- One of the important reforms of the Jacobin Club was the abolition of slavery in French colonies.
- Slaves were brought from Africa by the Europeans and were then sold to plantation owners. Because of the employment of slaves in the colonies, the growing demands for sugar, coffee and indigo by the European markets were met.
- The system of slavery was hardly criticised in France. This was because slaves were important in the plantations.
- After being banned by the Jacobins, slavery was again reintroduced by Napoleon Bonaparte.

The Impact of the French Revolution

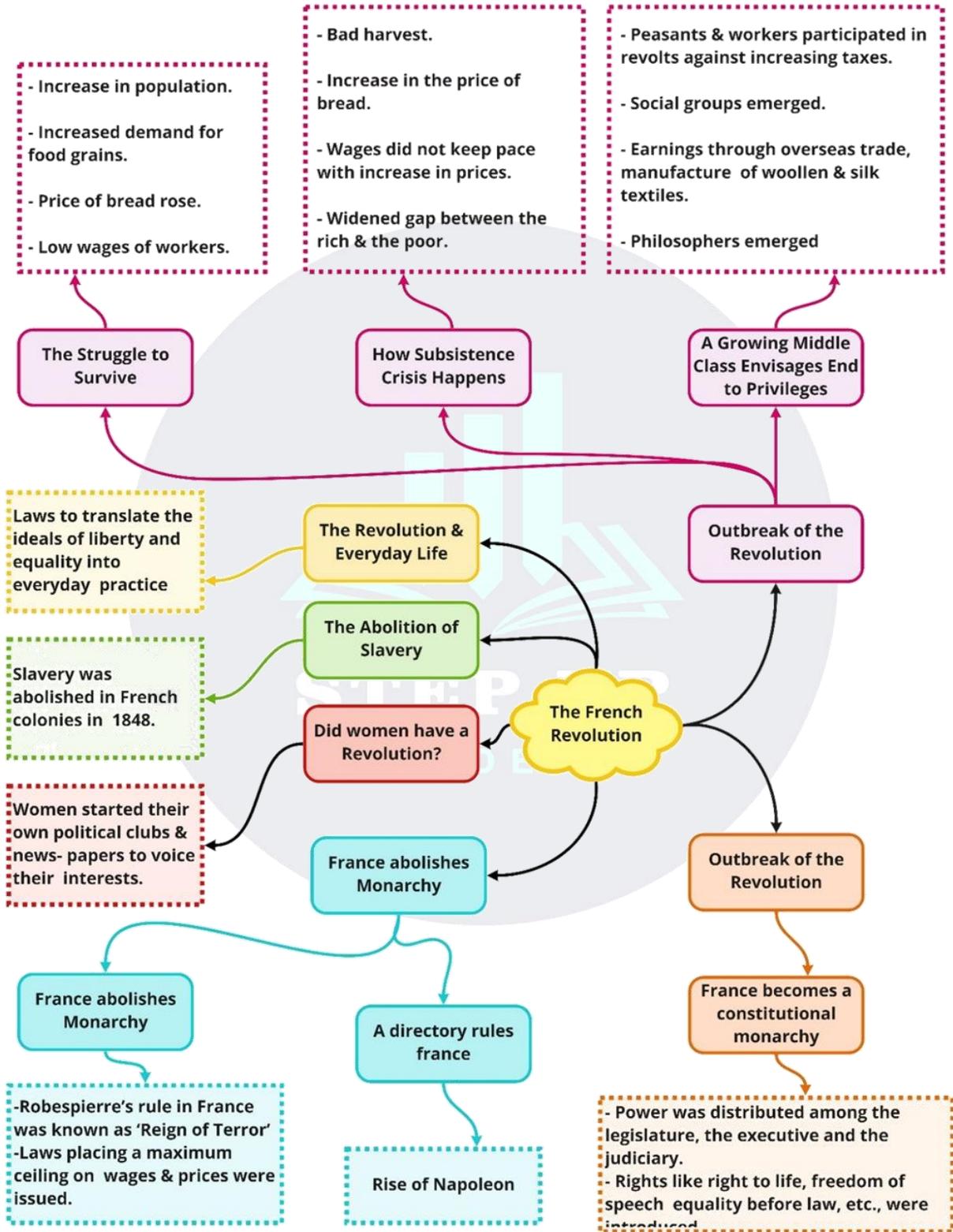


- The political instability in France paved a way for the rise of military dictatorship under Napoleon Bonaparte.
- He along with his troops carried on the ideas of the French Revolution in Europe. He introduced laws such as protection of private property and the uniform systems of weights and measurements.
- Many of his measures that carried the revolutionary ideas of liberty and modern laws to other parts of Europe had an impact on people long after Napoleon had left.
- However, he also placed his successors on the throne of the countries which he invaded. He thus came to be regarded as an invader.
- The ideas of liberty, equality and democratic rights were the greatest gifts of the French Revolution to the world.
- In India, Tipu Sultan and Raja Ram Mohan Roy keenly observed the French Revolution and exalted the ideals of the French Revolution.



Napoleon Bonaparte

Class : 9th Social Studies (History)
Chapter-1: The French Revolution





Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

1. Which of the following state of French society paid all the taxes?
 - (a) 1st estate
 - (b) 2nd estate
 - (c) 3rd estate
 - (d) All a, b and c
2. The tax that was charged by the church from the peasants:
 - (a) Tithes
 - (b) Taille
 - (c) Indirect tax
 - (d) Irrigation tax
3. Which of the following tax was paid by the peasants of France:

(i) Taille (ii) Tithe (iii) Indirect taxes (iv) No tax was given

 - (a) (i) and (ii)
 - (b) (ii) and (iii)
 - (c) (iv)
 - (d) (i), (ii) and (iii)
4. What did Montesquieu propose?
 - (a) He purposed the division of separation of power.
 - (b) He opposed the theory of separation of power.
 - (c) He argued that legislature, legislative and judiciary should be depended on each other.
 - (d) He purposed a division of power between judiciary, executive and legislature.
5. Which one of the following is the author of "The Social Contract"?
 - (a) Rosseau
 - (b) Voltaire
 - (c) Montesquieu
 - (d) Mirabeau
6. Which of the following were the two leaders of National Assembly of France?
 - (a) Mirabeau and Voltaire
 - (b) Mirabeau and Rousseau
 - (c) Mirabeau and Montesquieu
 - (d) Mirabeau and Abbesieyes
7. Name the French Revolutionary who edited the paper 'L' Ami due peuple.
 - (a) Jean-Paul Marat
 - (b) Voltaire
 - (c) Abbe-Sieyes
 - (d) Montesquieu
8. Which period is referred to as the 'Reign of Terror'?
 - (a) The period from 1793 to 1794
 - (b) The period from 1789 to 1794
 - (c) The period from 1789 to 1785
 - (d) The period from 1789 to 1799
9. What is Directory?
 - (a) It was executive made up from 3rd estate of French society
 - (b) It was executive made up from the members of French parliament.
 - (c) It was executive made up of five members.
 - (d) It was an elected body by the French Citizen.
10. When was a legislative, to free all the slaves in the French overseas possession passed?
 - (a) In 1783
 - (b) In 1793
 - (c) In 1795
 - (d) In 1794
11. The French Revolution started in:
 - (a) 1789
 - (b) 1688
 - (c) 1709
 - (d) 1749



2. In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) followed by a statement of Reason (R) is given. Choose the correct option out of the choices given below each question.

Assertion (A): On 21st September, 1792 the monarchy was abolished and France was declared as a republic.

Reason (R): A republic is a form of government where the people elect the government including the head of the government.

- A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
 B) Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A
 C) A is true, but R is false
 D) A is false, but R is true

Case Study Based Question:

1. Read the passage given below and answer the following questions.

The constitution of 1791 vested the power to make laws in the National Assembly, which was indirectly elected. That is, citizens voted for a group of electors, who in turn chose the Assembly. Not all citizens, however, had the right to vote. Only men above 25 years of age who paid taxes equal to at least 3 day of a labourer's wage were given the status of active citizens, that is, they were entitled to vote. The remaining men and all women were classed as passive citizens. To qualify as an elector and then as a member of the Assembly, a man had to belong to the highest bracket of taxpayers.

- (1) The new constitution made France a
 A) Communist state
 B) Constitutional Monarchy
 C) Democratic state
 D) Totalitarian state
- (2) Which of these rights were not established as 'natural and inalienable' rights by the constitution of 1791?
 A) Right to life
 B) Freedom of speech and opinion
 C) Equality before the law
 D) All of the above

- (3) In the case of constitutional monarchy, the monarch

- A) has no or few legal limitations in political matters.
 B) retains a distinctive legal and ceremonial role but exercise limited or no power.
 C) has so all the power and no legal limitation in the political matter.
 D) has no legal and ceremonial roles in the government.

- (4) What was the main objective behind drafting of constitution of 1791?

- A) To limit the power of the monarch.
 B) To regulate the powers of the monarch.
 C) To increase the powers of the monarch.
 D) None of the above

2. Read the source and answer the following questions.

The situation in France continued to be tense during the following years. Although Louis XVI had signed the Constitution, he entered into secret negotiations with the King of Prussia. Rulers of other neighbouring countries too were worried by the developments in France and made plans to send troops to put down the events that had been taking place there since the summer of 1789. Before this could happen, the National Assembly voted in April 1792 to declare war against Prussia and Austria.

Thousands of volunteers thronged from the provinces to join the army. They saw this as a war of the people against kings and aristocracies all over Europe. Among the patriotic songs they sang was the Marseillaise, composed by the poet Roget de L'Isle. It was sung for the first time by volunteers from Marseilles as they marched into Paris and so got its name. The Marseillaise is now the national anthem of France.

- (1) Which of the following statements justify the support of other neighbouring rulers toward France during the French Revolution?

- A) Rulers of the neighbouring countries wanted to make an association.
 B) Rulers of the neighbouring countries preferred the policies of Louis XVI.
 C) Rulers of the neighbouring countries were worried by the development in France.
 D) All of the above.

- (2) Identify the reason, why thousands of volunteers from the different provinces joined the army of National Assembly?
- A) They thought they would get a good remuneration for it.
 - B) They wanted to take part in war.
 - C) They saw this as a war of people against kings and aristocracies of European countries.
 - D) None of the above.
- (3) Why did the large section of French people thought that the revolution had to be carried further?
- A) Leaders only could achieve desired freedom.
 - B) It made the society livable.
 - C) The Constitution of 1791 gave political rights only to the richer sections of society.
 - D) The Third Estate wanted economic freedom.
- (4) Political club during the French people thought that the revolution had to be carried further?
- A) Revolution became very significant in society as it became a rallying for discussing government policies.
 - B) they planned their own forms of action.
 - C) they wanted cultural upliftment of the society.
 - D) Both (a) and (b).

Answer Key

MCQ:

1. (c) 3rd estate
2. (a) Tithes
3. (d) (i), (ii) and (iii) Ans
4. (d) He purposed a division of power between judiciary, executive and legislature.
5. (a) Rosseau
6. (d) Mirabeau and Abbesieyes
7. (a) Jean-Paul Marat
8. (a) The period from 1793 to 1794
9. (c) It was executive made up of five members.
10. (d) In 1794
11. (a) 1789
12. (c) 1774
13. (d) An extreme situation where the basic means of livelihood are endangered
14. (a) Montesquieu
15. (b) Rousseau
2. The attack by the third estate on the Bastille State prison (14th July 1789) and setting free the prisoners was the incident which sparked the French Revolution.
3. Bastille was hated by all because it was seen as a symbol of the despotic power of the king.
4. The French Revolution of 1789 stood for the ideas of Liberty, Equality and Fraternity.
5. The high price of bread was the immediate cause of rioting in Paris.
6. Louis XVI of the Bourbon family ascended the throne of France in 1774.
7. The extravagant lifestyle of the monarch brought France on the verge of bankruptcy and hastened the revolution.
8. The French army supported thirteen colonies of America in the war of independence against Great Britain. It added one billion livres (currency unit in France) that had risen to more than two billion livres with interest.
9. To meet the regular expenses such as cost of maintaining an army, the court and running the government offices or universities, the state was forced to increase taxes.
10. The term Old Regime is usually used to describe the society and institutions of France before 1789.

Very Short Answer:

1. The attack by the third estate on the Bastille State prison (14th July 1789) and setting free the prisoners was the incident which sparked the French Revolution.



Short Answer:

1. The following events took place on 14th July 1789.
 - (a) The king had ordered the troops to move into the city. There were rumours that he would soon order the troops to open fire upon citizens.
 - (b) Around 7,000 men and women formed a militia and broke into a number of government buildings in search of arms.
 - (c) Then the fortress-prison of Bastille was stormed by hundreds of people with the hope to find hoarded ammunition. Bastille was destroyed completely as it was hated by all.
2. The causes for empty treasury at the time of his accession were as follows.
 - (a) The financial resources of France had drained due to the long years of war.
 - (b) The high cost of maintaining an extravagant court at the immense palace of Versailles also added to the financial drain.
 - (c) France had helped the thirteen American colonies to gain their independence from Britain. This increased the debt to more than 2 billion livres.
3. Before the French Revolution, the French society was divided into three estates.
 - (a) The 1st estate was comprised of the Church and the clergy. They enjoyed certain privileges by birth. The most important of these privileges was exemption from paying taxes.
 - (b) The 2nd estate was comprised of the nobles and other rich people of the society. These were also exempted from paying taxes. They also enjoyed feudal privileges which included collection of feudal dues by the peasants.
 - (c) The 3rd estate was comprised of big businessmen, merchants, court officials, lawyers, peasants, artisans, landless labourers and servants. Within the third estate, some were rich and others were poor. The peasants obliged the landlords by working on their fields, in their houses, to serve in the army or to participate in the building of roads. They were paying all direct taxes like taille and a number of indirect taxes on salt or tobacco but had no rights.
4. The following points show how the subsistence crisis occurred in France during the Old Regime.
 - (a) The population of France increased from 23 million in 1715 to 28 million in 1789. This led to the increase in demand for foodgrains.
 - (b) When the production of foodgrains could not keep pace with the growing demand, the price of bread which was the staple food increased rapidly.
 - (c) On the other hand, the wages could not keep pace with the rise in prices. At the time of drought or hail, harvest reduced and things got worsed. Thus, the gap between the poor and the rich widened and this led to the subsistence crisis.
5. The following points describe the middle class in French society.
 - (a) The middle class was a social group that emerged in France in the 18th century. This class made money through an expanding overseas trade and by manufacturing goods like woollen and silk textiles.
 - (b) The middle class, along with merchants and manufacturers, included professionals like lawyers and administrative officials.
 - (c) All these people were educated believed that no group in society should be privileged by birth and a person's position in society should be based on his merit.
6. The third estate representatives viewed themselves as spokesmen for the whole French nation. They assembled in the hall of an indoor tennis court in the grounds of Versailles on 20 June 1789. There they declared themselves as a National Assembly.
7. While the National Assembly was busy at Versailles drafting the constitution, the rest of France seethed with turmoil in the following ways.
 - (a) A severe winter had meant a bad harvest, resulting in rising price of bread thus, the situation was exploited by bakers and hoarded supplies. Angry women stormed into the shops after standing for long hours in bakery queues.

- (b) The army was ordered by the king to move into the city. There were rumours that army would be ordered to open fire upon the citizens. Thousands of agitated people gathered and decided to form a militia.
- (c) They broke into a number of government buildings in search of arms. They destroyed the prison of Bastille on 14 July 1789.

Long Answer:

1. The following are the main causes of French Revolution:

- (a) Despotic rule of Louis XVI. Long years of wars and extravagance of the king led to financial crises in France. This forced king to increase taxes mostly paid by the third estate. It created chaos in the society.
- (b) Privileges and Burdens of the French Society. First and the second estate had certain privileges by birth. The first two estates were comprised of the clergy and nobility which was 10% of the total population. Rest of the 90% population made up the third estate that paid all the various direct and indirect taxes. This discrimination led to the revolution by the 3rd estate.
- (c) Rising prices. The population of France had increased. This resulted into more demand of foodgrains. So, the price of bread rose rapidly, the poor were not able to buy the high-priced bread. So, the gap between the rich and poor widened.
- (d) Inspiration by the Philosophers. The philosophers like Locke, Rousseau and Montesquieu spread the ideas of having a society where the people enjoy freedom, equal laws and equal opportunities. They inspired the people of France to realise their dreams.
- (e) Role of Middle class. Another major cause was the role of the middle class who earned their wealth through expanding trade of manufactured goods, being exported.
- (f) Storming of Bastille prison. During the political turmoil, France experienced severe winters leading to bad harvest. The price of

bread increased, as the stocks were hoarded in the market. Angry women attacked the shops. At the same time troops were ordered into Paris. Agitated crowd stormed and destroyed Bastille prison administrative officials, i.e., those who were educated. They believed that no person in the society should be privileged by birth.

2. The following events/incidents led to the outbreak of the French Revolution:

- (a) Meeting of the Estate General. On 5 May 1789, Louis XVI had called a meeting of Estate General to increase the taxes. Representatives of all the three estates came. But the members of the 3rd estate were made to stand while women, peasants, artisans and women were not allowed entry to the assembly.
 - (b) Demand for one vote one person. The third estate at the meeting of the Estate General demanded one vote for each member. This demand was rejected by the king and the members of the third estate walked out in protest.
 - (c) Meeting of the newly-formed National Assembly. Since the members of the third estate were more, they considered themselves the voice of the people/whole nation. They assembled in the indoor tennis court of Versailles and declared themselves as the 'National Assembly'. They believed in removing the feudal privileges of the nobles and clergy.
 - (d) Winters created worse situation. Harvest declined, prices rose and bakers exploited poor by hoarding supplies. Angry crowd stormed the shops.
 - (e) Revolt in the countryside by the peasants. There were rumours that their ripe crops would be destroyed by the lords hired bands. The peasants in several districts seized hoes and pitchforks and attacked manors of the lords. They looted the hoarded grains and burnt the documents containing the records of manorial dues.
3. The philosophers influenced the thinking of the people of France in the following ways:
- (a) Philosophers such as John Locke and Jean Jacques Rousseau put forward ideas envisaging a society based on freedom and equal laws and opportunities for all.



- (b) In Two Treatises of Government, John Locke sought to refute the doctrine of the divine and absolute rights of the monarch.
- (c) His ideas were carried forward by Rousseau as he was proposing a form of government based on social contract between the people and their representatives.
- (d) In The Spirit of the Laws, Montesquieu proposed a division of power within the government between the legislative, the executive and the judiciary.
- (e) The ideas of these philosophers were discussed intensively in salons and coffee-houses and were spread among people through books and newspapers.
4. (a) The constitution of 1791 was the first written constitution in France, created after the collapse of the absolute rule.
- (b) Its main aim was to limit the powers of the monarch.
- (c) Powers were then divided/separated and assigned to different institutions like legislative, executive and judiciary.
- (d) According to this, active citizens of France elected electors who in turn voted to elect the National Assembly.
- (e) Not all citizens had the right to vote. Only men of 25 years of age who paid taxes equal to at least three days of a labourer's wage. They were called active citizens.
- (f) The remaining men and all women were called the passive citizens.
- (g) The National Assembly controlled the king. France became constitutional monarchy. (any five points)
5. Most of the people (i.e. men and women) in the 18th century. France could not read and write. So images and symbols instead of printed books were used to communicate ideas. These symbols were used to convey the content of declaration of rights. The important symbols were:
- (a) Broken Chains: Chains were used to restrain the slaves from running away. Broken chains signify the act of becoming free.
- (b) A bundle of rods: It was used to convey the message that strength lies in unity.
- (c) The eye within or triangle radiating light: The all-seeing eye stands for knowledge. The rays of the sun will drive away the dark clouds of ignorance.
- (d) Sceptre: It symbolises royal power.
- (e) Snake biting its tail to form a ring: A symbol of eternity. The ring has neither beginning nor end.
- (f) Red phrygian cap: It was worn by slaves when they were freed.
- (g) Blue-white-red: These are the national colours of France.
- (h) The winged woman: Personification of the law.
- (i) The law tablet: The law is same for all and all are equal before it. (any five points)

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A
2. A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A

Case Study Answer:

1. **Answer:**
 - (1) B) Constitutional Monarchy
 - (2) D) All of the above
 - (3) B) retains a distinctive legal and ceremonial role but exercise limited or no power.
 - (4) A) To limit the power of the monarch.
2. **Answer:**
 - (1) B) Rulers of the neighbouring countries preferred the policies of Louis XVI.
 - (2) C) They saw this as a war of people against kings and aristocracies of European countries.
 - (3) C) The Constitution of 1791 gave political rights only to the richer sections of society.
 - (4) B) they planned their own forms of action.



Socialism in Europe and The Russian Revolution

2

Social Changes in Europe

Many social changes were taking place in Europe in the eighteenth century. The French Revolution inspired the people with the ideals of liberty, equality, and justice. Many people had different views about how the Government should work and about the rights of people. While some people wanted the establishment of democratic principles, the others supported the monarchical form of the government.

- French Revolution (1789) gave ideas to the world like Equality, liberty and fraternity.
- Raja Rammohan Roy and Derozio explained the significance of French Revolution in India to the elite classes



Henry Louis Vivian Derozio



Raja Rammohan Roy

The three main groups of people at this time were

The Liberalists

- They wanted a change in society. They wanted nations to be tolerant of all religions.
- They believed in safeguarding the rights of people against the Government. They also argued for elected Parliamentary Government.
- The liberals however were not democrats as they did not favour the principle of universal adult franchise. They were in favour of voting only by men and the propertied class.

The Radicals

- The radicals wanted a government duly elected by the majority of the country's population.
- Many radicals supported women's movements to achieve voting rights.
- They opposed the privileges enjoyed by landowners and wealthy factory owners.
- They were not against the notion of private property but were against the concentration of money in the hands of few sections of society.

The Conservatives

- The conservatives opposed the views and ideologies of the liberals and the radicals.
- They believed in the privileges enjoyed by the nobility and the wealthy class. However, after the French Revolution, conservatives believed in bringing changes at a slow pace in society.



- The conservatives believed that the past should be respected and changes in society should be made gradually.

Industrial Revolution

- The Industrial Revolution first began in the eighteenth century in England. Later, it spread to the other parts of Europe. Industrialisation also resulted in large-scale migration of people from the villages to the cities in search of work opportunities. Workers worked for long hours at extremely low wages. Housing and sanitation facilities were not given to workers. Unemployment was also growing.



Many worker's worked in very dangerous situation during the industrial revolution

The Coming of Socialism in Europe

- By the mid-nineteenth century, ideas of socialism had become well known in Europe. Socialists believed that factory owners earned profits because of the hard work being put in by workers, but the factory owners did nothing to look after the welfare of workers.
- Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels were well-known socialists who believed that the profits earned by factory owners are produced by workers. Marx contented that all property should be owned by society. Such societies would be communist societies.
- These ideas spread to Europe by the mid-nineteenth century. Socialists over different regions formed the Second International to coordinate their efforts to spread socialist ideas.
- In Germany, the Socialist Democratic Party was formed. Socialist Party was formed in France and Labour Party was formed in Britain. These parties were however not able to form governments in their countries.



Robert Owen build a cooperative community called New Harmony in Indiana (USA).



Louis Blanc wanted to divide work according to the work done by its member.



Karl Marx & Friedrich Engel explained conditions of workers could not improve as long as capitalist exist.
Workers had to overthrow rule of capitalism & had to construct a radically socialist society.

The Russian Revolution

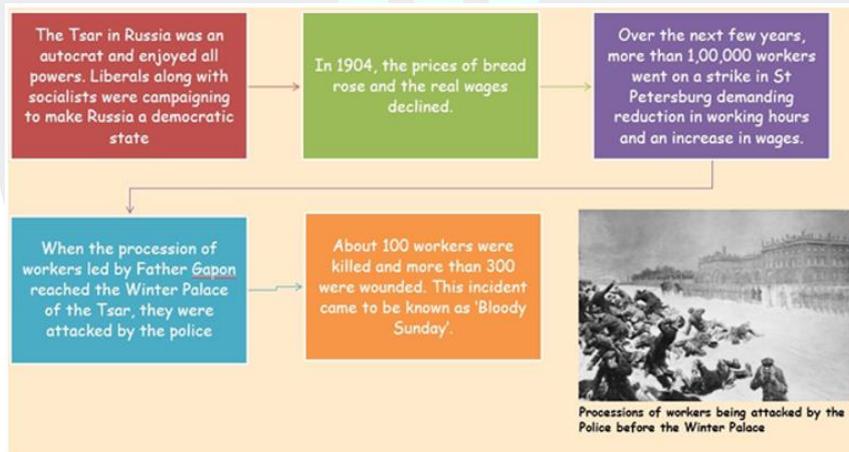
Conditions in Russia on the Eve of the Russian Revolution

- Russia was ruled by Tsar Nicholas II.
- About 85% of the Russian population was engaged in agricultural activities. Industries were located only at few places such as in St Petersburg and Moscow. It was in the 1890s that many industries began to be set up in Russia.
- Sometimes, the workers had to work for 15 hours at low wages. Workers in Russia came from different backgrounds. The workers formed unions and declared strikes whenever the working conditions in the factories deteriorated.
- Most of the lands in Russia belonged to the nobility and the Church. Russian peasants had no respect for the nobility and wanted the lands of the nobles to be given to them.
- The Russian Social Democratic Workers Party was founded in 1898 by the socialists. However, because political parties were illegal in Russia, the party had to work as an illegal organisation.
- The Socialist Revolutionary Party was formed in 1900 which struggled for the rights of peasants. The Social Democrats differed from the Socialist Revolutionary Party on the issue of farmers. The latter under Lenin believed that peasants cannot be part of the socialist movement as some peasants were poor, some were rich, and some even employed workers on their fields.



Tsar Nicholas II

The Revolution of 1905

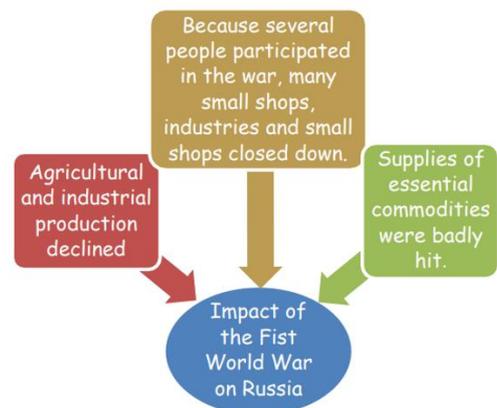


‘Bloody Sunday’ marked the beginning of strikes in the cities with students, lawyers, doctors and engineers staging walkouts complaining about the lack of civil liberties.

- Under such circumstances, the Tsar allowed the creation of an elected Parliament called the Duma. He however tried to control the Duma.

Impact of the First World War

- In 1914, the First World War broke out between Germany, Austria, and Turkey on one hand and France, Britain, and Russia on the other hand. Initially people of Russia supported the Tsar but as the war progressed, the Tsar refused to consult the Duma.
- During the war, anti-German feelings ran high and Tsarina Alexandra’s German origins and poor advisors, especially a monk named Rasputin, made the autocracy unpopular in Russia.





- Russian armies suffered greatly in the hands of the German and Austrian armies.
- The First World War impacted the agricultural production and industries in Russia.
- As they retreated, the Russian army destroyed crops and buildings to prevent the enemy from being able to live off the land.
- The destruction of crops and buildings led to over 3 million refugees in Russia.
- Russia's own industries were few in number and the country was cut off from other suppliers of industrial goods by German control of the Baltic Sea.
- As a result, there were labour shortages and small workshops producing essentials were shut down.

The February Revolution in Petrograd

- In February 1917, there were food shortages in Russia. While the working class was disgruntled because of the shortages of food supplies, the Parliamentarians opposed the decision of the Tsar to dissolve the Duma.
- On 22 February, there was a lockout at a factory by the workers. More workers from other factories joined them. Many women led the strike in factories. In many factories, women led the way to strikes. This came to be called the International Women's Day. This came to be known as International Women's Day. Curfew was imposed by the Government.
- In next few days, more people joined the revolution. Politicians, workers and middle-class people began demonstrations demanding less working hours, more wages and democracy. They were later joined by the cavalry and soldiers. Workers formed a 'soviet' which later came to be known as the Petrograd Soviet.
- The Tsar abdicated the throne, and a new provisional government was formed by the Soviet leaders. The Petrograd Revolution finally brought an end to the Russian monarchy in February 1917.

Lenin

- In April 1917, Vladimir Lenin returned to Russia. He had earlier demanded that the war should be brought to an end, land should be distributed among the peasants and banks should be nationalized. This came to be known as Lenin's 'April Theses'.
- During this time in Russia, the committees of workers were formed to look into the working of the industries. Similarly, peasants under the Socialist leaders formed their own groups and land committees were formed to handle the distribution of lands to peasants.



Vladimir Lenin



While the February Revolution led to the end to monarchy in Russia, October Revolution led to an end of provisional government. Russia was declared as a socialist country after the October Revolution.

Changes in Russia after the October Revolution

- The Bolshevik Party was renamed the Russian Communist Party.

- After the Bolsheviks held power in Russia, land was declared as a social property and peasants were allowed to capture the lands of the nobility.
- Most of the industries and banks were nationalized by 1917.
- In cities, large houses were divided into several quarters according to the size of the family.
- Later, the Bolsheviks conducted elections to the Constituent Assembly, but they failed to gain majority votes. Lenin dismissed the Assembly.
- The Bolsheviks became the only party in Russia which could contest the elections. Thus, Russia became a one-party state. Police sentenced and punished those people who criticised the Bolsheviks. While on one hand, many people supported the Bolsheviks as they stood for socialism, on the other hand, people were also disillusioned with the party because of the censorship imposed by them.

Changes in Russia after the October Revolution

- The Bolshevik Party was renamed the Russian Communist Party.
- After the Bolsheviks held power in Russia, land was declared as a social property and peasants were allowed to capture the lands of the nobility.
- Most of the industries and banks were nationalized by 1917.
- In cities, large houses were divided into several quarters according to the size of the family.
- Later, the Bolsheviks conducted elections to the Constituent Assembly, but they failed to gain majority votes. Lenin dismissed the Assembly.
- The Bolsheviks became the only party in Russia which could contest the elections. Thus, Russia became a one-party state. Police sentenced and punished those people who criticised the Bolsheviks. While on one hand, many people supported the Bolsheviks as they stood for socialism, on the other hand, people were also disillusioned with the party because of the censorship imposed by them.

Stalin and Collectivisation

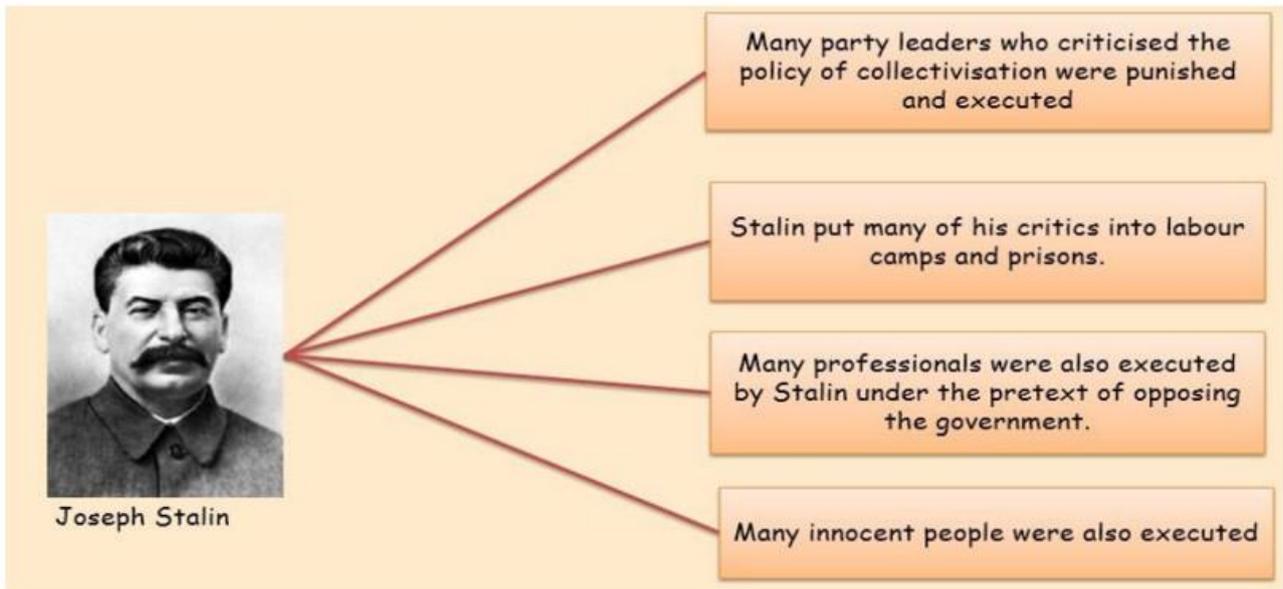
- Russia was facing a crisis of shortage of food grains. The peasants refused to sell grains at the prices fixed by the Government, resulting in the shortage of grain supplies in many cities.
- Stalin took over the reins of the party after the death of Lenin. He introduced strict measures. In 1928, the party members visited many villages and raided rich peasants known as the 'kulaks'.
- The party converted small landholdings of many peasants into one collective large farm. All large, collectivised farms were cultivated by the farmers with the help of tools pooled together. The profits of the farms were shared among the cultivators.
- Many peasants resisted the policy of collectivization. They were severely punished by the state. Many of them were deported and exiled. Stalin allowed only some independent cultivations.



Stalin

Russian Revolution and the World

- Many people across the globe criticised the capture of power in Russia by the Bolsheviks. However, many workers and peasants in other parts of the world supported the Russian Revolution. The Bolsheviks founded Comintern—an international communist union of people supporting the Bolsheviks.
- Many non-Russians from outside the USSR participated in the Conference of the Peoples of the East (1920) and the Bolshevik-founded Comintern.
- By the time of the outbreak of the Second World War, the USSR had given socialism a global face and world stature

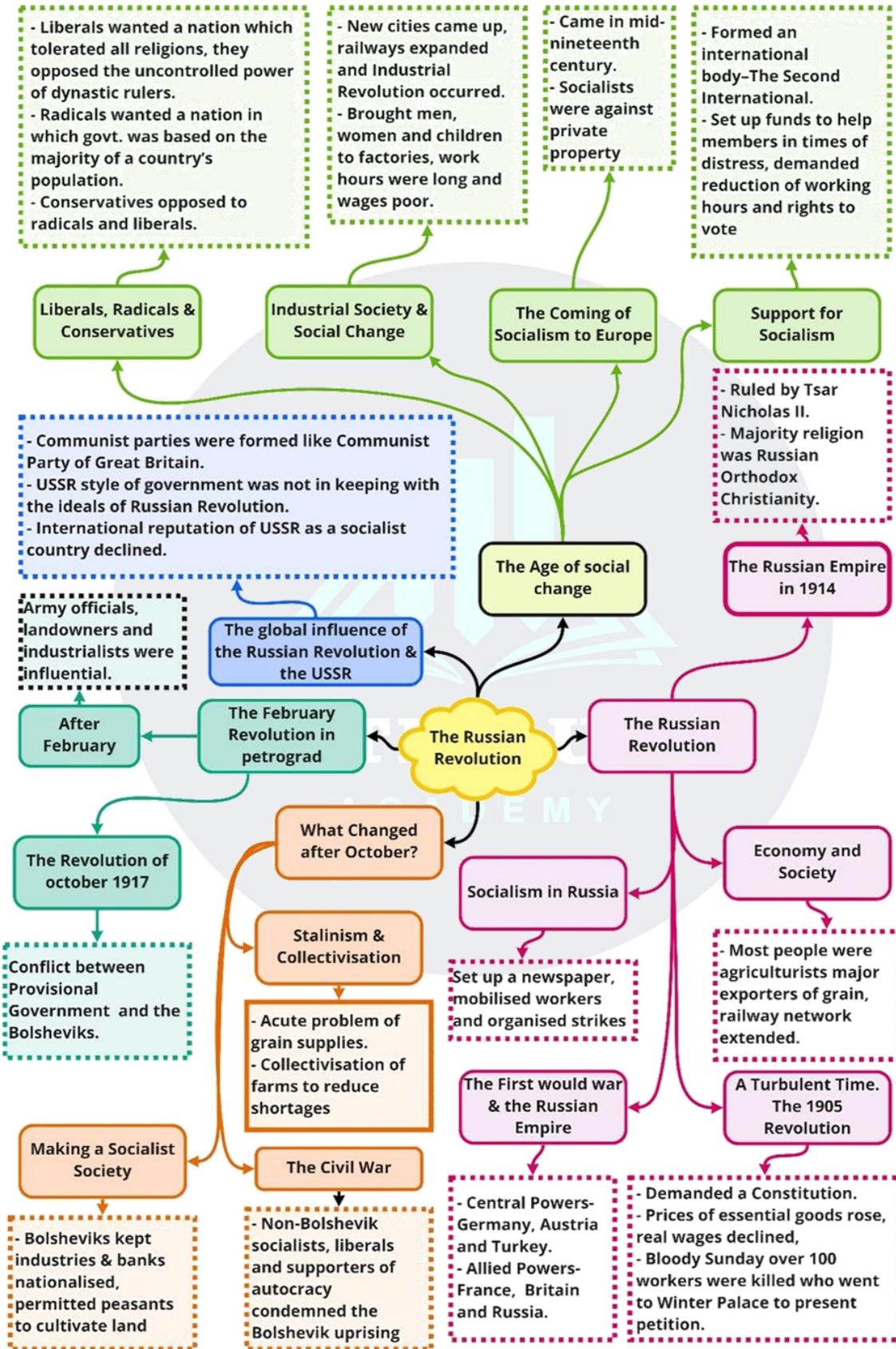


- By 1950, it was realised that the Russian Government was not working according to the principles of socialism.
- Although Russia had become an industrial power and agricultural activities improved, it was contended that basic freedoms of the people, such as the right to speech, were denied and that development was a result of repressive policies of the Russian Government.

Russian Revolution and India

- India was also impacted by the Russian Revolution. Several people in India attended the Communist Universities.
- The Communist party was formed in India by mid-1920s.
- Jawaharlal Nehru and Tagore wrote about the Soviet Socialism.
- Several prominent Indian political and social leaders visited Russia to understand the principle of Socialism.
- Various writer wrote about the Russian Revolution.
- In Hindi, R.S. Avasthi wrote in 1920-21 Russian Revolution, Lenin, His Life, and His Thoughts, and later The Red Revolution. S.D. Vidyanagar wrote The Rebirth of Russia and The Soviet State of Russia. There was much that was written in Bengali, Marathi, Malayalam, Tamil, and Telugu.

Class : 9th Social Studies (History)
Chapter-2: Socialism in Europe and the Russian Revolution





Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

1. Who were Jadidist?
 - (a) They were social reformers
 - (b) They were Revolutionary
 - (c) They were Christians
 - (d) They were Muslim reformers within Russian Empire.
2. What was the slogan of the Bolshhvik Party which brought it into power in Russia?
 - (a) All powers to the Soviets
 - (b) All powers to the Czar
 - (c) All powers to the Duma
 - (d) All powers enjoyed by middle class
3. Who were the Kulaks?
 - (a) Workers of Bolshevik Party
 - (b) Workers of Menshevik Party
 - (c) Group of army leader
 - (d) Well-to-do peasants
4. When did Russian Czar, Nicholas II resign?
 - (a) On March 3, 1917
 - (b) On Feb. 2, 1917
 - (c) On March 2, 1917
 - (d) On Feb. 4, 1917
5. Which of the following statements are true about Marfa Vasileva?

(i) She was a brave mill worker (ii) She was a milling machine operator (iii) She single handedly organised a successful strike (iv) She was a typical Russian housewife.

 - (a) (i) and (ii)
 - (b) (i) and (iv)
 - (c) (i), (ii) and (iii)
 - (d) All are correct.
6. Russia decided to withdraw from World War I because:

(i) People were demanding peace. (ii) A civil war was going on in Russia. (iii) Russia had lost lot of manpower. (iv) It was against imperialism.

 - (a) (i) and (iv)
 - (b) (i) and (iii)
 - (c) All (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv)
 - (d) All are not the correct reasons.
7. What was the status of Non-Russian nationalities before 1917 Russian Revolution.

(i) They had equal status (ii) They were treated as inferiors (iii) They were given equal rights (iv) They were not allowed to practice their own language and culture

 - (a) (i) and (ii)
 - (b) (iii) and (iv)
 - (c) (ii) and (iv)
 - (d) (i) and (iii)
8. What are the features of the Communist International?

(i) It was formed to promote Socialist Revolution on an international scale. (ii) It was decided the policies to be pursued and laid them down for worldwide acceptance. (iii) The section of the socialist party which were more radical and progressive organized themselves into common interest (iv) It was formally ended in 1943

 - (a) (i) and (iv) are correct
 - (b) (i) and (iv) are correct
 - (c) (i) and (iii) are not correct
 - (d) All are correct
9. Who started collectivisation?
 - (a) Lenin
 - (b) Czar II
 - (c) Stalin
 - (d) Rusputin
10. Who is the author of the book 'The History of a Soviet Collective Farm'?
 - (a) Fedor Belov
 - (b) V.Sokalov
 - (c) S.D. Vidyalker
 - (d) R.S. Avasthi
11. Socialist Revolutionary party of Russia was formed in:
 - (a) 1905
 - (b) 1911
 - (c) 1907
 - (d) 1900

12. Which of the following is not an Industrial area of Russia?
(i) St. Petersburg (ii) Moscow (iii) East London (iv) Greenland
(a) (i) and (ii)
(b) (iii) and (iv)
(c) Only (i)
(d) Only (b)
13. Bloody Sunday incident occurred in:
(a) 1905
(b) 1907
(c) 1911
(d) 1917
14. Why was the year 1904 bad for the Russian workers?
(a) Industrial revolution replace manual work with machines.
(b) Price rose very high, it became very difficult for workers to make their both ends meet.
(c) Price fell down, as a result there was no shortage of food.
(d) Workers had to work for long time under harsh condition.
15. Which of the following country was not the part of central power?
(a) Russia
(b) Turkey
(c) Germany
(d) Austria

Very Short Questions:

1. Who controlled economic and social powers before the 18th century in France?
2. Name any two Indians who talked of the significance of the French Revolution.
3. What were the varied responses in Europe about transformation of society?
4. Mention the type of government favoured by the liberals.
5. How can you say that the 'liberals' were not 'democrats'?
6. Mention one significant view of the radicals.
7. When did the conservatives become receptive to the need of change?

8. Which group of ideology was against any kind of political or social change earlier in the 18th century?
9. What were the ideas of 'conservatives' regarding social change in the 19th century?
10. What kind of developments took place as a result of new political trends in Europe?

Short Questions:

1. Liberals were not Democrats. Explain
2. Describe the views of radicals?
3. What were the viewpoints of the conservatives?
4. How should society, according to liberals and radicals, develop?
5. Why were socialists against private property and saw it as the root of all social ills.
6. What was the basic principle of the Marxist theory.
7. Explain how workers were divided in social groups?

Long Questions:

1. What changes did industrialisation bring to the then society in Russia?
2. What solutions did radicals and liberals find to the problem of the industrial society
3. Explain how a society, according to socialists, can operate without property. What would be the basis of socialist society?
4. What developments took place in Europe in support of socialism.
5. What were the events preceding the 1905 Revolution in Russia?

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as:
Assertion (A): Liberals and Radicals themselves were often property owners and employers.
Reason (R) : Opposed to the privileges the old Aristocracy had by birth, they firmly believed in the value of individual effort, labour and enterprise.
A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).



- B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.
2. In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as:
- Assertion (A)** : Capitalist were against private property, and saw it as the root of all social ills of the time.
- Reason (R)** : Individuals owned the property that gave employment but the propertie were concerned only with personal gain and not with the welfare of those who made the property productive.
- A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.
- (2) How many demands were there in Lenin's 'April Theses'?
- A) Three
- B) Four
- C) Five
- D) Six
- (3) Lenin argued that the Bolshevik Party should rename itself as _____
- A) Communist Party
- B) Socialist Party
- C) Russian Social Democratic Labour Party
- D) Socialist Revolutionary Party
- (4) Petrograd had led the February Revolution that brought down the _____
- A) Slavery in the February 1917
- B) Monarchy in February 1917
- C) Clergy in February
- D) Nobility in February 1917
2. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

Case Study Based Question:

1. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

In April 1917, the Bolshevik leader Vladimir Lenin returned to Russia from his exile. He and the Bolsheviks had opposed the war since 1914. Now he felt it was time for Soviets to take over power. He declared that the war be brought to a close, land be transferred to the Peasants and Banks be nationalised. These three demands were Lenin's 'April Theses'. He also argued that the Bolshevik Party rename itself the Communist Party to indicate its new radical aims. Most others in the Bolshevik Party were initially surprised by the April Theses. They thought that the time was not yet ripe for a Socialist Revolution and the Provisional Government needed to be supported. But the developments of the subsequent month changed their attitude.

- (1) When did Bolshevik leader Vladmir Lenin returned to Russia from his exile?
- A) In April, 1918
- B) In April, 1915
- C) In April, 1916
- D) In April, 1917

One of the groups which looked to change society were the Liberals. Liberals wanted a nation which tolerated all religions. We should remember that at this time European states usually discriminated in favour of one religion or another (Britain favoured the Church of England, Austria and Spain favoured the Catholic Church). Liberals also opposed the uncontrolled power of dynastic rulers. They wanted to safeguard the rights of individuals against governments. They argued for a representative elected parliamentary government, subject to laws interpreted by a well- trained judiciary that was independent of rulers and officials. However, they were not 'democrats'. They did not believe in Universal Adult Franchise, that is, the right of every citizen to vote. They felt men of property mainly should have the vote. They also did not want the vote for women.

- (1) _____ become one of the most significant and powerful ideas to shape society in the twentieth century, through the Revolution in Russia.
- A) Communism
- B) Socialism
- C) Dictatorship
- D) Democracy

- (2) Liberals wanted a nation which tolerated.
- A) No religion
 - B) One religion
 - C) Few religions
 - D) All religions
- (3) Which countries favoured the Catholic Church?
- A) France and Spain
 - B) Spain and Italy
 - C) Austria and Spain
 - D) Spain and Germany
- (4) What was the suffragette?
- A) Women's movement
 - B) Property tax
 - C) Land acquisition
 - D) Proletariat class

Answer Key

MCQ:

1. (d) They were Muslim reformers within Russian Empire.
2. (a) All powers to the Soviets
3. (d) Well-to-do peasants
4. (c) On March 2, 1917
5. (c) (i), (ii) and (iii)
6. (c) All (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv)
7. (c) (ii) and (iv)
8. (d) All are correct
9. (c) Stalin
10. (a) Fedor Belov
11. (a) 1900
12. (b) (iii) and (iv)
13. (a) 1905
14. (b) Price rose very high, it became very difficult for workers to make their both ends meet.
15. (a) Russia

Very Short Answer:

1. The aristocracy and the church controlled the economic and social powers in France before the 18th century..
2. Raja Rammohan Roy and Derozio talked of the significance of the French Revolution.
3. There were some who accepted that some changes were necessary but wished to have a gradual shift while others wanted radical restructuring of the society.
4. They insisted on a representative, elected parliamentary government, subject to laws

- interpreted by a well-trained judiciary that was independent of rulers and officials,
5. The liberals were not democrats because they did not believe in universal adult franchise and felt that only men of property should have a right to vote. They were against voting rights to women.
 6. Radicals wanted a nation in which the government was based on the majority of a country's population.
 7. After the French Revolution, the conservatives became receptive to some kind of change.
 8. The conservatives, in the early 18th century were against any kind of political and social change.
 9. The conservatives believed that some change was required in the society but the changes should be slow.
 10. As a result of new political trends in Europe industrial revolution occurred, new cities came up and railways expanded.

Short Answer:

1. The liberals could not be called democrats because even though they argued for a representative, elected parliamentary government, subject to laws interpreted by a well-trained judiciary that was independent of rulers and officials, they did not believe in universal adult franchise and also did not want the voting rights for women. They felt right to vote should only be given to the propertied men.
2. The following were the viewpoints of the radicals.
 - a. Radicals wanted a nation in which government was based on the majority of a country's population.



- b. Many supported women's suffragette movements.
- c. They opposed the privileges of great landowners and wealthy factory owners. Though they favoured private property, they disliked concentration of property in the hands of a few.
3. The conservatives had the following viewpoints.
- In the beginning of the eighteenth century, they were opposed to the idea of change.
 - Later in the nineteenth century, they accepted that some change was inevitable.
 - At the same time they believed that the past had to be respected and change had to be brought about through a slow process.
3. The conservatives had the following viewpoints.
- In the beginning of the eighteenth century, they were opposed to the idea of change.
 - Later in the nineteenth century, they accepted that some change was inevitable.
 - At the same time they believed that the past had to be respected and change had to be brought about through a slow process.
4. The conservatives had the following viewpoints.
- In the beginning of the eighteenth century, they were opposed to the idea of change.
 - Later in the nineteenth century, they accepted that some change was inevitable.
 - At the same time they believed that the past had to be respected and change had to be brought about through a slow process.
5. Marx believed that the condition of workers could not improve as long as private capitalists had profit motive. Workers had to overthrow capitalism and the rule of private property. Workers must construct a radically socialist society where all property was socially controlled. This would be a communist society, the natural society of the future.
6. The workers were divided in social groups in Russia in the following ways.
- Some workers were closely linked to their villages while others settled in the cities permanently,
 - The division among the workers was on the basis of skills they possessed. Metalworkers were on the high level as their work required training.
- c. Apart from males, women also formed a considerable working force in the factories though they were paid less than the males.

Long Answer:

- The following changes were brought in the Russian society with the advent of industrialisation.
 - The society saw profound social and economic changes.
 - It was a time when new cities came up and new industrialized regions developed and railways expanded.
 - Industrial Revolution brought men, women and children to factories.
 - Work hours were often long and wages were very low.
 - During the time of low demand, unemployment was common.
 - As the towns were growing rapidly, problems like housing and sanitation emerged.
- The following solutions were found by the radicals and the liberals to the problems of Industrial society.
 - They felt that efforts should be made to make the workforce healthy and educated.
 - They were opposed to the privileges enjoyed by the old aristocracy.
 - They advocated value of individual effort, labour and enterprise.
 - They thought of freedom of individuals so that poor could labour and those with capital could operate freely. This would develop the society.
 - It was also sought that the government should be removed through revolution
- Socialists had different visions of the future. Robert Owen, a leading English manufacturer, sought to build a cooperative community called New Harmony in Indiana (USA). Some other socialists felt that cooperatives could not be built on a wide scale through individual initiative only. The governments must encourage cooperatives and replace capitalist enterprise. The same view

was propagated by Louis Blanc in France. It was said that cooperatives were to be associations of people who produced goods together and divided the profits according to the work done by members.

More ideas were added to this body of arguments by Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels. Marx argued that industrial society was capitalist who owned resources and invested in the factories. The profit was produced by the workers but they did not gain anything. Their condition could improve only if they were freed from the clutches of capitalist exploitation.

Control of means and factors of production by the workers themselves can be the basis of such a socialist society. For this, the workers needed to construct a radically socialist society where all property was socially controlled. This would be a communist society.

4. The following developments took place in Europe in support of socialism.

- (a) An international body, called the Second International was formed by the socialists to coordinate the efforts of the workers.
- (b) Workers Associations were formed to fight for better living and working conditions.
- (c) Funds were set up to help members in times of distress.
- (d) Workers demanded a reduction in working hours and the right to vote.
- (e) In many places in Europe, these associations worked closely with the Social Democratic Party and helped it win parliamentary seats.
- (f) In 1905, socialists and trade unionists formed Labour Party in Britain and a Socialist Party in France.

5. The following events preceded the 1905 Revolution in Russia.

- (a) The year 1904 was a particularly bad one for Russian workers. Prices of essential goods rose rapidly and the real wages declined.

- (b) The membership of workers' associations rose dramatically.
- (c) There was a call for an industrial action when four of the workers at the Putilov Iron Works were dismissed.
- (d) There were mass strikes by the workers demanding reduction in the working hours, an increase in wages and improvement in working conditions.
- (e) When a procession of workers led by the Father Gapon reached the Winter Palace it was attacked by the police and the cossacks that killed hundreds of the workers. This incident is known as Bloody Sunday.
- (f) There were strikes all over the country and universities closed, student bodies staged walkouts, complaining lack of civil liberties. Various unions of doctors, engineers and other middle-class workers were established that demanded a constituent assembly.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
2. D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

Case Study Answer:

1. **Answer:**
 - (1) D) In April, 1917
 - (2) A) Three
 - (3) A) Communist Party
 - (4) A) Women's movement
2. **Answer:**
 - (1) B) Socialism
 - (2) D) All religions
 - (3) C) Austria and Spain
 - (4) A) Women's movement



Nazim and

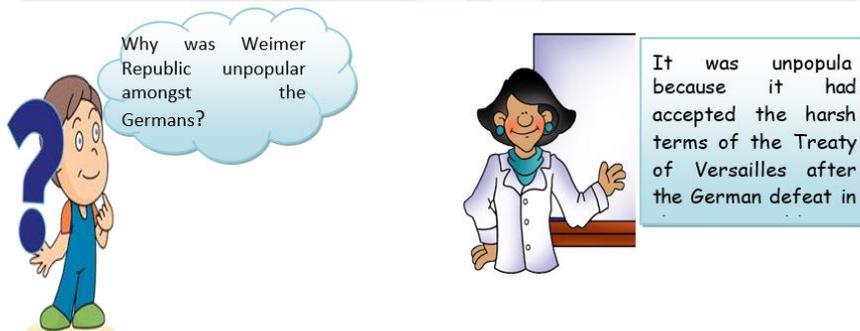
The Rise of Hitler

3

The First World War and Germany

The rise of Hitler to power in Germany is often attributed to the harsh treaties which were faced by Germany during the First World War.

- Germany fought the First World War along with Austria–Hungary against the Allies—England, France, and Russia. Germany was defeated in the war, and the German emperor abdicated the throne.
- After the war, Weimer Republic—a democratic government—was formed in Germany. All Germans including women got the right to vote in the elections.



An artist's impression of the signing of the Treaty of Versailles after the First World War

Terms of the Treaty of Versailles:

- Germany lost all its overseas colonies
- She also lost one-third of its iron reserves and one-fourth of its coal reserves to France
- It was demilitarised
- She also had to pay a huge compensation of six billion pounds to the allies

- The number of unemployed youths and poor people increased in German society. Thus, socialism became a great force in Germany. Communists also made an uprising against the Weimar Republic but failed. The political atmosphere in Berlin was charged with demands for Soviet-style governance.
- There was deep economic crisis in Germany. When Germany refused to pay the allies in gold, France occupied its leading industrial area. To meet the economic crisis, the Government printed too much of German currency (Mark). The value of German currency declined considerably, and the prices of essential goods and commodities rose.
- Eventually, the Americans intervened and bailed Germany out of the crisis by introducing the Dawes Plan. It redrew the terms of reparation to ease the financial burden on the country.

Germany and the Great Depression of 1929

- German investments and industrial recovery were totally dependent on short-term loans, largely from the USA.
- However, the world plunged into the Great Depression in 1929 when American stock market 'Wall Street Exchange' crashed.
- The Great Depression of 1929 further added to the miseries of Germany.



- After America withdrew the loans which it gave to Germany. By 1932, the industrial production on Germany declined to 40%. Millions of people became unemployed. This also led to increase in poverty.
- The economic crisis instilled fears among middle class Germans. They also feared the rise of socialism in Germany.
- Small businessmen, the self-employed and retailers suffered as their businesses were ruined.
- Big business was in crisis and the large mass of peasantry was affected by a sharp fall in agricultural prices.
- Politically, the Weimer Constitution was vulnerable to dictatorship. Article 48 gave wide powers to the President. He could impose emergency and suspend the civil rights of the citizens.
- Further, there was also political instability in the country. Within its short life, the Weimar Republic saw twenty different cabinets lasting on an average 239 days.

The above circumstances favored the rise of Hitler in Germany.

Rise of Hitler

- Hitler was shattered by the German defeat in the First World War.
- He fought for Germany in the 1st World War and earned medals for bravery
- He joined the German Workers Party. Later, he became the leader of the party and renamed it the Nationalist Socialist German Workers Party. This party came to be known as the Nazi Party.
- Hitler was an excellent orator. His speeches moved the people. He promised employment, economic recovery of Germany, to undo the injustices of the Treaty of Versailles and to restore the dignity of the German people.

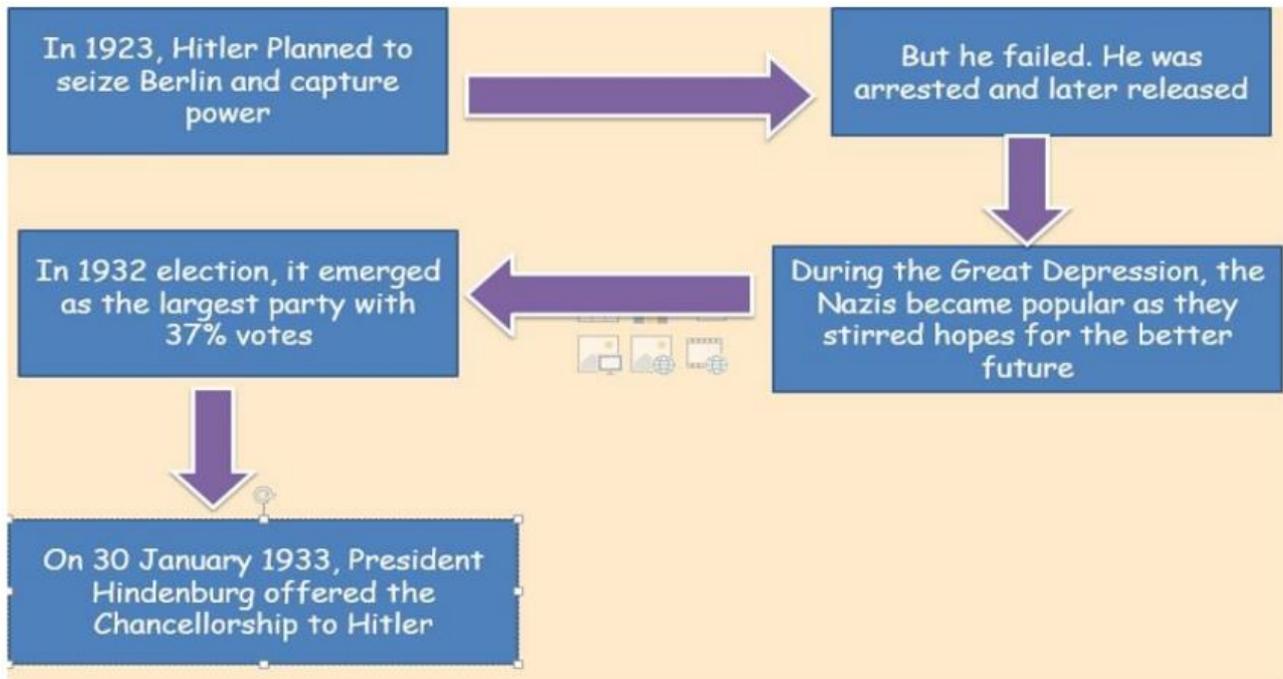


Hitler's excellent oratory skills won him the support of the people



- He devised a new style of politics. Massive rallies and public meetings were held by the Nazis to display the strength of the party. Nazi propaganda also skillfully projected Hitler as a messiah who could deliver people from their distress. He captured the imagination of the Germans.

Hitler Captures Power



- Hitler after becoming the chancellor of Germany issued the Fire decree of 1933. It suspended freedom of speech, press and assemble
- He then passed the Enabling Act in 1933. This Act established dictatorship in Germany.
- Communists were sent to concentration camps by Hitler. All political parties and trade unions were banned except for the Nazi Party. The state had full control over the executive, legislature, judiciary and media.
- A secret state police called the Gestapo was formed. It had the authority to detain any person without any trial. Detained people were sent to concentration camps and torture chambers. The police and the state under Hitler gained the reputation of the most dreaded criminal state.

Economic Recovery under Hitler

- Hjalmar Schacht was given the responsibility of devising an economic recovery plan of Germany. He aimed at creating full employment through state-sponsored work creation programmes.
- This project resulted in the building of various German superhighways and the Volkswagen However, when Schacht advised Hitler against rearmament of the state, he was asked to leave.
- Hitler then planned economic recovery through the expansion of territories.

Hitler's Foreign Policy

- Hitler's foreign policy was successful in the initial years. He withdrew from the League of Nations in 1933, reoccupied the Rhineland and integrated Austria with Germany. He also annexed Sudetenland from Czechoslovakia.
- In 1939, Germany invaded Poland bringing it into war with France and Britain. In 1940, Hitler signed a Tripartite Treaty with Italy and Japan. Hitler at this time was at the pinnacle of his power.



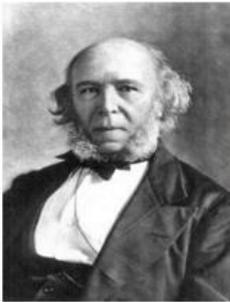
German armies captured Poland in September 1939

- Hitler attacked the Soviet Union in July 1941. Hitler's forces however were defeated and were driven out of Eastern.
- Europe. It was after the USA entered the Second World War that the war took a decisive turn, and Germany was defeated in the war. Hitler committed suicide in 1945.

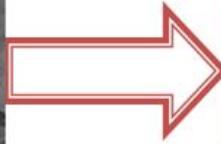
The Nazi Ideology

Theory of Racial Supremacy

- Hitler believed in the racial supremacy of the Aryans. According to the theory of racial supremacy, only the Nordic German Aryans were supreme in society. The Jews were placed in the lowest strata of society. The Jews were regarded as the fiercest enemies of the German Aryans.
- The theory of Darwin was wrongfully used by Hitler to justify imperial rule over conquered territories. He believed in acquiring new settlements for expanding the power and might of Germany. He expanded his territories eastwards towards USSR.
- The Nazis after assuming power sought to eliminate the Jews and physically disabled Germans. Along with them, the Gypsies and the black Germans were also detained in concentration camps.
- Jews were treated as an anti-race, the archenemies of the Aryans.



Herbert Spencer



After Darwin the term, 'Survival of the fittest' was formulated by Herbert. He advocated the idea that only those species which can adapt themselves to the changing climatic conditions can survive on the earth.

Hitler used this idea to justify his dislike for the Jews and other races. He argued that the Aryans were the purest of all races, and thus they need to be stronger to dominate the world. He contended that all other weak races like that of the Jews would not be able to survive. It was on the pretext of this idea that he carried out the extermination of the Jews and Gypsies.

- The worst sufferers were the Jews. They were forced to live in miserable circumstances in the ghettos. In the early years of Nazi rule, Jews were forced to leave Germany. In the later years of Hitler's rule, the Jews were rounded up in concentration camps and gas chambers.



Nazi propaganda poster against the disabled



- Marriages between Jews and Germans were forbidden. Extramarital relations between Jews and Germans became a crime. Jews were forbidden to fly the national flag.
- Russians and Poles were also considered subhuman and captured civilians of Russia and Poland were forced to work as slave labour
- Much of north-western Poland was annexed by Germany. Polish intelligentsias were murdered in large numbers in order to keep the entire people intellectually and spiritually servile.
- Polish children who looked like Aryans were forcibly snatched from their mothers. If they passed the race tests they were raised in German families and if not, they were deposited in orphanages to perished.
- Many of them died simply through hard work starvation and extreme cold.
- The Polish were forced to leave behind their properties and homes for the Germans who came to settle in Poland. Most of the Polish were put into concentration camps. Many of them were murdered in large numbers.
- Hitler's ideology was also related to the geopolitical concept of Lebensraum or living space. He believed that new territories had to be acquired for settlement. This would enhance the area of the mother country, while enabling the settlers on new lands to retain an intimate link with the place of their origin. It would also enhance the material resources and power of the German nation.



Shoes taken away from prisoners before the 'Final Solution'

Youth in Nazi Germany

- Hitler believed that by controlling education in schools, he will be able to spread Nazi ideologies in Germany. All Jewish teachers and children were dismissed from schools.
- School textbooks were rewritten. Racial sciences were used to justify Hitler's ideology of racial supremacy. Jews were painted as dishonest and untrustworthy in books.
- The Youth League of Nazis was founded in 1922 for educating German youths. Wars were glorified, democracy was condemned, and the Jews and disabled were hated in educational institutions.
- Apart from government-supported youth organisations, all other youth organisations were banned.
- After receiving physical training, the youth had to join the Labour Services at the age of 18 and had to serve in the army.



The Youth League of Nazis trained the youth in Nazi principles and ideologies. It also prepared them for the military.

Notions about Women in Nazi Ideologies

- The Nazis saw women as mothers whose main work was to become good mothers and rear pure-blooded Aryan children. They had to teach Nazi ideologies to their children.
- Girls were expected to maintain the purity of race and had to distance themselves from the Jews.
- All mothers were not equally treated in Nazi Germany. Those mothers who gave birth to undesirable, mental or physically unfit children were punished. Those who produced racially desirable children were awarded and honoured.
- Aryan children who deviated from the prescribed code of conduct were condemned and severely punished. Those who maintained relations with the Jews, Russians and Poles were paraded with shaved heads and were jailed.

The Art of Propaganda

- The Nazis used language and media carefully to propagate their ideologies. The words used to describe treatment to the Jews were deceptive. Nazis used words such as 'special treatment' and 'final solution' for mass killings of the Jews. 'Evacuation' was used for the mass deportation of people to gas chambers. Gas chambers were known as 'disinfection areas'.
- Media was used to popularise the support of the Government. Jews and those opposing the Nazis were stereotyped. Socialists and liberals were attacked as foreign agents.
- Many propaganda films were made to create hatred for the Jews. The Nazis worked on the minds of the people and turned the attention of the Germans towards people labelled as enemies of the Nazis.

Crimes against Humanity

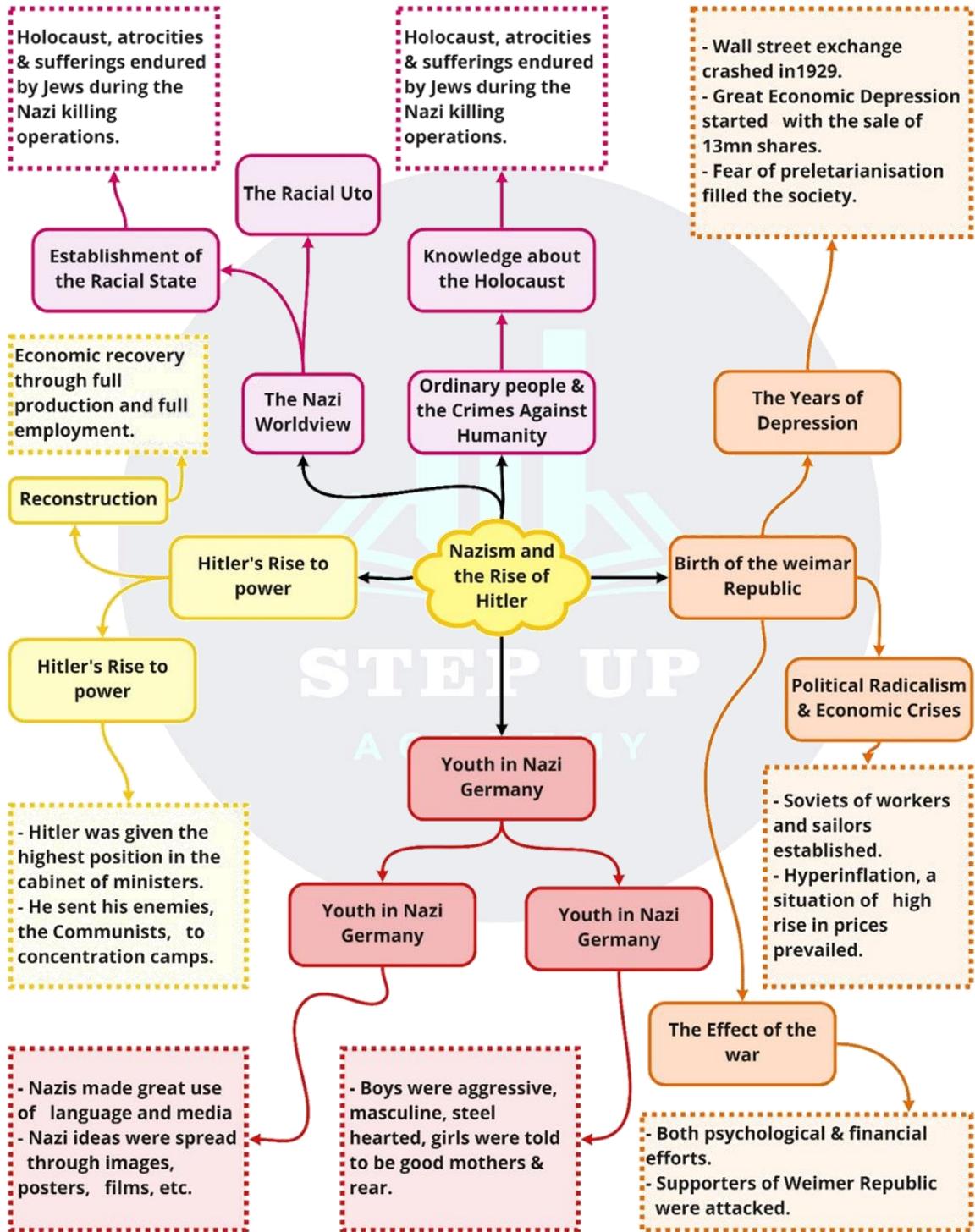
- The Nazis committed heinous crimes against humanity. Those people who raised their voices against the Nazi ideologies were beaten up by the police, jailed and sentenced to death.
- Many Germans remained silent to the crimes committed against humanity by the Nazis because of the fear of being jailed or losing their lives.
- About 6 million Jews were killed during Hitler's regime. About 1 million Polish civilians, 2,00,000 Gypsies and 70,000 mentally and physically ill Germans were killed.
- The greatest sufferings were endured by the Jews. Their elimination came to be known as the 'Holocaust'.
- The history and the memory of the Holocaust live on in memoirs, fiction, documentaries, poetry, memorials, and museums in many parts of the world today.



Jews in concentration camps



Class : 9th Social Studies (History)
Chapter-3: Nazism and the Rise of Hitler



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

- Hilter pull his country out of the League of Nations in:
 - 1933
 - 1940
 - 1943
 - 1923
- Tripartite Pact was signed between:
 - Germany
 - Italy
 - France
 - Russia
- When was Tripartite Pact signed?
 - In 1940
 - In 1919
 - In 1924
 - In 1944
- Which act established dictatorship in Germany?
 - Act of 1933
 - Act of 1919
 - Act of 1927
 - Enalding Act
- App. how many people were killed in Genocidal War.
 - 6 million Jews, 2000000 Gypsies, 1 million Polish and 70,000 Germans.
 - 2000000 Gypsies, 6 million Polish, 70,000 Jews and 1 million Germans.
 - 8 million Jews, 2000000 Gypsies, 1 million Polish and 70,000 Germans.
 - 6 million Jews, 70,000 Gypsies, 2000000 Polish and 1 million Germans.
- How were Allies power strengthened?
 - By defeating Germany
 - By defeating Japan
 - By defeating Italy
 - With the entering of US in World War
- Where is Wall Street Exchange (The world's biggest stock exchange)?
 - In Germany
 - In UK
 - In France
 - In USA
- Where did Soviet Red Army inflict a crushing defect on Germany?
 - At Stalingrad
 - At St. Petersburg
 - At Nuremberg
 - At Bavaria
- For what Auschwitz is known for?
 - For mass demonstration
 - For mass killing Centre
 - For entertainment Centre
 - For museum
- What is the name of Republic that was established in Germany after World War I?
 - Republic of German Federation
 - Republic of German Confederation
 - German Republic State
 - The Weimer Republic
- The name of German Parliament is:
 - Duma
 - Reichstang
 - Auschwitz
 - Weimer Republic
- The great economic depression began in:
 - 1929
 - 1930
 - 1928
 - 1919
- The term 'Proletarianisation' refers to:
 - Impoverished to the level of the middle class.
 - Imporverished to the level of the upper/ruling class.
 - Impoverished to the level of the working class.
 - Exploitation of the new emerging middle class.



14. Which of the following is the name of German Parliament?
 - (a) Reichstag
 - (b) Duma
 - (c) Weimer
 - (d) German Republican
15. Who was given the responsibility of economic recovery?
 - (a) Lenin
 - (b) Hitler
 - (c) Stalin
 - (d) Hjalmer School

Very Short Questions:

1. Who was Helmuth?
2. Who was Helmuth's father?
3. 'Nazism was a system.' Explain.
4. Who was Goebbels? How did Hitler and Goebbels meet their end?
5. Why was International Military Tribunal set up at Nuremberg, at the end of the war?
6. Name the countries which formed the Axis Powers during the Second World War.
7. Explain 'genocidal war'.
8. How did Nazis kill the innocent people?
9. What was the attitude of the Allied Powers at the Nuremberg Tribunal?
10. Name the countries which formed the Allied powers.

Short Questions:

1. State the verdict of the Nuremberg Tribunal. Why did the Allies avoid harsh punishment to Germany?
2. "The Treaty of Versailles was humiliating on the Germans." Give three examples in support of your statement.
3. "The Weimar constitution had some inherent defects." Explain.
4. State three ways in which Nazi state established total control over its people.
5. How did the Nazi state get the reputation as the most dreaded criminal state?
6. By the end of 1940, Hitler was at the pinnacle of his power.' Explain the statement with examples.

7. What was Hitler's aim in conquering Eastern Europe? What was its result?

Long Questions:

1. What was the impact of First World War on European and German society?
2. What was the economic crisis of 1923? How did it affect Germany?
3. Highlight the five events of 1933 that led to the destruction of democracy in Germany.
4. What was the foreign policy of Hitler?
5. How did the Nazis proceed to realize their murderous racial ideology by eliminating the 'undesirables'? Explain.

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as:

Assertion (A): Nazi ideas were spread only through newspapers.

Reason (R): The Nazis made equal efforts to appeal to all the different sections of the population.

- A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

2. In the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as:

Assertion(A) : Germany retaliated with passive resistance and printed paper currency recklessly. With too much printed money in circulation, the value of the German Mark fell.

Reason (R) : The Americans intervened and bailed Germany out of the crisis by introducing the Dawes Plan, which reworked the terms of reparation to ease the financial burden on Germans.

- A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
- B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
- C) (A) is true, but (R) is false.
- D) (A) is false, but (R) is true.

Case Study Based Question:

1. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

In May 1945, Germany surrendered to the Allies. Anticipating what was coming, Hitler, his Propaganda Minister Goebbels and his entire family committed suicide collectively in his Berlin bunker in April. At the end of the war, an International Military Tribunal at Nuremberg was set up to prosecute Nazi War Criminals for Crimes against Peace, for War Crimes and Crimes Against Humanity. Germany's conduct during the war, especially those actions which came to be called Crimes Against Humanity, raised serious moral and ethical questions and invited worldwide condemnation. What were these acts?

Under the shadow of the Second World War, Germany had waged a Genocidal war, which resulted in the mass murder of selected groups of innocent civilians of Europe. The number of people killed included 6 million Jews, 200,000 Gypsies, 1 million Polish Civilians, 70,000 Germans who were considered mentally and physically disabled, besides innumerable political opponents. Nazis devised an unprecedented means of killing people, that is, by gassing them in various killing centres like Auschwitz. The Nuremberg Tribunal sentenced only eleven leading Nazis to death. Many others were imprisoned for life. The retribution did come, yet the punishment of the Nazis was far short of the brutality and extent of their crimes. The Allies did not want to be as harsh on defeated Germany as they had been after the First World War.

- (1) When did Germany surrender to the Allies?
- A) In July 1945
 - B) In May 1945
 - C) In March 1945
 - D) In June 1945
- (2) Killing on a large scale of people leading to destruction is called:
- A) Accidental War
 - B) Suicidal War
 - C) Genocidal War
 - D) Artificial War

- (3) In 1941 Allied power of UK and France were also joined by the:

- A) USSR and Japan
- B) Japan and China
- C) Italy and Germany
- D) USSR and USA

- (4) Which category of people were the biggest victim of Nazis?

- A) Gypsies
- B) Jews
- C) Polish Civilians
- D) Mentally and physically disabled Germans.

2. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

The crisis in the economy, policy and society formed the background to Hitler's rise to power. Born in 1889 in Austria, Hitler spent his youth in poverty. When the First World War broke out, he enrolled for the Army, acted as a Messenger in the front, became a corporal, and earned medals for bravery. The German defeat horrified him and the Versailles Treaty made him furious. In 1919; he joined a small group called the German Workers' Party. He subsequently took over the Organisation and renamed it the National Socialist German Workers' Party. This Party came to be known as the Nazi Party.

In 1923, Hitler planned to seize control of Bavaria, march to Berlin and capture power. He failed, was arrested, tried for treason, and later released. The Nazis could not effectively mobilise popular support till the early 1930s. It was during the Great Depression that Nazism became a mass movement. As we have seen, after 1929, banks collapsed and businesses shut down, workers lost their jobs and the middle classes were threatened with destitution. In such a situation Nazi Propaganda stirred hopes of a better future. In 1928, the Nazi Party got no more than 2.6 per cent votes in the Reichstag – The German Parliament. By 1932, it had become the largest Party with 37 per cent votes.

- (1) When did Hitler enrol in the army?

- A) When the Second World War broke out.
- B) When the Second World War got over.
- C) When the First World War broke out.
- D) When the First World War ended.



- (2) When did Hitler join the German Workers' Party?
- A) In 1914
B) In 1919
C) In 1916
D) In 1918
- (3) Till the early, _____ the Nazis could not effectively mobilise popular support.
- A) 1920's
B) 1930's
C) 1940's
D) 1950's
- (4) What is the term used for the German Parliament?
- A) House of Laws
B) Reichstag
C) White House
D) Parliament of Germany

Answer Key

MCQ:

- (d) 1933
- (c) France
- (a) In 1940
- (d) Enabling Act
- (a) 6 million Jews, 2000000 Gypsies, 1 million Polish and 70,000 Germans.
- (b) By defeating Japan
- (d) In USA
- (a) At Stalingrad
- (b) For mass killing centre
- (d) The Weimer Republic
- (b) Reichstang
- (a) 1929
- (c) Impoverished to the level of the working class.
- (a) Reichstag
- (b) Hitler
- The International Military Tribunal was set up at Nuremberg by the Allies to prosecute Nazi war criminals for Crimes against Peace, for War Crimes and Crimes Against Humanity.
- Germany, Italy and Japan formed the Axis Powers.
- Genocidal war means killing on large scale, leading to elimination of large section of people
- They devised an unprecedented means of killing people, i.e., by gassing them in numerous killing centers like Auschwitz
- The Nuremberg Tribunal sentenced only eleven leading Nazis to death. Many were imprisoned for life. The Allies had a lenient attitude towards Germany. The Allies did not want to be harsh on Germany, as they were after the First World War.
- At the beginning of the second world war, Allied powers were led by U.K. and France. In 1941 they were joined by USSR and USA.

Short Answer:

- ### Very Short Answer:
- Helmuth, was an eleven-year-old German boy who overheard his parent's discussion on whether the entire family should be killed or only his father should commit suicide.
 - Helmuth's father was a Nazi and supporter of Adolf Hitler.
 - Nazism did not consist of few isolated acts. It was a structure of ideas about the world and politics
 - Goebbels was the propaganda minister of Hitler. They, along with Goebbels' family committed suicide collectively in Hitler's Berlin bunker in April 1945.
 - The Nuremberg Tribunal convicted Germany and dubbed its conduct during war as crime against humanity. The allies avoided harsh punishment to Germany because of the following reasons. (a) They did not want to repeat the mistakes done after First World War by being harsh to Germany that gave rise to the ideology of Nazism under Hitler. (b) They were conscious about another destructive war that could erase humanity.
 - The Treaty of Versailles was humiliating on the Germans in the following ways.
 - The War Guilt clause held Germany responsible for the war and damages, the Allied countries suffered.

- (b) Germany was forced to pay compensation amounting to £ 6 billion.
- (c) Germany lost her overseas possessions, 13 percent of her territories, 75 per cent of its iron and 26 per cent of its coal to France, Poland, Denmark and Lithuania.
3. The Weimar constitution had some inherent defects, which made the government weak and unstable and vulnerable to dictatorship. The defects were:
- (a) Proportional representation: It became impossible for any one political party to achieve a majority, leading to coalition government.
- (b) Article 48: It gave the President the powers to impose emergency, suspend civil rights and rule by decree.
- Within a short period Weimar Republic saw twenty different cabinets lasting 239 days on an average. People no longer had faith in the democratic parliamentary system.
4. The Nazi state established total control over its people by the following ways.
- (a) The Enabling Act 1933 established dictatorship in Germany. All trade unions and political parties were banned except for the Nazi Party.
- (b) The state established total control over the economy, media, army and judiciary.
- (c) Special surveillance and security forces were created to control society in the ways that Nazis Wanted.
5. Special surveillance and security forces were created to keep a close watch on the activities of the people and to control and order society in the ways that Nazi wanted. Apart from regular police force and SA or the Storm Troopers, there was the Gestapo (secret state police), the SS (the protection squads), the criminal police and the Security Service (SD) the new organised forces enjoyed extra-constitutional powers. These dreaded organisation and their workings gave the Nazi state the reputation of the most dreaded criminal state. People could be detained in torture chambers and sent to concentration camps or arrested and detained without any legal procedures.
6. (a) In foreign policy, Hitler acquired quick successes. He left the League of Nations, reoccupied Rhineland, annexed Austria, took German-speaking Sudetenland from Czechoslovakia and finally the whole country.
- (b) In September 1939, Germany invaded Poland. It started the war with England and France. Puppet governments who supported Hitler were set up in many parts of Europe.
- (c) In September 1940, Hitler signed a Tripartite pact with Italy and Japan to strengthen his claim to international power.
7. Hitler wanted to conquer Eastern Europe because he wanted to ensure food supplies and living space for the Germans. He attacked Soviet Union in June 1941. The Red Army inflicted a humiliating defeat on Germany. It was a historic blunder on the part of Germany. Her western frontiers were exposed to British aerial bombing and eastern frontier to the soviet army. The soviet army established its control over the entire Eastern Europe.

Long Answer:

1. The First World War left a deep impact on European and German society and polity.
- (a) Financially, Europe which was a continent of creditors turned into one of debtors.
- (b) Soldiers were placed above civilians. Politicians and publicists wanted men to be aggressive, strong and masculine. Aggressive propaganda was carried out.
- (c) Democracy which was a new idea could not survive during interwar Europe.
- (d) The Weimar Republic, formed in Germany after the war, had to accept war guilt and national humiliation. It had to make reparation payments which made Germany financially crippled.
- (e) Media glorified trench life against the truth in which soldiers were leading a miserable life.
2. (a) Germany had fought the war largely on loans and had to make reparation payments in gold. This depleted gold reserves and resources were scarce.
- (b) In 1923 Germany refused to pay, and the French retaliated by occupying the Ruhr, to claim their coal.



Germany protested and printed paper currency. With too much money in circulation, the value of German mark fell. In April, the US dollar was equal to 24000 marks, in July 353,000 marks, in August 4621,000 marks. By December figure had run into trillion. As the value of the mark declined the prices of goods started rising. This crisis came to be known as hyperinflation.

3. The events of 1933 that led to the destruction of democracy in Germany are as follows.

- (a) On 30 January 1933 President Hindenburg gave the Chancellorship, the highest position in cabinet to Hitler. Hitler now tried to dismantle the structure of democratic rule.
- (b) A mysterious fire broke out in German Parliament which facilitated his move.
- (c) The Fire Decree of 27 February 1933 indefinitely suspended civic rights like freedom of speech, press and assembly that had been granted by the Weimar republic.
- (d) Communists, who were the enemies of Hitler were sent to the concentration camps.
- (e) On 3 March, Enabling Act was passed. It established dictatorship in Germany. Hitler could rule without the consent of the parliament. All political parties and trade unions were banned except the Nazi Party. The state had full control over media, army and judiciary.

4. The events of 1933 that led to the destruction of democracy in Germany are as follows.

- (a) On 30 January 1933 President Hindenburg gave the Chancellorship, the highest position in cabinet to Hitler. Hitler now tried to dismantle the structure of democratic rule.
- (b) A mysterious fire broke out in German Parliament which facilitated his move.
- (c) The Fire Decree of 27 February 1933 indefinitely suspended civic rights like freedom of speech, press and assembly that had been granted by the Weimar republic.
- (d) Communists, who were the enemies of Hitler were sent to the concentration camps.
- (e) On 3 March, Enabling Act was passed. It established dictatorship in Germany. Hitler could rule without the consent of the parliament. All political parties and trade

unions were banned except the Nazi Party. The state had full control over media, army and judiciary.

5. The Nazis proceeded to realise their murderous racial ideology by eliminating the undesirables in the following manner.

- (a) Jews remained the worst sufferers in Nazi Germany. From 1933-1938 Jewish business was boycotted, they were expelled from government services and their property was confiscated. From 1939-1945 the Jews were kept in ghettos, in extreme poverty and misery and eventually they were killed in gas chambers.
- (b) Germany occupied the north-western Poland. Poles were forced to leave their homes and property, to be occupied by ethnic Germans. Poles were then sent to the final destination of the 'undesirables'.
- (c) Members of Polish intelligentsia were murdered in large number in order to keep the entire people intellectually servile.
- (d) Polish children who looked like Aryans were forcibly snatched and examined by race experts. If they passed the test, they were raised in German families and if not, they were sent to orphanages, most of them died.
- (e) Poland had some of the largest ghettos and gas chambers where Jews were killed.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. A) Both (A) and (R) are true, and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
2. B) Both (A) and (R) are true, but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).

Case Study Answer:

1. Answer:

- (1) B) In May 1945
- (2) C) Genocidal War
- (3) D) USSR and USA
- (4) B) Jews

2. Answer:

- (1) C) When the First World War broke out.
- (2) B) In 1919
- (3) B) 1930's
- (4) B) Reichstag



Forest Society and Colonialism

4

Forests are not only the providers of food, fruits, fibers, fuel, and fodder but also give shelter to various tribes and people. Since ancient times, forests have been the abode of people. As civilisation developed and the population increased, people began to clear forests for agricultural purposes.

Deforestation

In 1600 CE, only one-sixth of India's land was under cultivation. At present, about half of the land is under cultivation. Many reasons have been attributed towards the destruction of forests.

- The increase in the demand of food crops led to the clearing of forests for agricultural purposes.
- The British in order to maximize their revenues encouraged the production of commercial crops such as indigo, sugar, cotton and jute.
- The British colonialists regarded forests as unproductive. To them, the best way to increase their productivity was by bringing them under cultivation.
- Because of the diminishing forest cover of England, Indian wood was felled for building ships for England. Forests were recklessly felled, and the wood was exported from India to England.
- The beginning and expansion of railways in India led to the destruction of forests on a large scale. In 1850s, in Madras Presidency alone, about 35,000 trees were felled. The contractors felled trees indiscriminately for supplying timber to the Government. Apart from it, many forests were also felled in regions where railway lines were laid down.

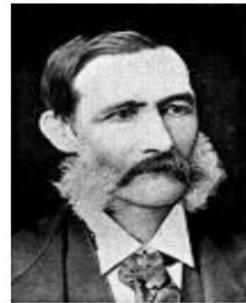


Forests provide fibre, food, fruits, fodder and fuel to the villagers.



The Rise of Commercial Forestry

The British in India were worried over the fast-depleting forest cover in India. They felt that the felling of trees by local people and contractors was destroying forests. They invited a German forest expert, Dietrich Brandis, to plan the conservation of forests and appointed him as the Inspector General of Forests in India. Brandis set up the Indian Forest Service in 1864 and helped in the formulation of the Indian Forest Act of 1865. The Imperial Forest Research Institute was also set up at Dehradun in 1906. He formulated the system of 'scientific forestry'. Some features of scientific forestry in India:



Dietrich Brandis

In degraded natural forests, one type of tree is planted in straight rows; this was called plantation.

- Areas under forests were measured, forests were surveyed and working plans were made for forest management.
- The forests were systematically felled, and trees were replanted again.
- The Indian Forest Act was passed. It divided the forests in India into three categories:
 - Reserved forests
 - Protected forests
 - Village forests
- The villagers were not allowed to fell trees in the reserved forests. They could only collect wood from the protected and village forests for building their houses or for fuel.

Impact of Scientific Forestry on the Lives of Forest Dwellers and Villagers

The villagers and tribals depended on forest produce to fulfil their daily needs. Forests provided them with food, tubers, fruits, seeds, nuts, fuel, fodder, leaves and medicinal herbs. Leaves were stitched together to make baskets. The Forest Act imposed limited restrictions on the following activities:

- Cutting wood for building houses
- Collecting fruits and roots
- Hunting and fishing
- Shifting cultivation
- Forest guards appointed by the Government often demanded bribes from the villagers in order to collect forest produce.

Shifting Cultivation

The British Government imposed restrictions on the practices of shifting cultivation. In shifting cultivation, a part of the forest field was cleared, trees were burnt, and their ashes were sprinkled on the field. Seeds were sown and plants were grown. After cultivating the field for about two to three years, a piece of land was left fallow for the forests to grow back. Another patch of forests was then cleared for cultivation. The Government banned shifting agriculture because trees of good quality could not be immediately grown on fallow lands. Burning of trees could also lead to forest fires. It also became difficult for the Government to calculate taxes. Many forest communities like the Baigars in central India suffered immensely because of the ban on shifting cultivation. Forest laws deprived people of their customary rights to hunt for food; however, hunting itself became a great sport of the colonialists. Many rewards were also offered by the British Government for killing wild animals such as tigers and lions. It was believed by the colonialists that these animals posed dangers to farmers who were cultivating forest lands.



In shifting cultivation, a patch of forest is burned to clear land for cultivation.

New Traders and Employment

- After the Forest Department took control of Indian forests, many employment opportunities were created. Many communities traded in forest goods. However, the trade was completely regulated and supervised by the Government.
- Trading rights in Indian forests were also given to many European firms.

However, after restrictions were imposed by the colonial government on using forest produce by the forest communities, many tribals began to work on plantations. They worked on extremely low wages and were exploited.

Rebellions in the Forests

As a result of the Government's excessive control over forests, many forest communities revolted against the Government.

Revolt in Bastar

- Bastar is located in the southern part of the present state of Chhattisgarh. Many tribal communities such as the Gonds, Dhurwas, Bhatras and Halbas lived in the region. These communities used forest produce for satisfying their basic needs.
- When the forests were declared as reserved forests, many villages lying near the forests were displaced. Some villages were allowed to remain but in return they had to help the Government in transporting trees from one place to the other.
- Many forest communities gathered to talk about the excesses of the Government. The Dhurwas took the initiative. Many people of the surrounding villages began to collect mango boughs, chilies and arrows to invite people to rebel against the Government. Gunda Dhur was an important leader of the rebellion.
- In the rebellion that followed, bazaars were looted, police stations were burnt, and seized grains were distributed.
- The rebellion was suppressed by the British. They surrounded the camps of the tribals and the villagers and fired upon them. Those people who participated in the rebellion were either punished or killed. Many people fled into the deep forests. The British however were not able to capture Gunda Dhur.

What is sad to note is that even after Independence, the people of Bastar were kept out of the forests and the woods were used for industrial purposes.



People in Bastar revolted against the Government because their rights in the forests were denied.



Forest Transformation in Java

- Java is an island of Indonesia. It was a heavily forested region during the 1600s. There were many villages in the fertile plains in Java. The Kalongs of Java were a community which specialised in forest cutting and shifting cultivation.
- When the Dutch colonised Java, they began to control the forests and subdued the Kalangs and made them work for them in the forests.
- The Dutch enacted the forest laws in Java. The access of villagers into the forests was restricted. They could cut trees only for building houses or for making river boats. Villagers were not allowed to graze their cattle in young stands and could not transport wood without permission.
- Forests in Java were however used by the Dutch for their own use. Forests were destroyed to build railway sleepers which were exported. This required labour.
- The Dutch imposed rents in cultivated forests but exempted those who were willing to provide free services to the Government for cutting and transporting timber. This came to be known as the 'blandongdiensten' system. Later, instead of rent exemption, forest villagers were given small wages.
- In the 1890s, Surontiko Samin of Randublatung village began to the ownership of forests by the state. His ideas quickly spread to the other villages. Many Saminists refused to pay taxes to the Dutch.
- During the Second World War, the Dutch burned sawmills and piles of teak wood so that these do not fall into the hands of the Japanese. When the Japanese occupied Java, they destroyed the forests by using timber for their own war needs.
- Villagers were also forced to cut down the forests. This also led to the expansion of cultivation into the destroyed forest lands.

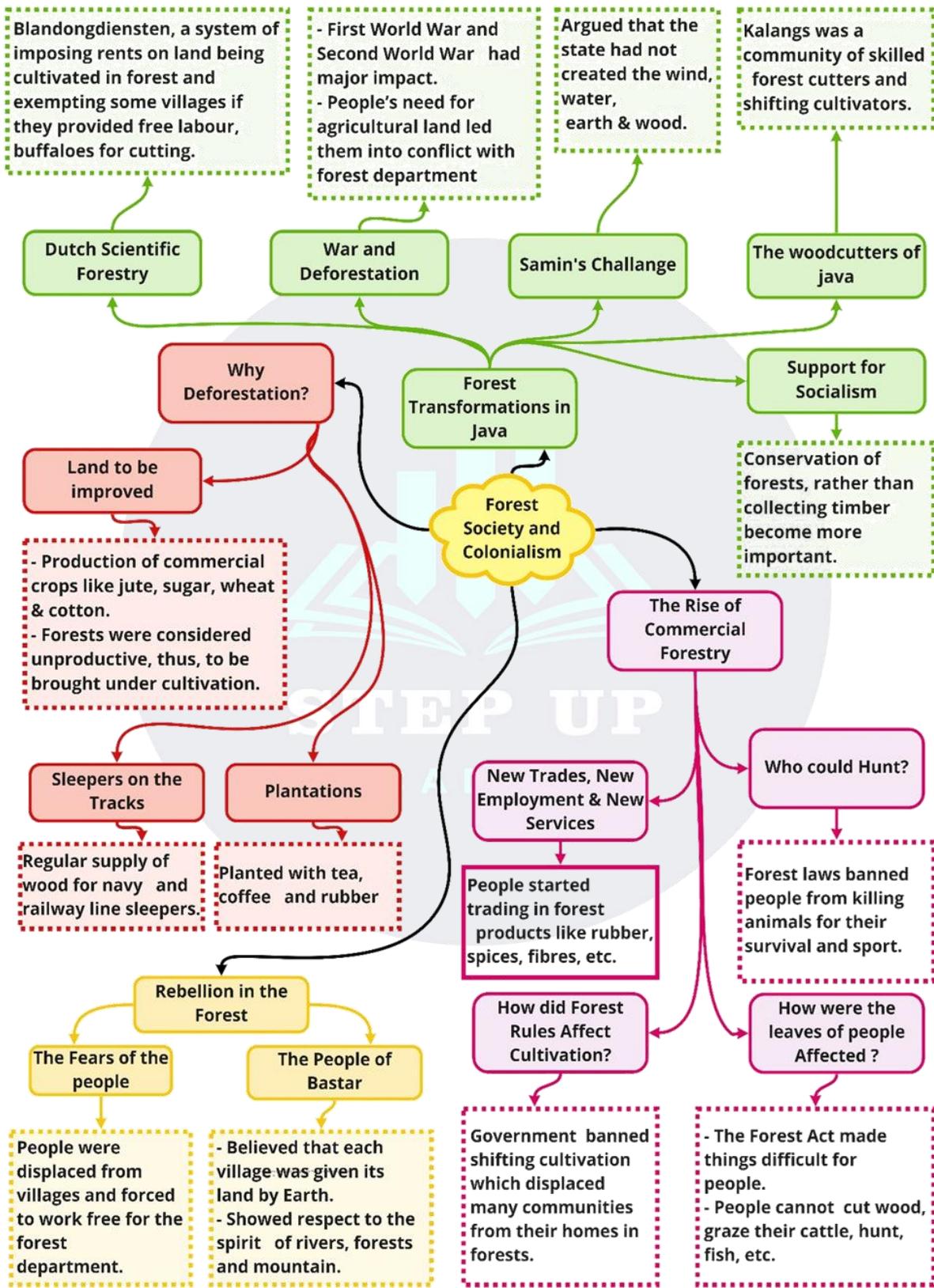


Java is a rice-producing island in Indonesia. Earlier it was a heavily forested area.

Views Regarding Scientific Forestry

Many governments in Asia and Africa have now begun to see the disadvantages of scientific forestry. It has been realized that keeping the forest communities out of villages have resulted in several conflicts. In scientific forestry, attention is given to cutting of timber rather than conservation of forests. It has now been realised that in order to conserve forests, forest communities should be involved. In India, forest communities played an important role in protecting forests. Many chunks of forests were considered 'sacred groves' which were protected by villagers. The forests of Mizoram and Kerala have survived because of the protection of sacred groves. Many ideas and plans are being formulated in order to conserve and protect forests through a better system of forest management.

Class : 9th Social Studies (History)
Chapter-4: Forest Society and Colonialism





Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

1. Where was first Imperial Forest Research Institute set up?
 - (a) At Dehradun
 - (b) At Shillong
 - (c) At Shimla
 - (d) At Uttarakhand
2. Which of the following is not the name of shifting or swidden agriculture/Cultivation?
 - (a) Milpa
 - (b) Chitemene or Tavy
 - (c) Podu/Penda
 - (d) Taungya
3. Where is Bastar located?
 - (a) In Andhra Pradesh
 - (b) In Orissa
 - (c) In Southernmost parts of Chhattisgarh
 - (d) In Madhya Pradesh.
4. In which country the similar situation prevailed as in the forest of Bastar?
 - (a) In Somalia
 - (b) In Indonesia
 - (c) In Malaysia
 - (d) In Sri Lanka
5. Which of the following is the causes of Forest Act enacted in 1865?
 - (a) Forests were divided into four categories.
 - (b) Forests were divided into three categories.
 - (c) Villagers could take nothing from" these forests.
 - (d) Villagers could take anything from these forests.
6. Between 1700 to 1995, how much area of forest cover in the world cleared for industrial use?
 - (a) 9.3%
 - (b) 8.3%
 - (c) 3.9%
 - (d) 8.5%
7. Which of the following community or tribe live in Bastar?
 - (a) Maria
 - (b) Gaddis
 - (c) Gonds
 - (d) Halbas
8. Who were Kalangs?
 - (a) Community of skilled Labourer's
 - (b) Community of skilled craftsman's
 - (c) Community of skilled forest cutters and shifting cultivator
 - (d) Skilled labourers and craftsman's who lived in central Java.
9. Dutch began their scientific forestry in.
 - (a) Sumatra
 - (b) Java
 - (c) Kalimantan
 - (d) West Irian
10. Sacred Groves are known as:
 - (i) Sarnas (ii) Devarakudu (iii) Kan (iv) Rac
 - (a) (i) and (iv)
 - (b) (iii) and (iv)
 - (c) only (iv) is correct
 - (d) All are correct.
11. India's landmass under cultivation in 1600 AD was:
 - (a) About 1/6th of the India's landmass
 - (b) About 1/8th of the India's landmass
 - (c) About 1/4th of the India's landmass
 - (d) About 1/3rd of the India's landmass
12. India forest service was set up in:
 - (a) 1764
 - (b) 1794
 - (c) 1864
 - (d) 1866
13. When was Indian Forest Act implemented?
 - (a) In 1795
 - (b) In 1865
 - (c) In 1845
 - (d) In 1885



14. What was the total length of railway tracks in 1890?
 - (a) 765000 km
 - (b) 66500 km
 - (c) 25500 km
 - (d) 45500 km
15. How many trees were alone cut down annually in Madras Presidency in the early 1850s to build sleepers ?
 - (a) About 30800 trees
 - (b) About 35000 trees
 - (c) About 40000 trees
 - (d) About 40500 trees

Very Short:

1. How are forests useful to us?
2. Which common feature is found in the Amazon forests and the Western Ghats?
3. 'What is deforestation?
4. Mention the reason for increased landmass under cultivation in India.
2. Why did the British encourage the production of commercial crops in India?
3. What are sleepers?
4. Why did oak forests in England disappear?
5. Why was wood needed for railways?
6. How did the forests around railway tracks start disappearing.
7. Name the plantations for which large areas of India's natural forest were cleared

Short Questions:

1. What is deforestation? How did cultivation expand rapidly during the colonial period?
2. Who was appointed as the first Inspector General of Forests in India? Explain any three reforms introduced by him.
3. What is scientific forestry? How did the forest officials implement it?
4. Why is it necessary to increase area under forests? Give three reasons.
5. Why did the government ban shifting cultivation? What was the result?
6. Why was hunting popular in India and what were its effects?
7. What was the impact of regulation of trade in forest products by the British government in India?

Long Questions:

1. How did commercial farming lead to a decline in forest cover during colonial period?
2. Why was Dietrich Brandis invited by the British government? What steps were taken by him to protect forests?
3. What was the practice of shifting cultivation? Why did European foresters want to unfollow it.
4. The new forest laws changed the lives of forest dwellers. They could not hunt'. How?
5. Describe the life of the tribal people of Bastar.

Answer Key

MCQ:

1. (a) At Dehradun
2. (d) Taungya
3. (c) In Southernmost parts of Chhattisgarh
4. (b) In Indonesia
5. (d) Villagers could take anything from these forests
6. (a) 9.3%
7. (b) Gaddis
8. (c) Community of skilled forest cutters and shifting cultivator
9. (b) Java
10. (d) All are correct.
11. (a) About 1/6th of the India's landmass
12. (c) 1864
13. (b) In 1865
14. (c) 25500 Km
15. (b) About 35000 trees



Very Short Answer:

1. Forests provide bamboo, wood for fuel, grass, charcoal, packaging, fruits, flowers, animals, birds and many other things.
2. It is possible to find as many as 500 different plant species in one forest patch in the Amazon forests and the Western Ghats.
3. The disappearance of forests is referred to as deforestation
4. Over the centuries, population increased, demand for food went up so peasants extended the boundaries of cultivation, clearing forests and breaking new land.
5. The demand for the commercial crops like jute, sugar, wheat and cotton increased in the 19th century Europe. Food grains were required to feed the growing urban population and raw materials were needed for industrial production.
6. Wooden planks laid across railway tracks, to hold them in position are called sleepers.
7. Oak forests in England were disappearing fast because oak wood was needed to build ships.
8. Wood was needed as fuel to run the locomotives and to lay railway lines sleepers to hold the tracks together.
9. The railway tracks expanded; trees were being cut for sleepers. The government gave out contracts to individuals to fulfil the supply and they cut the trees indiscriminately.
10. Large areas of natural forests were cleared for the cultivation of tea, coffee and rubber plantation.

Short Answer:

1. The disappearance of forests is referred to as deforestation. Cultivation expanded rapidly during the colonial period in the following ways.
 - (a) The British encouraged the production of commercial crops like sugar, wheat, jute and cotton.
 - (b) Large areas of forests, considered to be wilderness was brought under cultivation.
 - (c) Large areas of natural forests were also cleared to make way for tea, coffee and rubber plantations to meet Europe's growing need for these commodities. (any two)

2. Dietrich Brandis, a German expert, was appointed as the First Inspector General of forests in India by the British Government to save the forests.

The following were the main reforms introduced by Dietrich Brandis.

- (a) In 1864, Dietrich Brandis set up the 'Indian Forest Service' (IFS) and helped formulate the Indian Forest Act of 1865.
- (b) He encouraged/advised for 'scientific forestry' where in place of natural forests, one type of trees were planted in straight rows.

According to the Forest Act of 1878, there were three categories of forests—reserved, protected and village forests. Villagers were not allowed to take anything from the forests.

According to the plan/reform, Forest officials surveyed and planned that every year how much of the plantation will be cut and replanted so that trees remain always ready to be cut again, in some years.

- (c) In 1906, the Imperial Forest Research Institute was set up in Dehradun.

3. In scientific forestry, natural forests, which had different kind of trees, were cut down. In their place one type of trees were grown in straight rows.

Forest officials surveyed the area and estimated how much of the plantation was to be cut. The area was then replanted and trees could be cut after a few years.

4. (a) Forests are useful as the people use forest products in a variety of ways. Fruits and tubers were eaten because they were nutritious and herbs were used for medicinal purposes.
 - (b) Bamboo was used to make fences, baskets and umbrellas. The wood was used to make agricultural implements like yokes and ploughs.
 - (c) A dried scooped-out gourd was used as a portable water bottle. Oil for cooking and lighting lamps was acquired from the fruit of the Mahua tree.
 - (d) The siadi creeper was used to make ropes and leaves could be used, usually stitched together to make disposable cups and plates.

5. European foresters regarded the practice of shifting cultivation as harmful. They felt:
- (a) the land which was used for cultivation every few years could not grow trees for railway timber.
 - (b) when the forests were burnt, there was a danger of flames spreading and burning valuable timber.
 - (c) It became difficult for the government to calculate taxes.

Many communities were forcibly displaced from the forest, some had to change their occupations.

6. Founding of big game was a popular sport in India. It was a popular sport among the emperors and nobility. Many Mughal paintings show emperors and princes enjoying a hunt. Under colonial rule, hunting increased to such an extent that many species became extinct. For the British, large animals was a sign of primitive society. They believed that by killing large animals, they would civilise India. Tigers, leopards and wolves were killed, because they posed a threat to the villagers. Over 80,000 tigers, 150,000 leopards and 20,00,00 wolves were killed. Only then did environmentalists and conservators advocate that these animals had to be protected.
7. Following was the import of regulations of trade in forest products by the British government in India.
- (a) Trade in forest products was completely regulated by the British government. It gave many large European trading firms the sole right to trade in the forest products of particular areas in Indian Forests.
 - (b) The grazing and hunting by local people were restricted. In the process many nomadic communities like the Koravas and Karachi lost their livelihood.
 - (c) Some of them began to be called 'criminal tribes' and were forced to work in factories and plantations under government supervision.

Long Answer:

1. The factors which led to deforestation during the colonial rule are as follows:
- (a) The British encouraged the production of commercial crops like wheat, sugar, jute and

cotton. The demands for these crops increased in the 19th century Europe because food grains were needed to feed the growing urban population and raw materials were required for growing industries.

- (b) In the 19th century, the colonial government thought that forests were unproductive. The land had to be brought under cultivation, which would increase food production and revenue. Between 1880 and 1920 cultivation area rose by 6.7 million hectares. The forests had to be cleared. As the population increased and demand for food went up, the forests were cleared for the expansion of agricultural land.
 - (c) The oak forests were fast depleting. It became a problem to supply timber for the Royal Navy. Ships could not be built without a regular supply of timber. Ships were needed to protect the overseas colonies. By 1820 search parties were sent to explore forest resources in India. Trees were being cut on a large scale and exported to England.
 - (d) Wood was needed as fuel to run locomotives and to lay sleepers which could hold the railway tracks. As early as 1850, 3500 trees were cut annually in Madras presidency for sleepers.
 - (e) Large areas of forests were cleared to make way for tea, coffee and rubber plantations.
2. The Britishers feared that the reckless felling and cutting of trees by traders destroyed the forests. So they invited Dietrich Brandis for advice and made him the first Inspector General of Forests in India.

The steps taken by Brandis to protect the forests were:

- (a) A proper system was adopted to manage forest and people to conserve forests.
- (b) Rules about the use of forest resources were framed.
- (c) Felling of trees and grazing of land was restricted, so that forests could be used for timber production.
- (d) Anyone who did not follow the system was punished. Brandis set up the Indian Forest Service in 1864.



3. One of the major impacts of European colonialism was on the practice of shifting cultivation or Swidden agriculture.

This practice was followed in Asia, Africa and South America. In shifting cultivation, parts of the forest are cut and burnt. After the first monsoon showers, seeds are sown in the ashes and crop is harvested in October-November. Such plots are cultivated for a few years and then left fallow for 12 to 18 years for the forest to grow.

European foresters did not want the cultivators to follow this practice. They felt that the land which was used for cultivation for a few years could not grow trees to provide timber for railways. When the forests were burnt, there was a danger of flames spreading to other parts of the forest. It was also difficult for the government to calculate taxes. So they decided to ban shifting cultivation.

4. The forest laws changed the lives of forest dwellers significantly. Before the forest laws, many people who lived in or near the forests lived by hunting deer, partridges and a number of small animals. The customary right of the forest dwellers was prohibited by the forests law. They were punished for poaching, if caught hunting.

Hunting of big game became a sport under colonial rule. Hunting increased so much, that various species became extinct. British believed

large animals were a sign of primitive society and by killing dangerous animals they would civilise India. People were rewarded for killing tigers, wolves and other animals because they were a threat to the cultivators.

5. (a) Bastar is located in the southernmost part of Chhattisgarh and borders Andhra Pradesh, Odisha and Maharashtra. A number of different communities such as Maria and Muria Gonds, Dhurwas, Bhatras and Halbas live in Bastar. They speak different languages but have common beliefs and customs.
- (b) The people in Bastar believe that the Earth gave land to each village and in return they look after the land and make offerings at each agricultural season.
- (c) They also show respect to the spirit of the rivers, mountains and the forests.
- (d) The local people of the village look after the natural resources of the village. If people wanted wood from another village, they had to make payments, called devsari, dand or man. Some people also engaged watchmen to look after their forest and each household contributed some grain to pay them.
- (e) Every year the headmen of the villages met and discussed issues concerning the forest.



Pastoralists in The Modern World

5

Nomadic pastoralists are people who do not live at one place but move from one place to the other in order to find pastures for their cattle and to earn their living.

Pastoralists in India

In India, many pastoralist communities move from place to place in order to find pastures for their cattle. These pastoral communities also sell grains, meat, and hides. Some major pastoral communities in the mountains of India are:

Gujjar Bakarwals of Jammu and Kashmir

- The Gujjar Bakarwals are herders of goat and sheep. During the winter when the Himalayas are covered with snow, they live in the foothills of the Siwalik ranges. The dry scrubs provide food for their cattle.
- When the summer begins in April, the Gujjar Bakarwals move northwards to the Kashmir valley. As the snow melts, the mountains are covered with lush green grass which provides nutritious forage for their cattle. With the onset of winter, the Gujjar Bakarwals again travel down to the low hills of the Himalayas.

Gaddi Shepherds of Himachal Pradesh

- The Gaddi shepherds also follow the same movement as that of the Gujjar Bakarwals. They spend winter with their cattle in the foothills of the Sewali's. When the snow melts, they move northwards into Lahaul and Spiti.
- They then move further to the high mountains in order to find pasturelands for their cattle. They begin retreating in September.



Gaddi shepherds of Himachal Pradesh

Gujjars in Garhwal and Kumaon

- The Gujjars come down to the dry forested area below the foothills of Garhwal and Kumaon to graze their cattle. During the summer, they go up high to the meadows in the high mountains.

- The British administrators were suspicious of nomadic pastoralists. They wanted these communities to settle at one place and take up agriculture. Nomads came to be regarded as criminals. By the Criminal Tribes Act of 1871, the nomadic communities came to be regarded as criminals.
- The British Government taxed almost every commodity in order to increase its revenues. So, taxes were imposed even on cattle. Pastoralists had to pay taxes on every animal which grazed in the pastures.
- The pastoralists coped with the changes. While some reduced the number of cattle which they owned, some discovered new grazing lands. Rich pastoralists brought lands and settled at one place. However, many poor pastoralists got into the vicious cycle of debt and lost their cattle.

Pastoralism in Africa

In Africa, at present, more than 22 million of African population depend on pastoral activity for earning their livelihood. Some pastoral communities are the Bedouins, Maasai, Somali, Turkana, and Berbers. Members of these communities raise their cattle for selling milk, wool and hides. They also combine pastoral activities with cultivation.

The Maasai Pastoralists

The Maasai pastoralists mainly live in East Africa. They mostly inhabit the parts of Tanzania and Kenya. The following problems have been faced by the Maasai pastoralists:

- The Maasai pastoralists face continuous problems of grazing lands. European imperial powers divided Maasailand between England and Germany. The grazing lands were taken over by the colonists. Thus, the Maasai lost more than half of their grazing lands.
- The British Government encouraged local farming communities to expand cultivation. Thus, the pastoral lands were changed to agricultural fields.
- Large patches of pastoral lands were also changed to reserves such as Maasai Mara and Samburu National Park. The entry of the Maasai was restricted in these reserves.
- This created pressure on small pieces of land where the pastoralists grazed their cattle. Fodder always remained in short supply.
- Many other pastoral communities in Africa also faced such problems. The exhaustion of pasturelands affected the lives of their cattle. The pastoral communities were not allowed to move into other territories without valid permits.
- Pastoralists were also not allowed to enter the markets in the white areas.
- Dying of pastures and restrictions imposed on the movements of Maasai pastoralists led to a steep decline in the number of cattle, sheep and goats owned by Maasai pastoralists.



Women of the Maasai community of Kenya

Division of the Maasai Communities

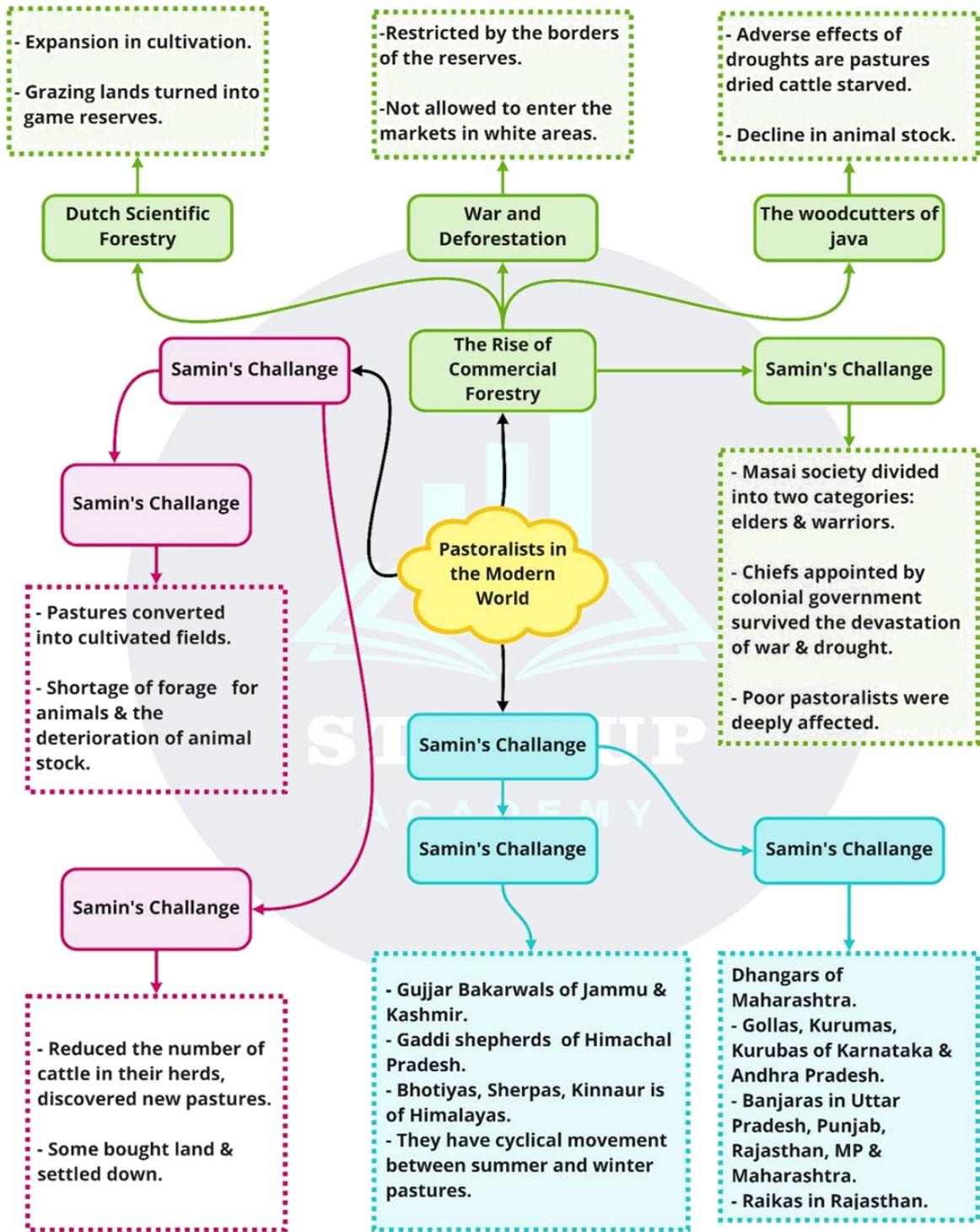
- In the pre-colonial period, the Maasai society was divided into two social categories-the elders and the warriors. While the elders looked after the administration of the clan, the warriors were responsible for the protection of the tribe.
- The Maasai warriors also conducted organised cattle raids.
- The British appointed chiefs of the different sub-groups of Maasai who were responsible for maintaining the administration of the state.



- The British also imposed various restrictions on raiding and warfare. This affected the authority of the elders and the warriors.
- The chiefs appointed by the British accumulated wealth over time. They began to lend money, started trading and settled in towns. The families of the chiefs stayed behind in the villages to look after cattle. This helped them to survive droughts and famines.
- However, the poor pastoralists had no money and only their cattle to live on. During droughts, they almost lost everything. They then moved to the towns in search of work. Many of them got regular work in road and building construction.
- The division of the Maasai communities into the rich and the poor and the disturbing of the traditional differences based on age were two social changes which occurred in the Maasai communities during the colonial rule.



Class : 9th Social Studies (History)
Chapter-5: Pastoralists in the Modern World





Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

1. In Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh the dry plateau was covered with stone and grass inhabited by:
 - (a) Cattle herders
 - (b) Goat herders
 - (c) Sheep herders
 - (d) Camel herders
2. Who were Gollas?
 - (a) Cattle herded tribe of dry central plateau region.
 - (b) Sheep herded tribe of dry central plateau region.
 - (c) Camel herded tribe of dry central plateau region.
 - (d) Goat herded tribe of dry central plateau region.
3. Banjaras are well-known groups of graziers and found in the villages of:

(i) Madhya Pradesh (ii) Punjab (iii) Rajasthan (iv) Uttar Pradesh (v) Maharashtra (vi) Haryana

 - (a) (i), (v), (vi)
 - (b) (ii), (v), (vi)
 - (c) (i), (ii), (iii), (v)
 - (d) (iv), (v), (vi)
4. Which of the following is the immediate impact of the colonial rule on the life of the pastoralists?
 - (a) Their grazing ground increased
 - (b) They were paid rent free land
 - (c) Their agriculture stock increased
 - (d) Their grazing ground shrunked and their agricultural stock, trade and crafts were adversely affected.
5. The colonial Government in India in 1871 enacted an Act. Name it.
 - (a) Forest Conservation Act
 - (b) The Criminal Tribal Act
 - (c) The Scientific Forestry
 - (d) The Tribal Act
6. Nomads are the people:
 - (a) who do not live at one place but move from one to another to earn their living.
 - (b) who temporary shift from one place to another.
 - (c) who live at one place and move from place to place to earn their living.
 - (d) who are very brave.
7. Which tribe did not evolve pastoral activity in South Africa?
 - (a) Massai
 - (b) Gonds
 - (c) Boran
 - (d) Turkene
8. Which tribe combined cultivators with pastoralism in India?
 - (a) Raikas
 - (b) Maru
 - (c) Gujjars
 - (d) Gaddi
9. What is referred as Bhabar?
 - (a) A wet forest area below the foothills of Garhwal and Kumaun.
 - (b) A moderate area having plenty of vegetation.
 - (c) A dry area which is sparsely populated.
 - (d) A dry forest area below the foothills of Garhwal and Kamaun.
10. Gaddi Shepherds came down from the high meadow in:
 - (a) September
 - (b) February
 - (c) October
 - (d) Mid of October.
11. For what Maru tribe is well known?
 - (a) For plantation agriculture
 - (b) For sheep rearing
 - (c) For camel herding
 - (d) For cyclic seasonal movement

12. The population of Dhangars pastoral community in Maharashtra is about:
 - (a) 467500
 - (b) 476500
 - (c) 476500
 - (d) 467000
 13. The Maru Raikas herded.....?
 - (a) Camels
 - (b) Sheep
 - (c) Goats
 - (d) All
 14. The Banjaras were not found in?
 - (a) Punjab
 - (b) Delhi
 - (c) Rajasthan
 - (d) Maharashtra
 15. The warriors consisted of ___?
 - (a) Elder people
 - (b) Younger people
 - (c) Children
 - (d) Healthy people
9. Name the most important pastoral community of Maharashtra
 10. Why were the Dhangars welcomed by the Konkani peasants?

Short Questions:

1. Explain any three factors that the pastoral groups have to consider to sustain their life.?
2. Explain any three different livelihood practices adopted by the pastoralists in the 20th century, as they left their traditional occupations.
3. Give one example to explain why the pastoralists have been compelled to change their movement in modern times.
4. Who are Gujjar Bakarwals of Jammu and Kashmir? Name their winter and summer grounds. Why did they go to these places?
5. Write about the life style of the Gujjars of Kangra.
6. Who were Dhangars? What were their occupations? Why were they continuously on the move?
7. Discuss the various restrictions imposed on pastoral groups in Africa.

Long Questions:

Very Short:

1. Name the regions of the cyclic movement of Kurumas and Kurubas.
 2. Which Pastoralist nomads live in Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh?
 3. Why were the British officials suspicious of the nomadic people? Give one reason..
 4. How did the Gaddis earn their livelihood?
 5. What are bugyals?
 6. Who are Gujjar Bakarwals?
 7. What is Bhabhar?
 8. Who were Bhotiyas, Sherpas and Kinnauris?
1. Who are pastoral nomads? Describe any four features of them?
 2. In which two social categories was the Maasai society divided in pre-colonial times? In what way
 3. Which parts of the African continent are inhabited by the pastoralists? What are the different types of activities they are involved in?
 4. How did the pastoralists cope with the changes in new times
 5. Why were wasteland rules enacted in various parts of the country?

Answer Key

MCQ:

1. (c) Sheep herders
2. (a) Cattle herded tribe of dry central plateau region.
3. (c) (i), (ii), (iii), (v)
4. (d) Their grazing ground shrunked and their agricultural stock, trade and crafts were adversely affected.
5. (b) The Criminal Tribal Act
6. (a) who do not live at one place but move from one to another to earn their living.



7. (b) Gonds
8. (a) Raikas
9. (d) A dry forest area below the foothills of Garhwal and Kumaun.
10. (a) September
11. (c) For camel herding
12. (d) 467000
13. (a) Camels
14. (b) Delhi
15. (b) Younger people

Very Short Answer:

1. The Kurumas and Kurubas lived in Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh. In the dry season they moved near the coast and left when the rains came.
2. The pastoralist nomads who lived in Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh were:
 - (a) The Gollas.
 - (b) Kurumas and Kurubas.
3. The British officials were suspicious of the nomadic people because they distrusted mobile craftsmen and traders who sold their goods in villages, and pastoralists who changed their places or residence every season. They were considered as criminals.
4. They sold milk, ghee and other products.
5. Bugyals are vast natural pastures on the high mountains, about 12,000 feet. After April the entire mountainside is covered with a variety of grasses, roots and herbs. By monsoon these pastures are covered with thick vegetation and wild flowers.
6. Gujjar Bakarwals of Jammu and Kashmir are herders of goat and sheep.
7. It is a dry forested area in the foothills of Garhwal and Kumaun.
8. They were the pastoral communities of the Himalayas.
9. Dhangars were an important pastoral community of Maharashtra.
10. After the kharif crops were harvested, the field had to be fertilised for the rabi crops. Dhangar flocks manured the fields and fed on the stubble. Dhangars were also given supplies of rice which they supplied to the plateau where grain was scarce.

Short Answer:

1. The three factors which the pastoral groups have to consider to sustain their life are:
 - (a) They have to judge how long the herds could stay at one place and know where they could find water and pastures.
 - (b) They had to calculate the timing of their movement and had to move through different territories.
 - (c) They had to set up relationship with the farmers, on the way, so that herds could graze in the harvested fields and manure the soil. They combined number of activities like cultivation, herding, and trade to sustain themselves.
2. Three livelihood practices adopted by the pastoralists in the 20th century were as follows:
 - (a) Richer pastoralists started buying land and settling down, giving up their nomadic life.
 - (b) Some became settled peasants cultivating land.
 - (c) Others took to trading.
3. The pastoralists have been compelled to change their movement in modern times. After 1947, the camel and sheep herding Raikas could no longer move into Sindh and graze their animals on the banks of Indus. The new political boundaries between Indian & Pakistan stopped their movement. In recent years, they have been migrating to Haryana where sheep could graze on agricultural land, after harvests are cut.
4. Gujjar Bakarwals of Jammu and Kashmir are herders of goat and sheep. They move between their winter and summer grounds. In winters when the ground is covered with snow, they live with their herds in the Siwalik range. The herds feed on the dry scrub forests, By April, they start moving to their summer grazing grounds. After crossing the Pir Panjal passes they reach the Kashmir valley. With the onset of summer, the snow has melted, and the valley is covered with variety of flowers and grasses. They provide nutritious forage for the animals. By the end of September they come back to their winter homes in the Siwalik.
5. The Gujjar cattle herders live in Garhwal and Kumaon. In the winter, they come to the dry forest of the Bhabhar and go up to the high

meadows-the bugyals-in summer. Gujjars are exclusively a pastoralist tribe in the hills, where they do not cultivate anything. Buffaloes are the main wealth of the Gujjars. They live near the boundary of the forests and the mainstay of their existence is the sale of milk, ghee and other products. The men graze the cattle. The women go -to the markets every morning, with little earthen pots filled with milk, butter milk and ghee. During the hot weather they move their herds to the upper ranges where the buffaloes enjoy the weather.

6. The Dhangars were an important pastoral community of Maharashtra. Most of them were shepherds, some were blanket weavers and others were buffalo herders. They were continuously on the move in search of pasture for their cattle.
7. (a) The various pastoral groups were forced to live in special reserves. They were not allowed to move their stock without special permits which were not easy to get. Those who defied the rules were severely punished.
- (b) Pastoralists were not allowed to enter the markets area of the whites.
- (c) In many regions, they were prohibited from participating in any trading activity.

Thus, the restrictions imposed on the pastoralists adversely affected their pastoral and trading activities.

Long Answer:

1. Pastoral nomads are people who do not live at one place but move from one area to another to earn their living. They depend on livestock rearing, they move with their cattle and other animals. The four features of pastoral nomads are as follows.
 - (a) Pastoral nomads had to adjust to seasonal changes and make best use of available pastures in different places. When the pastureland was exhausted they moved to a different place where pastures are available.
 - (b) Cold and snow are not the only factors which defined their seasonal movement. In dry season they moved to coastal areas and left when the rain came.
 - (c) They set up a relationship with farmers, so that the herds could graze in harvested fields and manure the soil.

(id) They combine a range of different occupations – cultivation, trade and herding to earn their living. For example, the Gollas, Kurumas and Kurubas herded cattle, cultivated small patches of land and also engaged in a variety of petty trades.

2. The Massai society was divided into two social groups in pre-colonial times – elders and warriors. The elders were the ruling group and met in periodic councils to decide on the affairs of the community and settle disputes. The warriors consisted of young people, responsible for the protection of the tribe. They defended the community and organised cattle raids. Raiding was an important activity in a society where cattle was wealth. It was the way through which different pastoral groups asserted their superiority.

The British introduced a number of measures which changed the lives of the Maasai. The chiefs of different sub-groups were appointed to look after the affairs of the tribe. Restrictions were imposed on raiding and warfare. So, the traditional authority of both the elders and warriors changed dramatically. The difference based on age, between elders and warriors broke down, and a new distinction was developed between the rich and poor pastoralists.

The chiefs appointed by the colonial government became rich overtime. They had regular income with which they purchased land, goods, animals and also get involved in trade. But the poor pastoralists worked as charcoal, burners or work in road or building construction or did odd jobs.

3. Most of the pastoralists in Africa lived in semi-arid grasslands or arid deserts where rain-fed agriculture is difficult.

The pastoralists are involved in different type of activities like they rear cattle, camels, goats, sheep and donkeys; and sell milk, meat, animal skin and wool. Some also earn through trade and transport, others combine pastoral activity with agriculture, still others do a variety of odd jobs to supplement their meagre and uncertain earnings from pastoralism.
4. Pastoralists managed to cope with the changes in many ways.
 - (a) Some pastoralists reduced the number of cattle because there were not enough



pastures to feed large numbers. When pastureland in one place was closed to them, they changed the direction of their movement and combined pastoral activity with other forms of trade.

- (b) Some pastoralists found new pastures.
 - (c) They exert political pressure on the government for relief, subsidy and other forms of support and demand a right in the management of forests and water resources.
 - (d) Some rich pastoralists gave up their nomadic habits, purchased land and started leading a settled life.
 - (e) Some became settled peasants cultivating land. Some borrowed money from the moneylenders to survive.
5. Pastoralists managed to cope with the changes in many ways.
- (a) Some pastoralists reduced the number of

cattle because there were not enough pastures to feed large numbers. When pastureland in one place was closed to them, they changed the direction of their movement and combined pastoral activity with other forms of trade.

- (b) Some pastoralists found new pastures.
- (c) They exert political pressure on the government for relief, subsidy and other forms of support and demand a right in the management of forests and water resources.
- (d) Some rich pastoralists gave up their nomadic habits, purchased land and started leading a settled life.
- (e) Some became settled peasants cultivating land. Some borrowed money from the moneylenders to survive.

